tcolorbox

Manual for version 6.0.4 (2023/06/19)

Thomas F. Sturm
% \usepackage{incgraph}
\begin{inctext}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\definecolorseries{boxcol}{rgb}{last}{blue}{red}
\resetcolorseries[28]{boxcol}
\coordinate (A) at (0,0); \coordinate (B) at (21,29.7);
\path[use as bounding box] (A) rectangle coordinate (C) (B);
\BeginAccSupp{method=plain,ActualText={}}%
\begin{inctext}
\begin{tcbbraster}
\foreach \b in {1,...,28} \begin{tcolorbox}
\lipsum[2]
\EndAccSupp{}\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbbraster}
\end{inctext}
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{inctext}


Abstract

tcolorbox provides an environment for colored and framed text boxes with a heading line. Optionally, such a box can be split in an upper and a lower part. The package tcolorbox can be used for the setting of \TeX examples where one part of the box displays the source code and the other part shows the output. Another common use case is the setting of theorems. The package supports saving and reuse of source code and text parts.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4.9 Transparency</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.10 Height Control</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.11 Box Content Additions</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.12 Overlays</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.13 Floating Objects</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.14 Embedding into the Surroundings</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.15 Bounding Box</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.15.1 Shifting Bounding Box Borders</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.15.2 Box Alignment</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.15.3 Toggle Enlargements</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.15.4 Spread Box to Page Borders</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.15.5 Box Extrusion</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.16 Layered Boxes and Every Box Settings</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.17 Capture Mode</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.18 Text Characteristics</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.19 Files</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.20 <code>tcolorbox</code> Specials</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.21 Counters, Labels, and References</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.22 Even and Odd Pages</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.23 Externalization</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.24 Miscellaneous</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Initialization Option Keys</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1 Numbered Boxes</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.2 Lists of <code>tcolorboxes</code></td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Side by Side</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1 Basic Settings</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2 Advanced Settings</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 Saving and Loading of Verbatim Texts</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 Recording</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.1 Macros</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2 Options</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.3 Example: Exercises</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.4 Example: Solutions</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 Technical Overview and Customization</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.1 Skins and Drawing Engines</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2 Code Option Keys</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.3 Subskins</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.4 Drawing Scheme</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.5 Color Names</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.6 Useful Properties</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 Library <code>skins</code></td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.1 Style Option Keys</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.2 Boxed Title Option Keys</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.2.1 Boxed Title Placement</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.2.2 Options for the Boxed Title Placement</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.2.3 Options for the Boxed Title Box</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Contents

21.7 Box Placement ............................................ 441

22 Library fitting .............................................. 449
  22.1 Macros of the Library .................................... 449
  22.2 Producing \tcbxfit Commands ............................ 451
  22.3 Option Keys of the Library .............................. 454

23 Library hooks ............................................... 463
  23.1 Concept of Hooks ........................................ 463
  23.2 Box Content Additions ................................... 464
  23.3 Embedding into the Surroundings ....................... 466
  23.4 Overlays ................................................ 467
  23.5 Watermarks .............................................. 469
  23.6 Underlays ............................................... 471
  23.7 Finishes ................................................ 472
  23.8 Skin Code ............................................... 472
  23.9 Extras .................................................. 474
  23.10 Listings ............................................... 474

24 Library xparse ............................................. 475

25 Library external ........................................... 476
  25.1 Preparation of a Document for Externalization .... 477
  25.2 Marking Externalization Snippets ...................... 478
  25.3 Customization ........................................... 483
  25.4 Troubleshooting and FAQ ............................... 487

26 Library documentation ....................................... 488
  26.1 Macros of the Library ................................... 488
  26.2 Entry Content Option Keys ............................. 502
  26.3 Entry Customization Option Keys ....................... 505
  26.4 General Customization Option Keys .................... 510
  26.5 Language Option Keys .................................. 513
  26.6 Predefined Colors of the Library ..................... 514

A Picture Credits ........................................... 515

References .................................................... 516

Index .......................................................... 518
1 Introduction

The package originates from the first edition of my book «\textit{LATEX– Einführung in das Textsatzsystem}» \cite{20} in about 2006. For the \LaTeX{} examples and tutorials given there, I wanted to have accentuated and colored boxes to display source code and compiled text in combination. Since, in my opinion, this type of boxes is also quite useful to highlight definitions and theorems, I applied them for my lecture notes in mathematics \cite{21–23} as well. With this package, you are invited to apply these boxes for similar projects.

The breaking news for version 2.00 was the support for breakable boxes. This feature allows new applications of the package without affecting the core package too much if you do not need boxes to break automatically. With version 2.20, the often requested “side by side” mode for listings has been added. With version 3.00, boxed titles are introduced together with improved customization options for overlays, underlays, finishes, and own code extensions.

Since the first public release in 2011, I received a lot of feedback from all over the world. I want to thank all who wrote me for supporting this package by sending bug reports and ideas for new or better features.

1.1 Installation

Typically, tcolorbox will be installed as part of a major \LaTeX{} distribution and there is nothing special to do for a user.

If you intend to make a local installation \textit{by hand}, see the README file of the tcolorbox package for some hints. The short story is: you have to install not only tcolorbox.sty, but also all \texttt{*.code.tex} files in the local \texttt{texmf} tree.

1.2 Loading the Package

The base package tcolorbox loads the packages \texttt{pgf} \cite{24}, \texttt{verbatim} \cite{19}, \texttt{etoolbox} \cite{8}, and \texttt{environ} \cite{18}. tcolorbox itself is loaded in the usual manner in the preamble:

\begin{verbatim}
\usepackage{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

The package takes option keys in the key-value syntax. Alternatively, you may use these keys later in the preamble with \texttt{\tcbuselibrary*P.9} (see there). For example, the key to typeset listings is:

\begin{verbatim}
\usepackage[listings]{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}
1.3 Libraries

The base package `tcolorbox` is extendable by program libraries. This is done by using option keys while loading the package or inside the preamble by applying the following macro with the same set of keys.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{\textbackslash tcbuselibrary\{⟨key list⟩\}}
    
    Loads the libraries given by the ⟨key list⟩.
  \item \texttt{\textbackslash tcbuselibrary\{listings, theorems\}}
\end{itemize}

The following keys are used inside \texttt{\textbackslash tcbuselibrary} respectively \texttt{\usepackage} without the key tree path /tcb/library/.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{/tcb/library/skins}
    
    Loads the package \texttt{tikz} [24] and provides additional styles (skins) for the appearance of the colored boxes; see Section 10 from page 168.
  \item \texttt{/tcb/library/vignette}
    
    Provides code for more ornamental; see Section 15 from page 291.
  \item \texttt{/tcb/library/raster}
    
    Provides additional macros and options for typesetting multiple boxes arranged in a kind of raster; see Section 16 from page 304.
  \item \texttt{/tcb/library/listings}
    
    Loads the package \texttt{listings} [7] and provides additional macros for typesetting listings which are described in Section 17 from page 326.
  \item \texttt{/tcb/library/listingsutf8}
    
    Loads the packages \texttt{listings} [7] and \texttt{listingsutf8} [11] for UTF-8 support. This is a variant of the library \texttt{listings} and is described in Section 17 from page 326.
  \item \texttt{/tcb/library/minted}
    
    Loads the package \texttt{minted} [14] to typeset listings with the \texttt{Pygments} [16] tool, also see Section 17 on page 326.
  \item \texttt{/tcb/library/theorems}
    
    Provides additional macros for typesetting theorems which are described in Section 18 from page 371.
  \item \texttt{/tcb/library/breakable}
    
    Provides support for automatic box breaking from one page to another; see Section 19 on page 398.
  \item \texttt{/tcb/library/magazine}
    
    Provides support for storing broken box parts to be used later or in interchanged order, Section 20 on page 425.
  \item \texttt{/tcb/library/poster}
    
    Provides support for creating posters, Section 21 on page 435.
  \item \texttt{/tcb/library/fitting}
    
    Provides support for font size adaption of the box content to the box dimensions; see Section 22 from page 449.
  \item \texttt{/tcb/library/hooks}
    
    Extends several option keys to “hookable” keys; see Section 23 from page 463.
\end{itemize}
/tcb/library/xparse

Loads the package \texttt{xparse} and is considered a legacy library kept for compatibility; see Section 24 from page 475.

/tcb/library/external

Provides externalization support for stand-alone document snippets, see Section 25 on page 476.

/tcb/library/documentation

Provides additional macros for typesetting \LaTeXX documents which are described in Section 26 from page 488.

/tcb/library/many

Loads the libraries \texttt{skins, breakable, raster, hooks, theorems, fitting}. Use this shortcut, if you want to use all features of \texttt{tcolorbox} with exception of typesetting listings and using the specialized \texttt{documentation} library.

/tcb/library/most

Loads all libraries except \texttt{minted, documentation, xparse}. Use this shortcut, if you want to use all features of \texttt{tcolorbox} with exception of using the \texttt{minted} package and using the specialized \texttt{documentation} library.

/tcb/library/all

Loads all libraries. Use this shortcut only, if you intend to use the \texttt{documentation} library.
3 Macros for Box Creation

3.1 Using \texttt{tcolorbox} and \texttt{tcbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[(options)]
\langle environment content \rangle
\end{tcolorbox}

This is the main environment to create an accentuated colored text box with rounded corners and, optionally, two parts. The appearance of this box is controlled by numerous options. In the most simple case the source code

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

creates the following compiled text box:

This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

The text content of the box can be divided in an upper and a lower part by the command \texttt{tcblower}. Visually, both parts are separated by a line. For example:

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is another \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
Here, you see the lower part of the box.
\end{tcolorbox}

This code gives the following box:

This is another \texttt{tcolorbox}.

\tcblower
Here, you see the lower part of the box.

The \langle options \rangle control the appearance and several functions of the boxes, see Section 4 on page 23 for the complete list. A quick example is given here:

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,title=My nice heading]
This is another \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
Here, you see the lower part of the box.
\end{tcolorbox}

My nice heading

This is another \texttt{tcolorbox}.

\tcblower
Here, you see the lower part of the box.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\tcblower
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{tcblower}

Used inside \texttt{tcolorbox} to separate the upper box part from the optional lower box part. The upper and the lower part are treated as separate functional units. If you only want to draw a line, see \texttt{tcbliner} \textsuperscript{P.233}.

12
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbset\{\texttt{options}\}}

Sets options for every following \texttt{tcolorbox} inside the current \TeX{} group. By default, this does not apply to nested boxes, see Section 4.16 on page 102. For example, the colors of the boxes may be defined for the whole document by this:

\begin{verbatim}
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbset\{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black\}}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\textbackslash tcbsetforeverylayer\{\texttt{options}\}}

Sets options for every following \texttt{tcolorbox} inside the current \TeX{} group. In contrast to \texttt{\textbackslash tcbset}, this does also apply to nested boxes, see Section 4.16 on page 102. Technically, the \texttt{\textbackslash \{options\}} are appended to the default values for every \texttt{tcolorbox} which are applied by \texttt{/tcb/reset}. You should not use this macro, if you are not completely sure that you want to have the \texttt{\{options\}} also for boxes in boxes (in boxes in boxes ...).

\begin{verbatim}
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbset\{colback=green!10!white\}}
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbsetforeverylayer\{colframe=red!75!black\}}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=All options for this box]
This is a tcolorbox. \par\medskip
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Nested box]
Note that this nested box has a red frame but no green background.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}
\bigskip
\begin{tcolorbox}[reset]
Options given with \texttt{\textbackslash tcbsetforeverylayer} survive a \texttt{reset}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

All options for this box

This is a tcolorbox.

Nested box

Note that this nested box has a red frame but no green background.

Options given with \texttt{\textbackslash tcbsetforeverylayer} survive a \texttt{reset}.
\texttt{tcolorbox[options]{box content}}

Creates a colored box which is fitted to the width of the given \texttt{box content}. In principle, most \texttt{options} for a \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{p.12} can be used for \texttt{tcolorbox} with some restrictions. A \texttt{tcolorbox} cannot have a lower part and cannot be broken.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbox[tcbox raise base]{Hello World}\hfill
\tcbox{Hello World!} \hfill
\tcbox[left=0mm,right=0mm,top=0mm,bottom=0mm,boxsep=0mm, toptitle=0.5mm,bottomtitle=0.5mm,title=My table]{
\begin{tabular}{r|c|l}
One & Two & Three \\
\hline
Men & Mice & Lions \\
Upper & Middle & Lower
\end{tabular}}
\tcbox[colback=blue!85!black, left=0mm,right=0mm,top=0mm,bottom=0mm,boxsep=1mm,arc=0mm,boxrule=0.5pt, title=My picture]{
\includegraphics[width=5cm]{Basilica_5.png}}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{tcolorbox}
Hello World!
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[tikznode]Hello World!
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colframe=blue!50!black, colback=white,colupper=red!50!black, fonttitle=\bfseries,center title]
Hello World!
\end{tcolorbox}
3.2 Producing tcolorbox Environments and Commands

\newtcolorbox\texttt{[(init options)]\{\texttt{name}\}\{\texttt{number}\}\{\texttt{default}\}\{\texttt{options}\}}

Creates a new environment \langle name\rangle based on tcolorbox \textsuperscript{P.12}. Basically, \newtcolorbox operates like \newenvironment. This means, the new environment \langle name\rangle optionally takes \langle number\rangle arguments, where \langle default\rangle is the default value for the optional first argument. The \langle options\rangle are given to the underlying tcolorbox. Note that /tcb/savedelimiter \textsuperscript{P.31} is set to the given \langle name\rangle automatically. The \langle init options\rangle allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 124.

\begin{tcolorbox}[mybox, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black]
This is my own box.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[mybox][1] colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, title={#1}]
This is my own box with a mandatory title.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[mybox][2] colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, colbacktitle=red!85!black,enhanced, attach boxed title to top center={yshift=-2mm}, title={#2},#1]
This is my own box with a mandatory title and options.
\end{tcolorbox}

Definition in the preamble:
\newtcolorbox[auto counter,number within=section]{pabox}[2][{}% colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, title=Examp.~\thetcbcounter\,: #2,#1]

\begin{pabox}[colback=yellow]{Hello there}
This is my own box with a numbered title and options.
\end{pabox}

\begin{pabox}[colback=yellow]{Hello there}
This is my own box with a mandatory title.
\end{pabox}

\begin{pabox}[colback=yellow]{Hello there}
This is my own box with a mandatory title and options.
\end{pabox}

\renewtcolorbox\texttt{[(init options)]\{\texttt{name}\}\{\texttt{number}\}\{\texttt{default}\}\{\texttt{options}\}}

Operates like \newtcolorbox, but based on \renewenvironment instead of \newenvironment. An existing environment is redefined.
\NewTColorBox{\(init\ options\)}{\(name\)}{\(specification\)}{\(options\)}

Creates a new environment \(name\) based on tcolorbox \(^\text{P.12}\). Basically, \NewTColorBox operates like \NewDocumentEnvironment. This means, the new environment \(name\) is constructed with the given argument \(specification\). An error is issued if an environment with \(name\) has already been defined. The \(options\) are given to the underlying tcolorbox \(^\text{P.12}\).

Note that \texttt{/tcb/savedelimiter} \(^\text{P.31}\) is set to the given \(name\) automatically. The \(init\ options\) allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 124.

% counter from previous example
\NewTColorBox[use counter from=pabox]{mybox}{ O{red} m d"" !O{} }
{enhanced, colframe=#1!75!black, colback=#1!15!white, fonttitle=\textbf, title={\thetcbcounter~#2}, IfValueT={#3}{watermark text={#3}},#4}

\begin{mybox}{My title}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}

\begin{mybox}[blue]{My title}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}

\begin{mybox}[green]{My title}\text{"My Watermark"}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}

\begin{mybox}[yellow]{My title}[colbacktitle=yellow!50!white, coltitle=black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}

\begin{mybox}[purple]{My title}\text{"All together"}[coltitle=yellow]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
\RenewTColorBox[(init options)]\{name\}\{specification\}\{options\}

Operates like \NewTColorBox P.16, but based on \RenewDocumentEnvironment instead of \NewDocumentEnvironment. An existing environment is redefined.

\ProvideTColorBox[(init options)]\{name\}\{specification\}\{options\}

Operates like \NewTColorBox P.16, but based on \ProvideDocumentEnvironment instead of \NewDocumentEnvironment. The environment \textit{name} is only created if it is not already defined.

\DeclareTColorBox[(init options)]\{name\}\{specification\}\{options\}

Operates like \NewTColorBox P.16, but based on \DeclareDocumentEnvironment instead of \NewDocumentEnvironment. The new environment is always created, irrespective of an already existing environment with the same name.
\NewTotalTColorBox[(init options)]\{\langle name\rangle\}\{\langle specification\rangle\}\{\langle options\rangle\}\{\langle content\rangle\}

Creates a new command \langle name\rangle based on \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{P.12}. In contrast to \NewTColorBox \textsuperscript{P.16}, also the \langle content\rangle of the \texttt{tcolorbox} is specified.

Basically, \NewTotalTColorBox operates like \texttt{NewDocumentCommand}. This means, the new command \langle name\rangle is constructed with the given argument \langle specification\rangle. An error is issued if \langle name\rangle has already been defined. The \langle options\rangle are given to the underlying \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{P.12} which is filled with the specified \langle content\rangle.

Note that /tcb/savedelimiter \textsuperscript{P.31} is set to the given \langle name\rangle automatically. Also note that /tcb/saveto \textsuperscript{P.28} and /tcb/savelowerto \textsuperscript{P.29} cannot be used with \NewTotalTColorBox and friends.

The \langle init options\rangle allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 124.

\begin{Verbatim}
\NewTotalTColorBox{\diabox}{ O{}v m }
\{ bicolor,nobeforeafter,equal height group=diabox,width=5.7cm, 
\hspace{1em} fonttitle=\texttt{\textbf{\textsf{\texttt{ttfamily}}}},adjusted title=\#2,center title, 
\hspace{1em} colframe=blue!20!black,leftupper=0mm,rightupper=0mm,colback=black!75!white,#1 
\hspace{1em} \{ \texttt{tikz}\texttt{\textbackslash path[fill zoom image=\#2]} \} (0,0) rectangle (\linewidth,4cm); 
\hspace{1em} \% \texttt{\textbackslash tcblower}\#3 
\}
\end{Verbatim}

\begin{Verbatim}
\diabox[blueshade.png]{Created with GIMP.} \\
\url{http://www.gimp.org}
\diabox[goldshade.png]{Created with GIMP.} \\
\url{http://www.gimp.org}
\end{Verbatim}

\RenewTotalTColorBox[(init options)]\{\langle name\rangle\}\{\langle specification\rangle\}\{\langle options\rangle\}\{\langle content\rangle\}

Operates like \NewTotalTColorBox, but based on \texttt{RenewDocumentCommand} instead of \texttt{NewDocumentCommand}. An existing command is redefined.

\ProvideTotalTColorBox[(init options)]\{\langle name\rangle\}\{\langle specification\rangle\}\{\langle options\rangle\}\{\langle content\rangle\}

Operates like \NewTotalTColorBox, but based on \texttt{ProvideDocumentCommand} instead of \texttt{NewDocumentCommand}. The command \langle name\rangle is only created if it is not already defined.

\DeclareTotalTColorBox[(init options)]\{\langle name\rangle\}\{\langle specification\rangle\}\{\langle options\rangle\}\{\langle content\rangle\}

Operates like \NewTotalTColorBox, but based on \texttt{DeclareDocumentCommand} instead of \texttt{NewDocumentCommand}. The new command is always created, irrespective of an already existing command with the same name.
3.3 Producing \tcbox Commands

\newtcbox\[\{\langle\text{init options}\rangle\}\{\langle\text{name}\rangle\}\{\langle\text{number}\rangle\}\{\langle\text{default}\rangle\}\{\langle\text{options}\rangle\}\]

Creates a new macro \langle\text{name}\rangle based on \tcbox\textsuperscript{P.14}. Basically, \newtcbox operates like \newcommand. The new macro \langle\text{name}\rangle optionally takes \langle\text{number}\rangle+1 arguments, where \langle\text{default}\rangle is the default value for the optional first argument. The \langle\text{options}\rangle are given to the underlying \tcbox. The \langle\text{init options}\rangle allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 124.

\newtcbox\{\mybox\}\{\text{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black}\}
\mybox\{This is my own box.\}

\newtcbox\{\mybox\}[1]\{\text{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, title=\#1}\}
\mybox\{Hello there\}\{This is my own box.\}

\newtcbox\{\mybox\}[2]\{\text{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, title=\#2,\#1}\}
\mybox\{colback=yellow\}\{Hello there\} %
\{This is my own box.\}

\begin{verbatim}
\newtcbox[use counter from=pabox]{\pbbox}[2]\{\% % counter from previous example
\text{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, fonttitle=\bfseries, title=(\thetcbcounter) \#2,\#1}\}
\end{verbatim}

\pbbox\{colback=yellow\}\{Hello there\} %
\{This is my own box.\}

The \mybox[green]\{quick\} brown \mybox[blue]\{fox\} \mybox[green]\{jumps\} over the \mybox[green]\{lazy\} \mybox[dog]. \par
The \mybox[green]\{quick\} brown \mybox[fox]\{jumps\} over the \mybox[green]\{lazy\} \mybox[dog].

The \text{quick} brown \text{fox} \text{jumps} over the \text{lazy} \text{dog}.

The \text{quick} brown \text{fox} \text{jumps} over the \text{lazy} \text{dog}.
\renewtcbox[(init options)]{⟨name⟩}{⟨number⟩}{⟨default⟩}{⟨options⟩}

Operates like \newtcbox→P.19, but based on \renewcommand instead of \newcommand. An existing macro is redefined.

\NewTCBox[(init options)]{⟨name⟩}{⟨specification⟩}{⟨options⟩}

Creates a new command \(⟨name⟩\) based on \tcbox→P.14. Basically, \NewTCBox operates like \NewDocumentCommand. This means, the new command \(⟨name⟩\) is constructed with the given argument \(⟨specification⟩\). An error is issued if \(⟨name⟩\) has already been defined. The \(⟨options⟩\) are given to the underlying \tcbox→P.14.
Note that /tcb/savedelimiter→P.31 is set to the given \(⟨name⟩\) automatically.
The \(⟨init options⟩\) allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 124.

\begin{verbatim}
% counter from previous example
\NewTCBox[use counter from=pabox]\mybox{ s m s }{ nobeforeafter,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black, title={#2 (Box \thetcbcounter)},fonttitle=\bfseries, IfBooleanT={#1}{enhanced,drop shadow}, IfBooleanT={#3}{colbacktitle=red!50!white} }

\mybox{Bird}{This is my first box.}
\hfill\mybox*{Tree}{This is my second box.}
\par\bigskip\mybox{Bike}*{This is my third box.}
\hfill\mybox*{City}*{This is my fourth box.}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
Bird (Box 3.8) & Tree (Box 3.9) \\
\begin{tabular}{c}
This is my first box.\end{tabular} & \begin{tabular}{c}
This is my second box.\end{tabular} \\
\hline
Bike (Box 3.10) & City (Box 3.11) \\
\begin{tabular}{c}
This is my third box.\end{tabular} & \begin{tabular}{c}
This is my fourth box.\end{tabular} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

\RenewTCBox[(init options)]{⟨name⟩}{⟨specification⟩}{⟨options⟩}

Operates like \NewTCBox, but based on \RenewDocumentCommand instead of \NewDocumentCommand. An existing command is redefined.

\ProvideTCBox[(init options)]{⟨name⟩}{⟨specification⟩}{⟨options⟩}

Operates like \NewTCBox, but based on \ProvideDocumentCommand instead of \NewDocumentCommand. The command \(⟨name⟩\) is only created if it is not already defined.

\DeclareTCBox[(init options)]{⟨name⟩}{⟨specification⟩}{⟨options⟩}

Operates like \NewTCBox, but based on \DeclareDocumentCommand instead of \NewDocumentCommand. The new command is always created, irrespective of an already existing command with the same name.
\NewTotalTCBox{(init options)}\{\langle name\rangle\}\{\langle specification\rangle\}\{\langle options\rangle\}\{\langle content\rangle\}

Creates a new command \langle name\rangle based on \tcbox \textsuperscript{P.14}. In contrast to \NewTCBox \textsuperscript{P.20}, also the \langle content\rangle of the tcbox is specified.

Basically, \NewTotalTCBox operates like \NewDocumentCommand. This means, the new command \langle name\rangle is constructed with the given argument \langle specification\rangle. An error is issued if \langle name\rangle has already been defined. The \langle options\rangle are given to the underlying \tcbox \textsuperscript{P.14} which is filled with the specified \langle content\rangle.

Note that /tcb/savedelimiter \textsuperscript{P.31} is set to the given \langle name\rangle automatically.

The \langle init options\rangle allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 124.

\NewTotalTCBox{\myverb}{ O{red} v !O{} }
{ fontupper=\ttfamily,nobeforeafter,tcbox raise base,arc=0pt,outer arc=0pt,
  top=0pt,bottom=0pt,left=0mm,right=0mm,
  leftrule=0pt,rightrule=0pt,toprule=0.3mm,bottomrule=0.3mm,boxsep=0.5mm,
  colback=#1!10!white,colframe=#1!50!black,#3}{#2}

To set a word \textbf{bold} in \myverb{\LaTeX}, use \myverb[green]{\textbf{bold}}. Alternatively, write \myverb[yellow]{\textbf{bold}}.

In \myverb[blue]{\LaTeX}[enhanced,fuzzy halo], other font settings are done in the same way, e.g. \myverb{\textit}, \myverb[blue]{\itshape}\texttt, \myverb[blue]{\ttfamily}.

To set a word \textbf{bold} in \LaTeX, use \textbf{bold}. Alternatively, write \textbf{bold}. In \LaTeX, other font settings are done in the same way, e.g. \textit, \itshape or \texttt, \ttfamily.

The next example uses \lstinline from the listings package to typeset the verbatim content.

\NewTotalTCBox{\commandbox}{ s v }
{\IfBooleanT{#1}{\textcolor{red}{\ttfamily\bfseries > }}\texttt{[^#2^]}}

\commandbox*{cd "My Documents"} changes to directory \commandbox{My Documents}.
\commandbox*{dir /A} lists the directory content.
\commandbox*{copy example.txt d:\target} copies \commandbox{example.txt} to \commandbox{d:\target}.

\texttt{
> cd "My Documents" \hspace{5mm} changes to directory \texttt{My Documents}.
> dir /A \hspace{5mm} lists the directory content.
> copy example.txt d:\target \hspace{5mm} copies \texttt{example.txt} to \texttt{d:\target}.
}
\RenewTotalTCBox\((init\ options)\)\{\(name\)\}\{(specification)\}\{(options)\}\{(content)\}

Operates like \NewTotalTCBox \textsuperscript{P.21}, but based on \RenewDocumentCommand instead of \NewDocumentCommand. An existing command is redefined.

\ProvideTotalTCBox\((init\ options)\)\{\(name\)\}\{(specification)\}\{(options)\}\{(content)\}

Operates like \NewTotalTCBox \textsuperscript{P.21}, but based on \ProvideDocumentCommand instead of \NewDocumentCommand. The command \(name\) is only created if it is not already defined.

\DeclareTotalTCBox\((init\ options)\)\{\(name\)\}\{(specification)\}\{(options)\}\{(content)\}

Operates like \NewTotalTCBox \textsuperscript{P.21}, but based on \DeclareDocumentCommand instead of \NewDocumentCommand. The new command is always created, irrespective of an already existing command with the same name.

\tcboxverb\{(options)\}\{\(verbatim\ box\ content\)\}

Creates a colored box based on \tcbox \textsuperscript{P.14} which is fitted to the width of the given \textit{verbatim box content}. The underlying \tcbox \textsuperscript{P.14} is styled with \texttt{/tcb/verbatim} \textsuperscript{P.108} plus the given \textit{(options)}. The difference to \tcbox \textsuperscript{P.14} is that the \textit{verbatim box content} is interpreted \texttt{verbatim}. Therefore, \tcboxverb acts similar to \verb.\[\texttt{\tcboxverb\{LaTeX\}, \tcboxverb\{colback=blue!10!white, colupper=blue\}\{LaTeX\}, \tcboxverb\{blank, fuzzy halo\}\{LaTeX\}, \tcboxverb\{beamer\}\{LaTeX\}, \tcboxverb\{enhanced, skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw, colframe=red\}\{LaTeX\}.\]

3.4 Redefining other Environments (Wrapping with tcolorbox)

\tcolorboxenvironment\{(name)\}\{(options)\}

An existing environment \textit{name} is redefined to be boxed inside a \tcolorbox with the given \textit{(options)}.

\begin{tcolorboxenvironment}\{myitemize\}\{blanker, before skip=6pt, after skip=6pt, borderline west=\{3mm\}\{opt\}\{red\}\}

Some text.
\begin{myitemize}
\item Alpha
\item Beta
\item Gamma
\end{myitemize}

More text.

See further examples in Section 18.4 on page 397.
4 Option Keys

For the \{options\} in \texttt{tcolorbox}\textsuperscript{P.12} respectively \texttt{\tcbset}\textsuperscript{P.13} the following \texttt{pgf} keys can be applied. The key tree path /tcb/ is not to be used inside these macros. It is easy to add your own style keys using the syntax for \texttt{pgf} keys, see \cite{20, 24} or the examples starting from page 358.

4.1 Title

\texttt{/tcb/title=\langle text\rangle} \hspace{2cm} \text{(no default, initially empty)}

Creates a heading line with \langle text\rangle as content.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My heading line] This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}. \end{tcolorbox}

My heading line
This is a tcolorbox.

\texttt{/tcb/notitle} \hspace{2cm} \text{(no value, initially set)}

Removes the title line if set before.

\texttt{/tcb/adjusted title=\langle text\rangle} \hspace{2cm} \text{(style, no default, initially unset)}

Creates a heading line with \langle text\rangle as content. The minimal height of this line is adjusted to fit the text given by /tcb/\texttt{adjust text}. This option makes sense for single line headings if boxes are set side by side with equal height. Note that it is very easy to trick this adjustment.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\tcset{colback=White,arc=0mm,width=(\linewidth-4pt)/4, equal height group=AT,before=,after=\hfill,fonttitle=\bfseries}

The following titles are not adjusted:\\ 
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=xxx\text{"Agypten\},colframe=red!75!black] Some content. \end{tcolorbox}

Now, we try again with adjusted titles:\\ 
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=xxx\text{"Agypten\},colframe=blue!75!black] Some content. \end{tcolorbox}

The following titles are not adjusted:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>xxx</th>
<th>ggg</th>
<th>AAA</th>
<th>Ägypten</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Some content.</td>
<td>Some content.</td>
<td>Some content.</td>
<td>Some content.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Now, we try again with adjusted titles:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>xxx</th>
<th>ggg</th>
<th>AAA</th>
<th>Ägypten</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Some content.</td>
<td>Some content.</td>
<td>Some content.</td>
<td>Some content.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\texttt{/tcb/adjust text=\langle text\rangle} \hspace{2cm} \text{(no default, initially Åpgjy)}

This sets the reference text for /tcb/\texttt{adjusted title}. If your texts never exceed “Åpgjy” in depth and height you don’t need to care about this option.
\textbf{\texttt{/tcb/squeezed title\{text\}}} \hspace{1cm} \texttt{\{style, no default, initially unset\}}

Creates a single heading line with \texttt{\{text\}} as content. If the \texttt{\{text\}} is longer than the available space, the text is squeezed to fit into the available space.

\begin{verbatim}
\% \tcbselibrary{raster}
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=3,raster equal height,
  colframe=red!75!black,colback=red!5!white,fonttitle=\bfseries]
\tcbitem{squeezed title\{Short title\}}
  First box
\tcbitem{squeezed title\{This is a very very long title\}}
  Second box
\tcbitem{squeezed title\{This title is clearly too long for this application\}}
  Third box
\end{tcbitemize}
\end{verbatim}

This is a combination of \texttt{/tcb/adjusted title} \texttt{\textsuperscript{P.23}} and \texttt{/tcb/squeezed title}.

\begin{verbatim}
\% \tcbselibrary{raster}
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=3,raster equal height,
  colframe=red!75!black,colback=red!5!white,fonttitle=\bfseries]
\tcbitem{squeezed title\{Short title\}}
  First box
\tcbitem{squeezed title\*\{This is a very very long title\}}
  Second box
\tcbitem{squeezed title\*\{This title is clearly too long for this application\}}
  Third box
\end{tcbitemize}
\end{verbatim}

\textbf{\texttt{/tcb/titlebox\{mode\}}} \hspace{1cm} \texttt{\{no default, initially visible\}}

Controls the treatment of the title part of the box. Feasible values for \texttt{\{mode\}} are:

- \texttt{visible}: usual type setting of the title box,
- \texttt{invisible}: empty space instead of the title contents.

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My invisible title,
  titlebox=invisible]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
/tcb/detach title

Detaches the title from its normal position. The text of the title is stored into \tcbtitletext and the formatted title is available by \tcbtitle. The main application is to move the title from its usual place to another one.

\newtcolorbox{mybox}[2][]{colbacktitle=red!10!white, 
colback=blue!10!white,coltitle=red!70!black, 
title=#2,fonttitle=\bfseries,#1}

\begin{mybox}{My title} 
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}. 
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}[detach title,before upper={\tcbtitle\quad}]{My title} 
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}. 
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}[detach title,after upper={\par\hfill\tcbtitle}]{My title} 
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}. 
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}{My title} 
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}. 
\end{mybox}

/tcb/attach title

Attaches the title to its normal position. This option is used to reverse /tcb/detach title.

\newtcolorbox{mybox}[2][]{colbacktitle=red!10!white, 
colback=blue!10!white,coltitle=red!70!black, 
title=#2,fonttitle=\bfseries,#1}

\begin{mybox}{My title} 
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}. 
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}[attach title to upper={\ ---\ }]{My title} 
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}. 
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}[attach title to upper,after title={:\ }]{My title} 
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}. 
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}{My title} 
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}. 
\end{mybox}

/tcb/attach title to upper=⟨text⟩

((style, default empty, initially unset)

Attaches the title to the begin of the upper part of the box content. The optional ⟨text⟩ is set between the formatted title and the box content.

\begin{mybox}{My title} 
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}. 
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}[attach title to upper=⟨ \ ---\ ⟩]{My title} 
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}. 
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}[attach title to upper,after title=⟨:\ ⟩]{My title} 
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}. 
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}{My title} 
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}. 
\end{mybox}

More title options are documented in Section 4.11 on page 69 and Section 10.2 on page 175.
4.2 Subtitle

Inside the box content, one or more subtitles can be added. In general, a subtitle is a further `tcolorbox`\(^{P.12}\) which inherits some color and geometry options from the enclosing box. It may be customized just like any other `tcolorbox`\(^{P.12}\).

\tcbsubtitle[(options)]{(text)}

Used inside a `tcolorbox`\(^{P.12}\) to add a subtitle box with the given \textit{(text)}. This is an independent `tcolorbox`\(^{P.12}\) which is formatted by several inherited properties of the enclosing box, by further settings from `/tcb/subtitle style`, and by the given \textit{(options)}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, fonttitle=\bfseries] This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, coltitle=yellow!50!red, fonttitle=\bfseries] This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, colbacktitle=yellow!50!red!25!white, coltitle=red!25!black, fonttitle=\bfseries, subtitle style={boxrule=0.4pt, colback=yellow!50!red!25!white, colupper=red!75!gray}] This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\textbf{My title}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\textbf{My subtitle}

Further text.

\tcbsubtitle{My subtitle}

Further text.

\tcbsubtitle{Second subtitle}

Further text.

\textbf{My title}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\textbf{My subtitle}

Further text.

\textbf{Second subtitle}

Further text.

\textbf{My title}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\textbf{My subtitle}

Further text.

\textbf{Second subtitle}

Further text.
4.3 Upper Part

The text content of a \texttt{tcolorbox} may be parted into a mandatory upper part and an optional lower part. These parts are separated by \texttt{tcblower}. If there is no \texttt{tcblower} present, there is no lower part and the upper part forms the complete text content.

\texttt{tcolorbox} \{\texttt{upperbox}=(mode)\}

(no default, initially visible)

Controls the treatment of the upper part of the box. If there is no lower part, this is the complete text content. Feasible values for \texttt{(mode)} are:

- \texttt{visible}: usual type setting of the upper part,
- \texttt{invisible}: empty space instead of the upper part contents.

\begin{tcolorbox}[upperbox=invisible,colback=white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} (but invisible).
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[upperbox=invisible,colback=white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} (but invisible).
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{tcolorbox} \{\texttt{invisible}\}

\begin{tcolorbox}[invisible]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} (but invisible).
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{tcb/visible}

(style, no value)

Shortcut for setting \texttt{tcb/upperbox}, \texttt{tcb/lowerbox}, and \texttt{tcb/titlebox} to be \texttt{visible}.

\texttt{tcb/invisible}

(style, no value)

Shortcut for setting \texttt{tcb/upperbox}, \texttt{tcb/lowerbox}, and \texttt{tcb/titlebox} to be \texttt{invisible}.
/tcb/saveto=⟨file name⟩  (no default, initially empty)

Saves the content of the box into a file for an optional later usage. This is the counterpart of /tcb/savelowerto → P.29, but it saves not only the upper part but the whole content. If a lower part is present, it is also saved including \tcblower → P.12.

\begin{tcolorbox}[invisible,saveto=\jobname_mysave1.tex,colback=white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} which seems to be empty.
The content is saved for later usage.
\end{tcolorbox}

Now, we load the saved text:
\input{\jobname_mysave1.tex}

\begin{tcolorbox}[saveto=\jobname_mysave2.tex]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

Now, we load the saved text:
\begin{tcolorbox}[colframe=red,colback=red!10,coltitle=black,colbacktitle=red!20,sidebyside,
title=Here we see the saved content including the lower part]
\input{\jobname_mysave2.tex}
\end{tcolorbox}

Now, we load the saved text:
Here we see the saved content including the lower part

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
This is the lower part.
4.4 Lower Part

\texttt{/tcb/lowerbox=\textit{(mode)}} \hspace{1cm} \textit{(no default, initially visible)}

Controls the treatment of the lower part of the box. Feasible values for \textit{(mode)} are:

- \textbf{visible}: usual type setting of the lower part,
- \textbf{invisible}: empty space instead of the lower part contents,
- \textbf{ignored}: the lower part is not used (here).

The last two values are usually applied in connection with \texttt{savelowerto}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[lowerbox=invisible,colback=white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part (but invisible).
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[lowerbox=ignored,colback=white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part (but ignored).
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[lowerbox=invisible,savelowerto=\jobname_bspsave.tex,colback=white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part which may be quite complex: $f(x) = \frac{1+x^2}{1-x^2}$.
\end{tcolorbox}

Now, we load the saved text:\
\input{\jobname_bspsave.tex}

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/savelowerto=\textit{(file name)}} \hspace{1cm} \textit{(no default, initially empty)}

Saves the content of the lower part into a file for an optional later usage.

\begin{tcolorbox}[lowerbox=invisible,savelowerto=\jobname_bspsave.tex,colback=white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part which may be quite complex: $\displaystyle f(x) = \frac{1+x^2}{1-x^2}$.
\end{tcolorbox}

Now, we load the saved text:\
\input{\jobname_bspsave.tex}

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

Now, we load the saved text:
This is the lower part which may be quite complex: $f(x) = \frac{1+x^2}{1-x^2}$. 
\texttt{/tcb/lower\ separated=\texttt{true}|\texttt{false}} \hspace{1cm} \text{(default \texttt{true}, initially \texttt{true})}

If set to \texttt{true}, the lower part is visually separated from the upper part. It depends on the chosen skin how the visualization of the separation is done.

\begin{tcbraster}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Lower separated]
This is the upper part.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Lower not separated, lower separated=false]
This is the upper part.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[sidebyside, title=Lower separated]
This is the upper part.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[sidebyside, title=Lower not separated, lower separated=false]
This is the upper part.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[beamer, title=Lower separated]
This is the upper part.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[beamer, title=Lower not separated, lower separated=false]
This is the upper part.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}
/tcb/savedelimiter=(name) (no default, initially tcolorbox)

Used in connection with new environment definitions which extend tcolorbox and use or allow the option savedlowerto. To catch the end of the new box environment (name) has to be the name of this environment. Additionally, the environment definition has to use \tcolorbox instead of \begin{tcolorbox} and \end{tcolorbox} instead of \end{tcolorbox}.

\newenvironment{mybox}[1][% 
\tcolorbox[ savedelimiter=mybox, 
savedlowerto=\jobname_bspsave2.tex,lowerbox=ignored, 
colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, 
title={#1}]% 
}{\endtcolorbox}

\begin{mybox}{My Example}
Upper part.
\tcblower
Saved lower part!
\end{mybox}

Now, the saved part is used:
\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=green!5]
\input{\jobname_bspsave2.tex}
\end{tcolorbox}

My Example

Upper part.

Saved lower part!

The savedelimiter is used implicitly with \newtcolorbox P.15 which allows a more convenient usage:

\newtcolorbox{mybox}[1][% 
savedlowerto=\jobname_bspsave2.tex,lowerbox=ignored, 
colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, 
title={#1}]% 
{\begin{mybox}{My Example}
Upper part.
\tcblower
Saved lower part!
\end{mybox}

Now, the saved part is used:
\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=green!5]
\input{\jobname_bspsave2.tex}
\end{tcolorbox}

My Example

Upper part.

Saved lower part!
4.5 Colors and Fonts

\texttt{/tcb/colframe=⟨color⟩} \hspace*{1em} (no default, initially \texttt{black!75!white})

Sets the frame (color) of the box.

\begin{tcolorbox}[colframe=red!50!white]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/colback=⟨color⟩} \hspace*{1em} (no default, initially \texttt{black!5!white})

Sets the background (color) of the box.

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!50!white]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

Also see \texttt{/tcb/colbacklower=P.244} of the \texttt{\textbackslash skins} library.

\texttt{/tcb/title filled=true|false} \hspace*{1em} (default \texttt{true}, initially \texttt{false})

Switches the drawing of the title background according to the given value. This option is set to \texttt{true} automatically by \texttt{/tcb/colbacktitle}, \texttt{/tcb/opacitybacktitle=P.56}, and \texttt{/tcb/title style=P.171}, and \texttt{/tcb/title code=P.159}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title,title filled]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title,title filled=false]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/colbacktitle=⟨color⟩} \hspace*{1em} (no default, initially \texttt{black!50!white})

Sets the background (color) of the title area of the box.

\begin{tcolorbox}[colbacktitle=red!50!white,title=My title,coltitle=black,fonttitle=bfseries]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/colupper={color} (no default, initially black)
Sets the text \textit\langle color\rangle of the upper part.

\begin{tcolorbox}[colupper=red!75!black]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

/tcb/collower={color} (no default, initially black)
Sets the text \textit\langle color\rangle of the lower part.

\begin{tcolorbox}[collower=red!75!black]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

/tcb/coltext={color} (style, no default, initially black)
Sets the text \textit\langle color\rangle of the box. This is an abbreviation for setting colupper and collower to the same value.

\begin{tcolorbox}[coltext=red!75!black]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

/tcb/coltitle={color} (no default, initially white)
Sets the title text \textit\langle color\rangle of the box.

\begin{tcolorbox}[coltitle=red!75!black,\colorbacktitle=black!10!white,title=Test]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

Test

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
Sets \textit{<text>} before the content of the upper part (e.g. font settings).

\begin{tcolorbox}[fontupper=Hello!-\sffamily]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

Hello! This is a \textcolor{red}{tcolorbox}.

Sets \textit{<text>} before the content of the lower part (e.g. font settings).

\begin{tcolorbox}[fontlower=\sffamily\bfseries]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textcolor{red}{tcolorbox}.

This is the lower part.

Sets \textit{<text>} before the content of the title text (e.g. font settings).

\begin{tcolorbox}[fonttitle=\sffamily\bfseries\large,title=Hello]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

Hello

This is a \textcolor{red}{tcolorbox}.

More color options are provided by using skins documented in Section 10 from page 168.
4.6 Text Alignment

/\texttt{tcb/halign}=⟨alignment⟩ (no default, initially justify)

/\texttt{tcb/halign upper}=⟨alignment⟩ (no default, initially justify)

If there is no lower part, \texttt{halign} determines the horizontal ⟨alignment⟩ of the text content. Otherwise, \texttt{halign} determines the horizontal ⟨alignment⟩ of the upper part of the box only. The feasible values for ⟨alignment⟩ are more or less identical to the corresponding \texttt{/tikz/align} settings, even if the implementation differs.

- \textbf{justify}: usual left and right justified type setting.
- \textbf{left}: left border justification in analogy to plain \texttt{\LaTeX}.
- \textbf{flush left}: left border justification with \texttt{\raggedright} of \texttt{\LaTeX}.
- \textbf{right}: right border justification in analogy to plain \texttt{\LaTeX}.
- \textbf{flush right}: right border justification with \texttt{\raggedleft} of \texttt{\LaTeX}.
- \textbf{center}: centering in analogy to plain \texttt{\LaTeX}.
- \textbf{flush center}: centering with \texttt{\centering} of \texttt{\LaTeX}.

The differences between the flush and non-flush version are explained in detail in the \texttt{TikZ} manual [24]. The short story is that the non-flush versions will often look more balanced but with more hyphenations. \texttt{/tcb/halign upper} is an alias for \texttt{/tcb/halign}.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=flush center,halign=flush center]
This is a demonstration text for showing how line breaking works.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=flush left,halign=flush left]
This is a demonstration text for showing how line breaking works.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=flush right,halign=flush right]
This is a demonstration text for showing how line breaking works.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=center,halign=center]
This is a demonstration text for showing how line breaking works.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=left,halign=left]
This is a demonstration text for showing how line breaking works.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=right,halign upper=right]
This is a demonstration text for showing how line breaking works.
\end{tcolorbox}
```
If `/tcb/halign` resp. `/tcb/halign upper` is not flexible enough, `/tcb/halign code` resp. `/tcb/halign upper code` allows to set arbitrary ⟨code⟩ to configure the horizontal alignment of the text content, e.g. using alignments from specialized packages.

/halign lower ⟨alignment⟩ (no default, initially justify)

`halign lower` determines the horizontal ⟨alignment⟩ of the lower part of the box. The feasible values for ⟨alignment⟩ are the same as for `/tcb/halign`.

```
\begin{tcbraster}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=flush center,halign lower=flush center]
    Upper part. \tcblower Lower part.
  \end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=flush left,halign lower=flush left]
    Upper part. \tcblower Lower part.
  \end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=flush right,halign lower=flush right]
    Upper part. \tcblower Lower part.
  \end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=center,halign lower=center]
    Upper part. \tcblower Lower part.
  \end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=left,halign lower=left]
    Upper part. \tcblower Lower part.
  \end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=right,halign lower=right]
    Upper part. \tcblower Lower part.
  \end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}
```

If `/tcb/halign lower` is not flexible enough, `/tcb/halign lower code` allows to set arbitrary ⟨code⟩ to configure the horizontal alignment of the lower part of the box.
\texttt{/tcb/halign title\{alignment\}} \texttt{(no default, initially justify)}

\texttt{halign title} determines the horizontal \texttt{(alignment)} of the title of the box. The feasible values for \texttt{(alignment)} are the same as for \texttt{/tcb/halign \textsuperscript{P.35}}.

\begin{tcbraster}\[raster columns=3,fonttitle=\bfseries,\]
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=flush center,halign title=flush center]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=flush left,halign title=flush left]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=flush right,halign title=flush right]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=center,halign title=center]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=left,halign title=left]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=right,halign title=right]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}

\texttt{/tcb/halign title code\{(code)\}} \texttt{(no default)}

If \texttt{/tcb/halign title} is not flexible enough, \texttt{/tcb/halign title code\{(code)\}} allows to set arbitrary \texttt{(code)} to configure the horizontal alignment of the title of the box.

\texttt{/tcb/flushleft upper} \texttt{(style, no value)}

Shortcut for setting \texttt{/tcb/halign \textsuperscript{P.35}} to \texttt{flush left}.

\texttt{/tcb/center upper} \texttt{(style, no value)}

Shortcut for setting \texttt{/tcb/halign \textsuperscript{P.35}} to \texttt{flush center}.

\texttt{/tcb/flushright upper} \texttt{(style, no value)}

Shortcut for setting \texttt{/tcb/halign \textsuperscript{P.35}} to \texttt{flush right}.

\texttt{/tcb/flushleft lower} \texttt{(style, no value)}

Shortcut for setting \texttt{/tcb/halign lower \textsuperscript{P.36}} to \texttt{flush left}.

\texttt{/tcb/center lower} \texttt{(style, no value)}

Shortcut for setting \texttt{/tcb/halign lower \textsuperscript{P.36}} to \texttt{flush center}.

\texttt{/tcb/flushright lower} \texttt{(style, no value)}

Shortcut for setting \texttt{/tcb/halign lower \textsuperscript{P.36}} to \texttt{flush right}.
The vertical alignment settings are only relevant for boxes which are larger than their natural height, see Section 4.10 on page 58.

\[ \text{valign} = \langle \text{alignment} \rangle \]

(no default, initially top)

If the height of a tcolorbox is not the natural height, \texttt{valign} determines the vertical \langle \texttt{alignment} \rangle \rangle of the upper part. Feasible values are

- \texttt{top}: Anchor text at top.
- \texttt{center}: Anchor text at center.
- \texttt{bottom}: Anchor text at bottom.
- \texttt{scale}: Scale text vertically to fit into the available space. This is brutal and may not look very good. Consider Section 22 on page 449 alternatively.
- \texttt{scale*}: Like \texttt{scale}, but scaling is bounded by /tcb/valign scale limit.

For a box with natural height, these settings are meaningless.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{width=(\linewidth-2mm)/4,before=,after=\hfill,
colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,height=2cm}
\foreach \myalign in {top,center,bottom,scale}
{\begin{tcolorbox}[valign=\myalign]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{/tcb/valign upper=\langle \texttt{alignment} \rangle}

(no default, initially top)

Alias for /tcb/valign.

\texttt{/tcb/valign lower=\langle \texttt{alignment} \rangle}

(no default, initially top)

This key has the same meaning for the lower part as \texttt{valign} for the upper part, i.e., it determines the vertical \langle \texttt{alignment} \rangle \rangle of the lower part with feasible values \texttt{top}, \texttt{center}, \texttt{bottom}, \texttt{scale}, and \texttt{scale*}.

\texttt{/tcb/valign scale limit=\langle real number \rangle}

(no default, initially 1.1)

Sets an upper scale limit for the \texttt{scale*} setting in /tcb/valign and /tcb/valign lower. Note that this value is not reset by /tcb/reset. So, changes also apply to embedded boxes.

Also see /tcb/sidebyside align for alignment settings when upper part and lower part are set side-by-side.
4.7 Geometry

4.7.1 Width

`/tcb/width=⟨length⟩` (no default, initially \linewidth)

Sets the total width of the colored box to \(⟨\text{length}⟩\). See also `/tcb/height` \(\rightarrow\) P.58.

\begin{tcolorbox}[width=\linewidth/2]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[width=4cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[add to width=1cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

See Section 4.10 on page 58 for setting fixed height values.
4.7.2 Rules

/tcb/toprule=(length) (no default, initially 0.5mm)
Sets the line width of the top rule to \(\langle length\rangle\).

\begin{tcolorbox}[toprule=3mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/bottomrule=(length) (no default, initially 0.5mm)
Sets the line width of the bottom rule to \(\langle length\rangle\).

\begin{tcolorbox}[bottomrule=3mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/leftrule=(length) (no default, initially 0.5mm)
Sets the line width of the left rule to \(\langle length\rangle\).

\begin{tcolorbox}[leftrule=3mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/rightrule=(length) (no default, initially 0.5mm)
Sets the line width of the right rule to \(\langle length\rangle\).

\begin{tcolorbox}[rightrule=3mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\texttt{\textbackslash tcb/titlerule\texttt{=}(\textit{length})} \quad (\text{no default, initially 0.5mm})

Sets the line width of the rule below the title to \texttt{(length)}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[titlerule=3mm,title=This is the title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{\textbackslash tcb/boxrule\texttt{=}(\textit{length})} \quad (\text{style, no default, initially 0.5mm})

Sets all rules of the frame to \texttt{(length)}, i.e. \texttt{tcb/toprule} \textsuperscript{P.40}, \texttt{tcb/bottomrule} \textsuperscript{P.40}, \texttt{tcb/leftrule} \textsuperscript{P.40}, \texttt{tcb/rightrule} \textsuperscript{P.40}, and \texttt{tcb/titlerule}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[boxrule=3mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

More options for drawing a \texttt{tcb/borderline} \textsuperscript{P.198} are provided by using skins documented in Section 10 from page 168.

4.7.3 Arcs

\texttt{\textbackslash tcb/arc\texttt{=}(\textit{length})} \quad (\text{no default, initially 1mm})

Sets the inner radius of the four frame arcs to \texttt{(length)}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[arc=0mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[arc=3mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
Sets `/tcb/arc` to match the half of the inner width of the colored box. If width and height of the box are identical, this gives a circle.

![If the height of the box is smaller than the width, the result will look quite ugly.]

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[width=3cm, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, halign=center, valign=center, square, circular arc] This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}. \end{tcolorbox}

Sets `/tcb/arc` to match the smaller value of the half of the inner width and of the inner height of the colored box.

![This only works for a fixed `/tcb/height` after width and height are set by option keys.]

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[width=3cm, height=2cm, bean arc] Box A \end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[width=2cm, height=3cm, bean arc] Box B \end{tcolorbox}

Sets `/tcb/arc` to match of the inner width of the colored box. If width and height of the box are identical, the interior is a regular octogon.

Stop

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced, size=minimal, auto outer arc, width=2.1cm, octogon arc, colback=red, colframe=white, colupper=white, fontupper=\fontsize{7mm}{7mm}\selectfont\bfseries\sffamily, halign=center, valign=center, square, arc is angular, borderline={0.2mm}{-1mm}{red} ] STOP \end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/arc is angular (no value, initially unset)

Using this option applies a patch which straightens the corners arcs of the boxes. The little arcs are replaced by little straight lines.

This patch is considered as an experimental feature. It changes some of the original TikZ code. This change may break with future updates of TikZ.

\[ \text{\begin{tcolorbox}[arc is angular]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}} \]

\[ \text{\begin{tcolorbox}[arc is curved]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}} \]

/tcb/arc is curved (no value, initially set)

This option resets the patch from /tcb/arc is angular. The original TikZ code is activated.

/tcb/outer arc=(length) (no default, initially unset)

Sets the outer radius of the four frame arcs to \langle length \rangle.

\[ \text{\begin{tcolorbox}[arc=4mm,outer arc=1mm]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}} \]

/tcb/auto outer arc (no value, initially set)

Sets the outer radius of the four frame arcs automatically in dependency of the inner radius given by /tcb/arc.
4.7.4 Spacing

\texttt{/tcb/boxsep=⟨length⟩}  \hspace{1cm} (no default, initially 1mm)

Sets a common padding of \textit{⟨length⟩} between the text content and the frame of the box. This value is added to the key values of \textit{left}, \textit{right}, \textit{top}, \textit{bottom}, and \textit{middle} at the appropriate places.

\begin{tcolorbox}[boxsep=5mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[boxsep=5mm,draft]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\texttt{
\begin{tcbox}[colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,width=(\linewidth-4mm)/2, before=,after=\hfill]
\begin{tcolorbox}[boxsep=5mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[boxsep=5mm,draft]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbox}}

frame: w=195.33255pt, h=48.97505pt

interior: w=192.4873pt, h=46.1298pt

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\texttt{\begin{tcbox}[colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,}{width=(\linewidth-4mm)/2, before=,after=\hfill]}
\begin{tcolorbox}[left=0mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[grow to left by=5mm,left*=0mm, enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbox}

This is some text.

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
This is some text.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
This is some text.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
This is some text.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
This is some text.
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/lefttitle=(length)  (no default, initially 4mm)
Sets the left space between title text and frame (additional to boxsep).

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[lefttitle=3cm,title=My Title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

My Title
This is a tcolorbox.

/tcb/leftupper=(length)  (no default, initially 4mm)
Sets the left space between upper text and frame (additional to boxsep).

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[leftupper=3cm,title=My Title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

My Title
This is a tcolorbox.

/tcb/leftlower=(length)  (no default, initially 4mm)
Sets the left space between lower text and frame (additional to boxsep).

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[leftlower=3cm]
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.
This is the lower part.

/tcb/right=(length)  (style, no default, initially 4mm)
Sets the right space between all text parts and frame (additional to boxsep). This is an abbreviation for setting righttitle, rightupper, and rightlower to the same value.

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[width=5cm,right=2cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.
Sets `/tcb/right`\textsuperscript{P. 45} such that ⟨\textit{length}⟩ is the distance between the right bounding box and the text parts.

\begin{tcolorbox}[width=5cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} with standard upper box dimensions.
\end{tcolorbox}

My very long title text

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} with compressed upper box dimensions.

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[width=5cm,righttitle=2cm,title=My very long title text]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} with standard upper box dimensions.
\end{tcolorbox}

My very long title text

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} with standard upper box dimensions.

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[width=5cm,rightupper=2cm,title=My very long title text]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} with compressed upper box dimensions.
\end{tcolorbox}

My very long title text

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} with compressed upper box dimensions.
\texttt{/tcb/rightlower=\textit{length}} \hspace{40em} \textit{(no default, initially 4mm)}

Sets the right space between lower text and frame (additional to boxsep).

\begin{tcolorbox}[\textwidth=5cm,rightlower=2cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} with standard upper box dimensions.
\tcblower
This is the lower part with large space at right.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/top=\textit{length}} \hspace{40em} \textit{(no default, initially 2mm)}

Sets the top space between text and frame (additional to boxsep).

\begin{tcolorbox}[\textwidth=5cm,\textit{top}=0mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/toptitle=\textit{length}} \hspace{40em} \textit{(no default, initially 0mm)}

Sets the top space between title and frame (additional to boxsep).

\begin{tcolorbox}[\textwidth=5cm,\textit{toptitle}=3mm,\textbf{title}=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/bottom=(length)  
(no default, initially \[2mm\])

Sets the bottom space between text and frame (additional to boxsep).

```latex
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[bottom=0mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.

This is the lower part.

/tcb/bottomtitle=(length)  
(no default, initially \[0mm\])

Sets the bottom space between title and frame (additional to boxsep).

```latex
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[bottomtitle=3mm,title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My title

This is a tcolorbox.

/tcb/middle=(length)  
(no default, initially \[2mm\])

Sets the space between upper and lower text to the separation line (additional to boxsep).

```latex
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[middle=0mm,boxsep=0mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a tcolorbox.

This is the lower part.
4.7.5 Size Shortcuts

\( /tcb/size = \langle name \rangle \) (no default, initially normal)

Sets all geometry keys with exception of \( /tcb/width \)\textsuperscript{P.39} to predefined length values. For \( \langle name \rangle \), the following values are feasible:

- **normal**: normal sized boxes e.g. of width \( \textwidth \).
- **title**: title line sized boxes.
- **small**: small boxes e.g. for keyword highlighting.
- **fbox**: identical to the standard \( \textsf{fbox} \).
- **tight**: no padding space at all.
- **minimal**: no padding space, no box rules.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\foreach \s in {normal,title,small,fbox,tight,minimal} {
  \tcbox[size=\s,on line]{\s} }
\foreach \s in {normal,title,small,fbox,tight,minimal} {
  \tcbox[size=\s, on line, title=Test]{\s} }
\foreach \s in {normal,title,small,fbox,tight,minimal} {
  \begin{tcolorbox}
  \tcbox[size=\s, on line, title=Test, width=2.2cm]
  \s \tcblower
  \end{tcolorbox} }
\end{verbatim}

Predefined values

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>normal</th>
<th>title</th>
<th>small</th>
<th>fbox</th>
<th>tight</th>
<th>minimal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>boxrule</td>
<td>0.5mm</td>
<td>0.4mm</td>
<td>0.3mm</td>
<td>0.4pt</td>
<td>0.4pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boxsep</td>
<td>1.0mm</td>
<td>1.0mm</td>
<td>1.0mm</td>
<td>3.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>left</td>
<td>4.0mm</td>
<td>2.0mm</td>
<td>1.0mm</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>right</td>
<td>4.0mm</td>
<td>2.0mm</td>
<td>1.0mm</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>top</td>
<td>2.0mm</td>
<td>0.25mm</td>
<td>0.0mm</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bottom</td>
<td>2.0mm</td>
<td>0.25mm</td>
<td>0.0mm</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toptitle</td>
<td>0.0mm</td>
<td>0.0mm</td>
<td>0.0mm</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bottomtitle</td>
<td>0.0mm</td>
<td>0.0mm</td>
<td>0.0mm</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>middle</td>
<td>2.0mm</td>
<td>0.75mm</td>
<td>0.5mm</td>
<td>1.0pt</td>
<td>0.2pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arc</td>
<td>1.0mm</td>
<td>0.75mm</td>
<td>0.5mm</td>
<td>1.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>outer arc</td>
<td>auto</td>
<td>auto</td>
<td>auto</td>
<td>auto</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sets the text width of the upper part to the current line width plus an optional \langle length\rangle. This is achieved by changing the keys \texttt{/tcb/width} \texttt{→} \texttt{P.39} \texttt{/tcb/enlarge left by} \texttt{→} \texttt{P.94}, and \texttt{/tcb/enlarge right by} \texttt{→} \texttt{P.94} appropriately. The resulting box is overlapping into the left and right margin of the page. Note that this style option has to be given \textit{after} all other geometry keys! Also see \texttt{/tcb/grow sidewards by} \texttt{→} \texttt{P.96} and \texttt{/tcb/spread sidewards} \texttt{→} \texttt{P.99}.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\texttt{\textit{Normal text for comparison:}\\\n\lipsum[2]\\\n\begin{tcolorbox}[oversize,title=Oversized box]\lipsum[2]\end{tcolorbox}\\\n\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Normal box]\lipsum[2]\end{tcolorbox}}
\end{tcolorbox}

Normal text for comparison:

Oversized box

Normal box
4.7.6 Toggle Left and Right

According to the \langle toggle preset \rangle, the left and the right settings of the tcolorbox are switched or not. Feasible values are:
- **none**: no switching.
- **forced**: the values of the left and right rules, spaces, and corners are switched.
- **evenpage**: if the page is an even page, the values of the left and right rules, spaces, and corners are switched. This value also sets /tcb/check odd page \rightarrow P.114 to true.

Horizontal bounding box enlargements are not toggled by this option. They can be toggled independently by /tcb/toggle enlargement \rightarrow P.97. For example, /tcb/oversize \rightarrow P.50 changes the bounding box.

This example switches a 1cm thick rule from the left to the right side depending on the page number. Thereby, the rule is always on the outer side of the double-sided paper. Additionally, a ball is drawn on the outer side with help of an overlay.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,breakable,
toggle left and right,sharp corners,
boxrule=0mm,top=0mm,bottom=0mm,left=1mm,right=1mm,
rightrule=1cm,colupper=blue!25!black,
interior style={fill overzoom image=lichtspiel.jpg,fill image opacity=0.25},
frame style={pattern=crosshatch dots light steel blue},
overlay={%}
\begin{tcbclipframe}
\tcbifoddpage{%coordinate (X) at ([xshift=-5mm]frame.east);}
\{coordinate (X) at ([xshift=5mm]frame.west);}%
\fill[shading=ball,ball color=blue!50!white,opacity=0.5] (X) circle (4mm);\}
\end{tcbclipframe}}\]
\lipsum[1-6]
\end{tcolorbox}


du


4.8 Corners

The four corners of any \texttt{tcolorbox} can be set individually as \texttt{/tcb/sharp corners} or as \texttt{/tcb/rounded corners} \textsuperscript{p.54}. These settings are also reflected in the behavior of \texttt{/tcb/borderline} \textsuperscript{p.198} and \texttt{/tcb/shadow} \textsuperscript{p.209} as one would expect.

By default, all four corners are \textit{rounded}. So, only the \texttt{/tcb/sharp corners} option will be necessary for most use cases. The \texttt{/tcb/rounded corners} \textsuperscript{p.54} option can be used to revert a \texttt{/tcb/sharp corners} setting.

\texttt{/tcb/sharp corners=\langle position\rangle} \hfil (default \texttt{all}, initially unset)

The \textit{\langle position\rangle} denotes one or more of the four box corners to be set as \textit{sharp} corners. The not assigned corners will retain their mode. Feasible values for \textit{\langle position\rangle} are:

- \texttt{northwest}
- \texttt{northeast}
- \texttt{southwest}
- \texttt{southeast}
- \texttt{north}
- \texttt{south}
- \texttt{east}
- \texttt{west}
- \texttt{downhill}
- \texttt{uphill}
- \texttt{all}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, sharp corners= north west ]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, sharp corners ]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
The \texttt{/tcb/rounded corners} can be used to revert a \texttt{/tcb/sharp corners} setting. The \texttt{(position)} denotes one or more of the four box corners to be set as \textit{rounded} corners. The not assigned corners will retain their mode. Feasible values for \texttt{(position)} are\footnote{The graphical examples assume that the boxes where set to have sharp corners before.}:

- \texttt{northwest}
- \texttt{northeast}
- \texttt{southwest}
- \texttt{ southeast}
- \texttt{north}
- \texttt{south}
- \texttt{east}
- \texttt{west}
- \texttt{downhill}
- \texttt{uphill}
- \texttt{all}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, sharp corners, rounded corners=northwest ]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, sharpish corners]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/sharpish corners} (style, no value)

Shortcut for setting \texttt{/tcb/arc} and \texttt{/tcb/outer arc} to 0pt. With this setting, rounded corners will appear as quasi-sharp, but e.g. the shadow will be somewhat rounder than the shadow of really sharp corners.

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, sharpish corners ]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, sharpish corners ]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, sharpish corners ]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
The following examples will show the differences between \texttt{/tcb/rounded corners}→P.54, \texttt{/tcb/sharpish corners}→P.54, and \texttt{/tcb/sharp corners}→P.53. The later two give the same core box, but \texttt{/tcb/borderline}→P.198 and \texttt{/tcb/shadow}→P.209 settings are slightly different. The following examples use \texttt{/tcb/drop fuzzy shadow}→P.203.

My title
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

\texttt{rounded corners}

My title
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

\texttt{sharpish corners}

My title
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

\texttt{sharp corners}
4.9 Transparency

Transparency effects are likely to be used in conjunction with jigsaw skin variants, see Section 10.11 on page 222.

/tcb/opacityframe=⟨fraction⟩

Sets the frame opacity of the box to the given ⟨fraction⟩.

\begin{tcolorbox}[opacityframe=0.25, colframe=red]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[standard jigsaw, colframe=red, opacityframe=0.5, opacityback=0.5, title filled, title=This is a title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

Also see /tcb/opacitybacklower→P.244 of the \texttt{skins} library.

/tcb/opacitybacktitle=⟨fraction⟩

Sets the title background opacity of the box to the given ⟨fraction⟩.

\begin{tcolorbox}[standard jigsaw, colframe=red, opacityframe=0.5, opacitybacktitle=0.5, title=This is a title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/opacityfill=⟨fraction⟩

Sets the fill opacity for frame, interior and optionally the title background to the given ⟨fraction⟩.

\begin{tcolorbox}[standard jigsaw, colframe=red, opacityframe=0.5, opacityfill=0.7, title=This is a title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/opacityupper = (fraction)  
(no default, initially 1.0)

Sets the text opacity of the upper box part to the given (fraction).

\begin{tcolorbox} [enhanced, opacityupper=0.5, interior ]  
\begin{tcolorbox} [enhanced, opacityupper=0.5, interior ]  
\end{tcolorbox}  
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/opacitylower = (fraction)  
(no default, initially 1.0)

Sets the text opacity of the lower box part to the given (fraction).

\begin{tcolorbox} [enhanced, opacitylower=0.5, interior ]  
\begin{tcolorbox} [enhanced, opacitylower=0.5, interior ]  
\end{tcolorbox}  
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/opacitytext = (fraction)  
(no default, initially 1.0)

Sets the text opacity of the upper and the lower box part to the given (fraction).

\begin{tcolorbox} [enhanced, opacitytext=0.5, interior ]  
\begin{tcolorbox} [enhanced, opacitytext=0.5, interior ]  
\end{tcolorbox}  
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/opacitytitle = (fraction)  
(no default, initially 1.0)

Sets the text opacity of the box title to the given (fraction).

\begin{tcolorbox} [enhanced, opacitytitle=0.7, coltitle=black, fonttitle=bfseries, title=This is a title, title ]  
\begin{tcolorbox} [enhanced, opacitytitle=0.7, coltitle=black, fonttitle=bfseries, title=This is a title, title ]  
\end{tcolorbox}  
\end{tcolorbox}
4.10 Height Control

In a typical usage scenario, the height of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is computed automatically to fit the content. Nevertheless, the height can be set to a fixed value or to fit commonly for several boxes, e.g. if boxes are set side by side.

The height control keys are only applicable to unbreakable boxes. If a box is set to be \texttt{/tcb/breakable}, the height is always computed according to the \textit{natural height}.

\texttt{/tcb/natural height} (no value, initially set)

Sets the total height of the colored box to its natural height depending on the box content.

\texttt{/tcb/height=\langle length \rangle} (no default)

Sets the total height of the colored box to \langle length \rangle independent of the box content. \langle length \rangle is the minimum height of the box, if \texttt{/tcb/height plus} is larger than zero.

\texttt{/tcb/height plus=\langle length \rangle} (no default, initially 0pt)

The box may extend a given fixed \texttt{/tcb/height} up to the given \langle length \rangle.
/tcb/height from=(\textit{min}) to (\textit{max})

Sets the box height to a dimension between \textit{(min)} and \textit{(max)}.

\begin{tcolorbox}
colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,left=1mm,top=1mm,
bottom=1mm,right=1mm,boxsep=0mm,width=4.5cm,nobeforeafter,
height from=2cm to 8cm
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{mybox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.\end{mybox}

\begin{mybox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}. This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}. This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.\end{mybox}

\begin{mybox}
\lipsum[2]\end{mybox}

\begin{mybox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.\end{mybox}

\lipsum[2]

\begin{tcolorbox}
\textbf{tcbset}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[text height=2cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} where the text area has a height of 2cm.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} where the text area has a height of 2cm.
/tcb/add to height=\langle length \rangle  

(style, no default)

Adds \langle length \rangle to the current height of the colored box. /tcb/height^{P.58} has to be set before this key is used! If this option is used several times, then the /tcb/height^{P.58} is also increased several times.

\tcbset{height=2cm, 
valign=center, width=\langle \textwidth-2mm \rangle/2, 
before=,after=\text{\hfill},colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white}

\begin{tcolorbox}
This box has a height of 2cm.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[add to height=1cm]
This box has a height of 3cm.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/add to natural height=\langle length \rangle  

(style, no default)

The application of this option generates a box with natural height plus the given \langle length \rangle. If this option is used several times, then the last setting of \langle length \rangle wins. The resulting box is not considered a fixed height box and the implementation is quite different to /tcb/add to height.

\tcbset{valign=center, width=\langle \textwidth-2mm \rangle/2, 
before=,after=\text{\hfill},colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white}

\begin{tcolorbox}
This box has natural height.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[add to natural height=1cm]
This box has natural height plus 1 cm.
\end{tcolorbox}
If set to `true`, the height of the `tcolorbox` is set to the rest of the available vertical space of the current page. If set to `maximum`, the page is compressed as much as possible. Note that the `tcolorbox` is always set as its own paragraph using this option. Also see `/tcb/text fill` → P.74.

Note that the library `/tcbslibrary/breakable` has to be loaded to use this key!

This height control key is only applicable to unbreakable boxes, but it uses code from the library `/tcbslibrary/breakable`. The counterpart for breakable boxes is `/tcb/height fixed` → P.406.

This option can and should not be used for boxes in boxes, but it can be used for boxes inside a `tcbraster` → P.306.

```latex
\begin{tcolorbox}[height fill,  
colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,  
title=Box which fills the rest of the page]  
\lipsum[1]  
\end{tcolorbox}
```

If this option is used for a `tcolorbox` which is embedded inside another (outer) `tcolorbox` and if this outer `tcolorbox` has a fixed height, then the given \( \text{(fraction)} \) of the available text height of the outer `tcolorbox` is used as \( \text{/tcb/height} \) for the current `tcolorbox`. Otherwise, \( \text{/tcb/natural height} \) is applied for the current `tcolorbox`.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Outer box with fixed height 3.5cm,height=3.5cm]
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Inner box,nobeforeafter,inherit height]
This inner box matches the available space.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Outer box with natural height]
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Inner box,nobeforeafter,inherit height]
This inner box has its natural height.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Outer box with fixed height 5cm,height=5cm]
\begin{tcolorbox}[colframe=red,beforeafter skip=0pt,inherit height=0.6]
Deeply nested box using 60 percent of the available space.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[colframe=red,beforeafter skip=0pt,inherit height=0.4]
Deeply nested box using 40 percent of the available space.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}
Sets \texttt{\texttt{tcb/height}}\textsuperscript{\texttt{-P.58}} to match the width of the colored box.

\begin{tcolorbox}[width=3cm, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, halign=center, valign=center, square] This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}. \end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{\texttt{tcb/space}}\texttt{=\{\texttt{fraction}\}} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially 0)}

If the height of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is not the natural height, the space difference between the forced and the natural size is distributed between the upper and the lower part of the box. This space could also be negative. \texttt{\{\texttt{fraction}\}} with a value between 0 and 1 is the amount of space which is added to the upper part, the rest is added to the lower part. If there is no lower part, then all of the space is added to the upper part always.

\begin{tcbset} \texttt{width=(\linewidth-2mm)/3, before=, after=\hfill, colframe=blue!75!black, colback=white, height=3cm} \end{tcbset}

\begin{verbatim}
\foreach \f in \{0.2,0.4,0.7\}
{\begin{tcolorbox}[\texttt{space=\f}]
This is the upper part.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\texttt{tcb/space to upper}} \hspace{1cm} \text{(style)}

This is an abbreviation for \texttt{\texttt{space=1}}, i.e. all extra space is added to the upper part.

\texttt{\texttt{tcb/space to lower}} \hspace{1cm} \text{(style, initially set)}

This is an abbreviation for \texttt{\texttt{space=0}}, i.e. all extra space is added to the lower part (if there is any).
/tcb/space to both

This is an abbreviation for \texttt{space=0.5}, i.e. the extra space equally distributed between the upper and the lower part.

\begin{tcolorbox}[width=(\linewidth-2mm)/3,before=,after=\hfill,
colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,height=3cm]
\foreach \myspace in {space to upper,space to both,space to lower}
{\begin{tcolorbox}[\myspace]
This is the upper part.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}}
\end{tcolorbox}

/\texttt{tcb/space to=⟨macro⟩}

If the height of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is not the natural height, the space difference between the forced and the natural size is saved into the given local \texttt{⟨macro⟩}. This \texttt{⟨macro⟩} can and should be used inside the box content to add content which is vertically sized to match \texttt{⟨macro⟩}.

\begin{itemize}
\item The actual length saved into \texttt{⟨macro⟩} is adapted dynamically during several compilations – at least two, but maybe more.
\item Due to the adaption algorithm, objects can be sized with \texttt{⟨macro⟩} plus any offset length.
\item Never ever use \texttt{⟨macro⟩} multiplied with a factor. The only exception to this rule is that the space can be split into parts which sum to \texttt{⟨macro⟩}.
\item Never use this in combination with /tcb/fit.\footnote{P. 454}
\end{itemize}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,height=3cm,space to=\myspace]
This is my box of height 3cm. The space is filled with a picture:\[2mm]\includegraphics[width=\linewidth,height=\myspace]{goldshade.png}\[1mm]
This is some other text.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,height=3cm,\space to=\myspace]
\includegraphics[width=\linewidth,height=0.33\dimexpr\myspace\]{blueshade.png}\[1mm\]
This is my box of height 3cm.\[2mm\]
\includegraphics[width=\linewidth,height=0.67\dimexpr\myspace\]{goldshade.png}
\end{tcolorbox}

This is my box of height 3cm.

\texttt{/tcb/split=⟨fraction⟩} \hspace{1cm} (no default)

If the height of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is not the natural height, the \texttt{(fraction)} with a value between 0 and 1 determines the positioning of the segmentation between the upper and the lower part. Here, 0 stands for top and 1 for bottom. Note that the box is split regardless of the actual dimensions of the text parts!

\texttt{\tcbset\{width=(\linewidth-2mm)/3,before=,after=\hfill,height=3cm,\colback=white,\colframe=blue!75!black,valign=center,valign lower=center\}}

\foreach \f in \{0.1,0.5,0.8\}
\{\begin{tcolorbox}[split=\f]
This is the upper part.
\tcblower
This is the lower part with a lot of text in several lines.
\end{tcolorbox}\}

This is the upper part.

This is the lower part with a lot of text in several lines.

This is the upper part.

This is the lower part with a lot of text in several lines.

This is the upper part.

This is the lower part with a lot of text in several lines.
Boxes which are members of an equal height group will all get the same height, i.e. the maximum of all their natural heights. The \( \langle id \rangle \) serves to distinguish between different height groups. Note that you have to compile twice to see changes and that height groups are global definitions.

\[ \int_{0}^{1} x^2 = \frac{1}{3}. \]
/tcb/minimum for equal height group=⟨id⟩:⟨length⟩ (no default, initially unset)

Plants a ⟨length⟩ into the equal height group with the given ⟨id⟩. This ensures that the height will not drop below ⟨length⟩. Note that you cannot reduce a computed height value by using this key with a small value. The difference to applying /tcb/height→P.58 directly is that the boxes are never too small for their content.

\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,arc=0mm,
before=,after=\hfill,fonttitle=\bfseries,left=2mm,right=2mm,
width=3.5cm,
equal height group=C,
minimum for equal height group=C:3.5cm}

\begin{tcolorbox}
My first box. All boxes will get 3.5cm times 3.5cm
if the content height is not too large.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}
My second box.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tclistering}{}
\textbf{Mixed}
with a listing.
\end{tclistering}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title={Fourth box}]
My final box.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height,colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,
raster every box/.style={minimum for current equal height group=2cm}]
\tcbitem A
\tcbitem B
\end{tcbitemize}

/tcb/minimum for current equal height group=⟨length⟩ (no default, initially unset)

Sets /tcb/minimum for equal height group for the current equal height group. Apparently, this only works for an already known equal height group, i.e. /tcb/equal height group→P.66 has to be set before this option is used. This option is likely to be used in combination with /tcb/raster equal height→P.315

% \tcbuselibrary{raster}
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height,colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,
raster every box/.style={minimum for current equal height group=2cm}]
\tcbitem A
\tcbitem B
\end{tcbitemize}
/tcb/use height from group=(id) (style, default current group)

Sets the current box to a fixed /tcb/height\textsuperscript{P.58} which is copied from an equal height group with the given \langle id\rangle. If this height is not available during the current compilation, no fixed height setting is used. If \langle id\rangle is omitted, the current equal height group is used which has to be set before by \texttt{/tcb/equal height group}\textsuperscript{P.66}.

Note that the natural height of the current box is not considered for computation of the group height. The main application for /tcb/use height from group is that the height can be adapted further by /tcb/add to height\textsuperscript{P.60}.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[use height from group=C, add to height=-2cm, colframe=blue!75!black, colback=white]
Height from group \enquote{C} of the previous example, but reduced by 2cm.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcbrasternum}
\textbf{Box 1}
\begin{tcolorbox}
First line
second line
The height of this box rules.
\end{tcolorbox}
\textbf{Box 2}
\begin{tcolorbox}
Test
\end{tcolorbox}
\textbf{Box 3}
\begin{tcolorbox}
First line
second line
\end{tcolorbox}
\textbf{Box 4}
\begin{tcolorbox}
The height of this box rules.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbrasternum}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\texttt{\% \tcbuselibrary{raster}}
\texttt{Every line is inside an equal height group:}
\begin{tcolorbox}[raster equal height=rows, title=Box \thetcbrasternum, enhanced, size=small, colframe=red!50!black, colback=red!10!white]
\begin{tcolorbox}
First line \second line\
The height of this box rules.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[use height from group]Test\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[use height from group]
First line \second line\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[use height from group]
The height of this box rules.\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

Every line is inside an equal height group:

\begin{tcolorbox}[use height from group=\langle macro\rangle, \langle id\rangle]
\texttt{\%}
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{\% \tcbheightfromgroup{\langle macro\rangle}{\langle id\rangle}}

Saves the height from an equal height group with the given \langle id\rangle to a \langle macro\rangle. If this height is not available during the current compilation, \langle macro\rangle is set to \texttt{0pt}.
4.11 Box Content Additions

The following options introduce some arbitrary \textit{(code)} to the content of a \texttt{tcolorbox}. These additions can be given at the beginning or at the ending of the title, the upper part, or the lower part.

\texttt{/tcb/before title\textasciitilde(code)} \hspace{1cm} (no default, initially unset)

The given \textit{(code)} is placed \textit{after} the color and font settings and \textit{before} the content of the title. The \textit{(code)} is appended by a final \texttt{\ignorespaces}.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{before title={\textcolor{yellow}{\large Important:}~},
        colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{/tcb/before title\*\textasciitilde(code)} \hspace{1cm} (no default, initially unset)

The given \textit{(code)} is placed \textit{after} the color and font settings and \textit{before} the content of the title. In contrast to \texttt{/tcb/before title}, no \texttt{\ignorespaces} is appended.

\texttt{/tcb/after title\textasciitilde(code)} \hspace{1cm} (no default, initially unset)

The given \textit{(code)} is placed \textit{after} the content of the title. The \textit{(code)} is prepended by a leading \texttt{\unskip}.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{after title={\hfill\colorbox{Navy}{approved}},
        colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{/tcb/after title\*\textasciitilde(code)} \hspace{1cm} (no default, initially unset)

The given \textit{(code)} is placed \textit{after} the content of the title. In contrast to \texttt{/tcb/after title}, no \texttt{\unskip} is prepended.
The given \texttt{code} is placed \textit{after} the color and font settings and \textit{before} the content of the upper part. The \texttt{code} is appended by a final \texttt{\ignorespaces}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[size=small,tile,  
\textcolor{black}{colback=yellow!20,\textcolor{yellow!70!black}{colbacktitle=yellow!70!black},}  
\textcolor{black}{title=My table,\textcolor{black}{hbox,center,center title,}}  
\textcolor{black}{before upper*=\texttt{\begin{tabular}{cc},}}  
\textcolor{black}{after upper*=\texttt{\end{tabular}},}  
\textcolor{black}{\texttt{\end{tcolorbox}}}  
\texttt{\begin{tabular}{cc}  
\textcolor{black}{one & two}  
\textcolor{black}{three & four}  
\end{tabular}}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My table,  \texttt{\begin{tabular}{cc}  
\textcolor{black}{Title}  
\textcolor{black}{one & two}  
\textcolor{black}{three & four}  
\end{tabular}}

\texttt{\end{tcolorbox}}
The given \textit{⟨code⟩} is placed \textit{after} the content of the upper part. The \textit{⟨code⟩} is prepended by a leading \texttt{\unskip}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[^{title=My title}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

From version 3.80 to 3.94, this option prepended an \texttt{\unskip} to the given \textit{⟨code⟩}. From version 3.95 to 4.15, this option was deprecated. From version 4.20, this option is re-established with changed semantic (no \texttt{\unskip}!)
The given \(\text{code}\) is placed \textit{after} the color and font settings and \textit{before} the content of the lower part. The \(\text{code}\) is appended by a final \texttt{\ignorespaces}.

\set{before lower = \textbf{Behold:~},colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tabular}{cc}
one & two \\
three & four
\end{tabular}

The given \(\text{code}\) is placed \textit{after} the color and font settings and \textit{before} the content of the lower part. In contrast to /\texttt{tcb/before lower}, no \texttt{\ignorespaces} is appended. Use this for situations where \texttt{\ignorespaces} is not needed or causes harm.

\begin{tcolorbox}[size=small,bicolor,sidebyside,center lower, 
  colback=yellow!30,colbacklower=yellow!20,colframe=yellow!80!black, 
  before lower*=\begin{tabular}{cc}, 
  after lower*\end{tabular}, 
]
My table 
\tcblower 
\multicolumn{2}{c}{Title}\
one & two \ 
three & four \ 
\end{tcolorbox}
The given \textit{⟨code⟩} is placed after the content of the lower part. The \textit{⟨code⟩} is prepended by a leading \texttt{\unskip}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[after lower=\textit{This is the end.},
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

This is the lower part. \textit{This is the end.}

The given \textit{⟨code⟩} is placed after the content of the lower part. In contrast to \texttt{/tcb/after upper} \texttt{\P.71}, no \texttt{\unskip} is prepended. Use this for situations where \texttt{\unskip} is not needed or causes harm.

\begin{tcolorbox}[before lower*=\$\$,after lower*=\$,
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
\sin^2(x) + \cos^2(x) = 1.
\end{tcolorbox}

\sin^2(x) + \cos^2(x) = 1.

\begin{tcolorbox}[before lower=\$\$,after lower=\$,
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
\sin^2(x) + \cos^2(x) = 1.
\end{tcolorbox}

From version 3.80 to 3.94, this option prepended an \texttt{\unskip} to the given \textit{⟨code⟩}. From version 3.95 to 4.15, this option was deprecated. From version 4.20, this option is re-established with changed semantic (no \texttt{\unskip}!)}
If `tcb/text fill` is used, one cannot have a lower part and the box is unbreakable.

This style sets `tcb/before upper` → P.70 and `tcb/after upper` → P.71 to embed the upper part with a minipage. If a fixed height was applied e.g. by `tcb/height` → P.58 or `tcb/height fill` → P.61, this minipage gets a matching height. This allows to use vertical glue macros like `\vfill` to act like expected. If the box has no fixed height, setting `tcb/text fill` has no other effect as making the box unbreakable.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
height=8cm,text fill,
title=My filled box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\par\vfill
\begin{center}
My middle text.
\end{center}
\par\vfill
This is the end of my box.
\end{tcolorbox}

My filled box

This is a tcolorbox.

My middle text.
This style sets /tcb/before upper→P.70 and /tcb/after upper→P.71 and several geometry keys to support a tabular* with the given ⟨preamble⟩. The packages array and colortbl have to be loaded separately.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tabular}{@{\extracolsep{\fill}\hspace{5mm}}lrrrrr@{\hspace{5mm}}} 
\hline
Group & One & Two & Three & Four & Sum \\
\hline
Red & 1000.00 & 2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 10000.00 \\
\hline
Green & 2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 5000.00 & 14000.00 \\
\hline
Blue & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 5000.00 & 6000.00 & 18000.00 \\
\hline
Sum & 6000.00 & 9000.00 & 12000.00 & 15000.00 & 42000.00 \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a variant of /tcb/tabulars which adds some ⟨code⟩ before the table starts.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tabular}{@{\extracolsep{\fill}\hspace{20mm}}lll@{\hspace{20mm}}} 
\hline
One & Two & Three \\
\hline
1000.00 & 2000.00 & 3000.00 \\
\hline
2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00 \\
\end{tabular}
\end{tcolorbox}
If \texttt{/tcb/tabularx} or \texttt{/tcb/tabularx*} are used, one cannot have a lower part.

\texttt{/tcb/tabularx}=(\textit{preamble})  \hspace{1cm} (style)

This style sets \texttt{/tcb/before upper}\hspace{1mm}^{\textit{P.70}} and \texttt{/tcb/after upper}\hspace{1mm}^{\textit{P.71}} and several geometry keys to support a \texttt{tabularx} with the given \textit{(preamble)}. The packages \texttt{tabularx} \cite{tabularx}, \texttt{array}, and \texttt{colortbl} have to be loaded separately.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tabularx}{X||Y|Y|Y|Y||Y}
\hline
\textbf{Group} & \textbf{One} & \textbf{Two} & \textbf{Three} & \textbf{Four} & \textbf{Sum} \\
\hline
\textcolor{red}{Red} & 1000.00 & 2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 10000.00 \\
\textcolor{green}{Green} & 2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 5000.00 & 14000.00 \\
\textcolor{blue}{Blue} & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 5000.00 & 6000.00 & 18000.00 \\
\hline
\textbf{Sum} & 6000.00 & 9000.00 & 12000.00 & 15000.00 & 42000.00 \\
\end{tabularx}
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/tabularx*}={\textit{⟨code⟩}}\hspace{1cm} (style)

This is a variant of \texttt{/tcb/tabularx} which adds some \textit{⟨code⟩} before the table starts.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tabularx}{X|X|X}
\hline
\textbf{Group} & \textbf{One} & \textbf{Two} \\
\hline
\textcolor{red}{Red} & 1000.00 & 2000.00 \\
\textcolor{green}{Green} & 2000.00 & 3000.00 \\
\textcolor{blue}{Blue} & 3000.00 & 4000.00 \\
\hline
\textbf{Sum} & 6000.00 & 9000.00 \\
\end{tabularx}
\end{tcolorbox}
This style adds a centered `tikzpicture` environment to the start and end of the upper part. The ⟨options⟩ may be given as TikZ picture options.

\begin{tcolorbox}{tikz upper,fonttitle=\bfseries,colback=white,colframe=black, title=\tikzname\ drawing}
\path[fill=yellow,draw=yellow!75!red] (0,0) circle (1cm);
\fill[red] (45:5mm) circle (1mm);
\fill[red] (135:5mm) circle (1mm);
\draw[line width=1mm,red] (215:5mm) arc (215:325:5mm);
\end{tcolorbox}

This style adds a centered `tikzpicture` environment to the start and end of the lower part. The ⟨options⟩ may be given as TikZ picture options.

\begin{tcblisting}{tikz lower,listing side text,fonttitle=\bfseries, bicolor,colback=LightBlue!50!white,colbacklower=white,colframe=black, righthand width=3cm,title=\tikzname\ drawing}
\path[fill=yellow,draw=yellow!75!red]
(0,0) circle (1cm);
\fill[red] (45:5mm) circle (1mm);
\fill[red] (135:5mm) circle (1mm);
\draw[line width=1mm,red]
(215:5mm) arc (215:325:5mm);
\end{tcblisting}
/tcb/tikznodenupper=(options)  
This style places the upper part content into a centered Ti\kZ node. The \langle options \rangle may be given as Ti\kZ node options. This style is especially useful for boxes with multiline texts which are fitted to the text width.

% \usepackage{tikz} 
\newtcbbox{\headline}{[1][1]{enhanced,center, 
  ignore nobreak,fontupper=\Large\bfseries, 
  colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white, 
  drop fuzzy shadow=yellow,tikznodenupper,#1}} 
\headline{Important\Headline} 

Important \Headline

/tcb/tikznodelower=(options)  
This style places the lower part content into a centered Ti\kZ node. The \langle options \rangle may be given as Ti\kZ node options.

% \usepackage{tikz} 
\begin{tcolorbox}[bicolor,colback=LightBlue!50!white,colbacklower=white, 
  colframe=black,tikznodelower={inner sep=2pt,draw=red,fill=yellow}] 
Upper part. 
\tcblower 
Lower part. 
\end{tcolorbox} 

Upper part. 

Lower part.

/tcb/tikznodenupper=(options)  
Shortcut for setting /tcb/tikznodenupper and /tcb/tikznodelower the same time.

/tcb/varwidthupper=(length)  
This style places the upper part content into a varwidth environment. This style needs the varwidth package \[1\] to be loaded manually. The resulting box has a maximal width of \langle length \rangle. This option is only senseful for a \tcbbox \[14\].

% \usepackage{varwidth} 
\newtcbbox{\varbox}{[colframe=red!50!black, 
  colback=red!10!white,varwidth upper]} 
\varbox{Short text.} 
\varbox{This box contains is a longer text which is broken.} 

Short text. 

This box contains is a longer text which is broken.
4.12 Overlays

With an overlay, arbitrary \textit{graphical code} can be added to a \texttt{tcolorbox}. This code is executed \textit{after} the frame and interior are drawn and \textit{before} the text content is drawn. Therefore, you can decorate the \texttt{tcolorbox} with your own extensions. Common special cases are \textit{watermarks} which are implemented using overlays. See Subsection 10.3 from page 186 if you want to add \textit{watermarks}.

If you use the core package only, the \textit{graphical code} has to be \texttt{pgf} code and there is not much assistance for positioning. Therefore, the usage of the \texttt{/tcb/enhanced}\textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.230}}} mode from the library skins is recommended which allows \texttt{tikz} code and gives access to \texttt{/tcb/geometry nodes}\textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.156}} for positioning.

\texttt{/tcb/overlay=\langle graphical code \rangle} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially unset)}

Adds \textit{graphical code} to the box drawing process. This \textit{graphical code} is drawn \textit{after} the frame and interior and \textit{before} the text content.

% \tcbuselibrary{skins} % preamble
\tcbset{frogbox/.style={enhanced,colback=green!10,colframe=green!65!black, 
  enlarge top by=5.5mm, 
  overlay={\foreach \x in {2cm,3.5cm} { 
    \begin{scope}[shift={([xshift=\x]frame.north west)}]
      \path[draw=green!65!black,fill=green!10,line width=1mm] (0,0) arc (0:180:5mm);
      \path[fill=black] (-0.2,0) arc (0:180:1mm);
    \end{scope}}}}}

\begin{tcolorbox}[frogbox,title=My title]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

% \usetikzlibrary{patterns} % preamble
% \tcbuselibrary{skins} % preamble
\tcbset{ribbonbox/.style={enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black, 
  fonttitle=\bfseries, 
  overlay={\path[fill=blue!75!white,draw=blue,double=white!85!blue, 
    preaction={opacity=0.6,fill=blue!75!white}, 
    line width=0.1mm,double distance=0.2mm, 
    pattern=fivepointed stars,pattern color=white!75!blue] 
    ([xshift=-0.2mm,yshift=-1.02cm]frame.north east) 
    -- ++(-1.1) -- ++(-0.5,0) -- ++(1.5,-1.5) -- cycle;}}}\}

\begin{tcolorbox}[ribbonbox,title=My title]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\tcblover
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/no overlay (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the overlay if set before.

/tcb/overlay broken=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable → P.400 and is broken actually, then the (graphical code) is added to the box drawing process. /tcb/overlay → P.79 overwrites this key.

/tcb/overlay unbroken=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable → P.400 but is not broken actually or if the box is set to be /tcb/unbreakable → P.401, then the (graphical code) is added to the box drawing process. /tcb/overlay → P.79 overwrites this key.

/tcb/overlay first=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable → P.400 and is broken actually, then the (graphical code) is added to the box drawing process for the first part of the break sequence. /tcb/overlay → P.79 overwrites this key.

/tcb/overlay middle=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable → P.400 and is broken actually, then the (graphical code) is added to the box drawing process for the middle parts (if any) of the break sequence. /tcb/overlay → P.79 overwrites this key.

/tcb/overlay last=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable → P.400 and is broken actually, then the (graphical code) is added to the box drawing process for the last part of the break sequence. /tcb/overlay → P.79 overwrites this key.

/tcb/overlay unbroken and first=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

This is an optimized abbreviation for setting /tcb/overlay unbroken and /tcb/overlay first together. /tcb/overlay → P.79 overwrites this key.

/tcb/overlay middle and last=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

This is an optimized abbreviation for setting /tcb/overlay middle and /tcb/overlay last together. /tcb/overlay → P.79 overwrites this key.

/tcb/overlay unbroken and last=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

This is an optimized abbreviation for setting /tcb/overlay unbroken and /tcb/overlay last together. /tcb/overlay → P.79 overwrites this key.

/tcb/overlay first and middle=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

This is an optimized abbreviation for setting /tcb/overlay first and /tcb/overlay middle together. /tcb/overlay → P.79 overwrites this key.

This example demonstrates the application of break sequence specific overlay options. Here, we define an environment myexample based on tcolorbox where the visible drawing is done totally by overlay keys. Here, the first application of myexample produces an unbroken tcolorbox. The frame is drawn by the code given with /tcb/overlay unbroken.

The second application of myexample is broken into several parts which are drawn by the codes given with /tcb/overlay first, /tcb/overlay middle, and /tcb/overlay last.

% Preamble:
\usepackage{tikz,lipsum}
\usepackage{tcolorbox}
\usepackage{tcolorbox}
\newcounter{example}

80
Example 1


Example 2


Suspendisse vitae elit. Aliquam arcu neque, ornare in, ullamcorper quis, commodo eu, libero.


Floating box from \texttt{floatplacement}

This floating box is placed at the top of a page.

4.13 Floating Objects

\texttt{/tcb/floatplacement=\{values\}} \hspace{1cm} (no default, initially \texttt{htb})

Sets \texttt{\{values\}} as default values for the usage of \texttt{/tcb/float} and \texttt{/tcb/float*}. Feasible are the usual parameters for floating objects.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,
    watermark color=red!15!white}
\begin{tcolorbox}[floatplacement=t,float,
    title=Floating box from |floatplacement|,
    watermark text={I am floating}]
This floating box is placed at the top of a page.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{/tcb/float=\{values\}} \hspace{1cm} (default from \texttt{floatplacement})

Turns the box to a floating object where \texttt{\{values\}} are the usual parameters for such floating objects. If they are not used, the placement uses the default values given by \texttt{floatplacement}.

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tcolorbox}[float, title=Floating box from |float|,
    enhanced,watermark text={I'm also floating}]
This box floats to a feasible place automatically. You do not have to use a numbering for this floating object.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{/tcb/float*=\{values\}} \hspace{1cm} (default from \texttt{floatplacement})

Identical to \texttt{/tcb/float}, but for wide boxes spanning the whole page width of two column documents or in conjunction with the packages \texttt{multicol} or \texttt{paracol}. Note that you have to set \texttt{width=\textwidth} additionally, if the box should span the whole page width in these cases!

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tcolorbox}[float*, title=Floating box from |float*|,width=\textwidth,
    enhanced,watermark text={I'm also floating}]
In this single column document, you will see no difference to |float|.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{/tcb/nofloat} \hspace{1cm} (style, initially set)

Turns the floating behavior off.

Floating box from \texttt{float*}

In this single column document, you will see no difference to \texttt{float}.
For floating objects, the \texttt{/tcb/before\rightarrow P.86} and \texttt{/tcb/after\rightarrow P.86} settings are ignored. Instead, \texttt{/tcb/before float} and \texttt{/tcb/after float} can be used. Further, with \texttt{/tcb/every float}, the given \texttt{(code)} is inserted before a floating box. If the box is \texttt{/tcb/breakable\rightarrow P.400}, the given \texttt{(code)} is inserted before every part of the break sequence. The most common use case is \texttt{every float=\texttt{centering}}.

```
\tcbox[float=htb,title={Floating box},every float=\texttt{centering},
colback=blue!50!black,colframe=blue!50!white,colbacktitle=blue!10!white,coltitle=black,center title]
{\includegraphics[height=6cm]{lichtspiel.jpg}}
```

Code can be inserted after the begin of the float environment and before \texttt{/tcb/every float} with \texttt{/tcb/before float} and between the end of the box and the end of the float environment with \texttt{/tcb/after float}.

These options are not compatible with \texttt{/tcb/breakable\rightarrow P.400} floating objects and are ignored, if the box is set to be breakable.
4.14 Embedding into the Surroundings

Typically, but not necessarily, a \texttt{tcolorbox} is put inside a separate paragraph and has some vertical space before and after it. This behavior is controlled by the keys \texttt{/tcb/before} and \texttt{/tcb/after}.

Before version 4.40, the default setting for \texttt{/tcb/before} and \texttt{/tcb/after} was given by \texttt{/tcb/autoparskip} \textsuperscript{\texttt{P.90}}. Starting with version 4.40, the default setting is given by \texttt{/tcb/before skip balanced} \textsuperscript{\texttt{P.87}} and \texttt{/tcb/after skip balanced} \textsuperscript{\texttt{P.87}}.

Note that old documents may need adaptations of page breaks. Alternatively, the old default setting can be restored by using \texttt{\tcbsetforeverylayer{autoparskip}} inside the document preamble.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{/tcb/before} = \texttt{\{code\}} \textsuperscript{(no default, initially see \texttt{/tcb/before skip balanced} \textsuperscript{\texttt{P.87}})}

  Sets the \texttt{\{code\}} which is executed before the colored box. It is not used for floating boxes. Also, it is not used, if the box follows a heading immediately and \texttt{/tcb/ignore nobreak} \textsuperscript{\texttt{P.92}} is set to \texttt{false}.
  
  \item \texttt{/tcb/after} = \texttt{\{code\}} \textsuperscript{(no default, initially see \texttt{/tcb/after skip balanced} \textsuperscript{\texttt{P.87}})}

  Sets the \texttt{\{code\}} which is executed after the colored box. It is not used for floating boxes.
  
  \item \texttt{/tcb/nobeforeafter} \textsuperscript{(style, no value)}

  Abbreviation for clearing the keys \texttt{before} and \texttt{after}. The colored box is not put into a paragraph and there is no space before or after the box.
\end{itemize}

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{myone/.style={colback=LightGreen,colframe=DarkGreen,
  equal height group=nobefaf,width=\linewidth/4,nobeforeafter}}
\begin{tcolorbox}[myone,title=Box 1]Box 1\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[myone,title=Box 2]Box 2\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[myone,title=Box 3]Box 3\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[myone,title=Box 4]Box 4\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{/tcb/force nobeforeafter} \textsuperscript{(style, no value)}

Forces the setting of \texttt{/tcb/nobeforeafter} even if \texttt{/tcb/before} and \texttt{/tcb/after} are set to other values later. Do not use this option globally unless you \textit{really} know what you do. Note that embedded boxes do not inherit this forced clearance.
Inserts some vertical space before the colored box. This style sets `/tcb/before` → P.86.

If the depth of the preceding \TeX box is between 0pt and 0.3\baselineskip, the distance between the baseline of the preceeding \TeX box and the tcolorbox ist set to ⟨\text{glue}⟩ + 0.3\baselineskip.

If the depth is larger, the distance of the preceeding \TeX box and the tcolorbox ist set to ⟨\text{glue}⟩.

Alternatively, see `/tcb/before skip` → P.88 which ignores the baseline.

\begin{tcolorbox}[before skip balanced=1cm, colframe=red!50!white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

Some text.

\begin{tcolorbox}[after skip balanced=1cm, colframe=red!50!white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

Some text.

\begin{tcolorbox}[beforeafter skip balanced=0pt, height=1.8\baselineskip, enlarge top by=.1\baselineskip, enlarge bottom by=.1\baselineskip, colframe=blue!20,colback=blue!5, size=small,valign upper=center,#1 ]
\noindent\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[use as bounding box] (0,0) rectangle (0.1,0.1);
\foreach \y in {0,1,...,9} {
  \draw[very thin,red] (-0.2,-\y*\baselineskip) -- (\linewidth+0.2cm,-\y*\baselineskip);
}
\end{tikzpicture}
\begin{doubleline} Abc \end{doubleline}
\begin{doubleline} Def \end{doubleline}
\begin{doubleline} Ghi \end{doubleline}
\end{tcolorbox}

line 1

line 2

line 3

line 4
/tcb/before skip=(glue) (style, no default)

Inserts some vertical space of the given ⟨glue⟩ before the colored box. This style sets /tcb/before \P.86. In contrast to /tcb/before skip balanced \P.87, this ⟨glue⟩ is relative to the lower edge of the preceeding box and not to the baseline.

\begin{tcolorbox}[before skip=1cm, colframe=red!50!white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

Some text.

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

Some text.

/tcb/after skip=(glue) (style, no default)

Inserts some vertical space of the given ⟨glue⟩ after the colored box. This style sets /tcb/after \P.86. In contrast to /tcb/after skip balanced \P.87, this ⟨glue⟩ is relative to the upper edge of the following box and not to the baseline.

\begin{tcolorbox}[after skip=1cm, colframe=red!50!white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

Some text.

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

Some text.

/tcb/beforeafter skip=(glue) (style, no default)

Inserts some vertical space of the given ⟨glue⟩ before and after the colored box. This style sets /tcb/before skip and /tcb/after skip.

\tcbset{beforeafter skip=0pt, colframe=red!50!white}

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

Second box.

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

Second box.

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

Second box.

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

Second box.

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

Second box.

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

Second box.

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

Second box.
/tcb/left skip=(length) (style, no default, initially 0mm)
Inserts some horizontal space of the given ⟨length⟩ before the colored box. This style sets /tcb/grow to left by \textsuperscript{−1.95} with the negated ⟨length⟩, i.e. the bounding box and box width are changed.

\begin{tcolorbox}[left skip=1cm, colframe=red!50!white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/right skip=(length) (style, no default, initially 0mm)
Inserts some horizontal space of the given ⟨length⟩ after the colored box. This style sets /tcb/grow to right by \textsuperscript{+1.95} with the negated ⟨length⟩, i.e. the bounding box and box width are changed.

\begin{tcolorbox}[right skip=1cm, colframe=red!50!white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/leftright skip=(length) (style, no default)
Inserts some horizontal space of the given ⟨length⟩ before and after the colored box. This style changes the bounding box and the box width.

\begin{tcolorbox}[leftright skip=1cm, colframe=red!50!white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
This options is considered to be superseded by \texttt{/tcb/before \ skip \ balanced} \textsuperscript{P.87} and \texttt{/tcb/after \ skip \ balanced} \textsuperscript{P.87} (see note on page 86).
Sets the keys \texttt{before} and \texttt{after} to values which are recommended, if the package \texttt{parskip} is used and there is no better idea for \texttt{before} and \texttt{after}. This is similar to:
\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{parskip/.style={before={\par\pagebreak[0]\parindent=0pt},
                        after={\par}}}\end{verbatim}

This options is considered to be superseded by \texttt{/tcb/before \ skip \ balanced} \textsuperscript{P.87} and \texttt{/tcb/after \ skip \ balanced} \textsuperscript{P.87} (see note on page 86).
Sets the keys \texttt{before} and \texttt{after} to values which are recommended, if the package \texttt{parskip} is \textit{not} used and there is no better idea for \texttt{before} and \texttt{after}. This is similar to:
\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{noparjson/.style={before={\par\pagebreak[0]\smallskip\parindent=0pt},
                          after={\par\smallskip}}}\end{verbatim}

This options is considered to be superseded by \texttt{/tcb/before \ skip \ balanced} \textsuperscript{P.87} and \texttt{/tcb/after \ skip \ balanced} \textsuperscript{P.87} (see note on page 86).
Tries to detect the usage of the package \texttt{parskip} and sets the keys \texttt{before} and \texttt{after} accordingly. Actually, the following is done:
\begin{itemize}
  \item If the length of $\parskip$ is greater than 0pt at the beginning of the document, \texttt{/tcb/parskip} is executed. Here, the usage of package \texttt{parskip} is \textit{assumed}.
  \item Otherwise, if the length of $\parskip$ is not greater than 0pt at the beginning of the document, \texttt{/tcb/noparjson} is executed. Here, the absence of package \texttt{parskip} is \textit{assumed}.
\end{itemize}
/tcb/baseline=⟨length⟩  (no default, initially 0pt)

Used to set the \pgfsetbaseline value of the resulting tcolorbox.

```
\tcbset{colframe=red!50!white,width=4cm,nobeforeafter}
\begin{tcolorbox}[baseline=3mm]
  One line.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[baseline=3mm]
  First line.\Second line.
\end{tcolorbox}

Some text..............................
```

N 2014-10-10

/tcb/box align=⟨alignment⟩  (style, no default, initially bottom)

Used to set the /tcb/baseline value of the resulting tcolorbox. Feasible values for ⟨alignment⟩ are:

- bottom: alignment with the box bottom,
- top: alignment with the box top,
- center: alignment with the box center,
- base: alignment with the box content base. This option is not applicable for a \tcolorbox \textbullet P.12 but for a \tcbox \textbullet P.14 only. It is an alias for /tcb/tcbox raise \textbullet P.108.

```
\tcbset{colframe=red!50!white,width=4cm,nobeforeafter}
\begin{tcolorbox}[box align=bottom]
  One line.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[box align=bottom]
  First line.\Second line.
\end{tcolorbox}

Some text..............................
```

```
\tcbset{colframe=red!50!white,width=4cm,nobeforeafter}
\begin{tcolorbox}[box align=top]
  One line.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[box align=top]
  First line.\Second line.
\end{tcolorbox}

Some text..............................
```
/tcbset{colframe=red!50!white,width=4cm,nobeforeafter}
Some text\dotfill
\begin{tcolorbox}[box align=center]
One line.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[box align=center]
First line.\Second line.
\end{tcolorbox}
Some text................................
One line.
Second line.

/tcbset{colframe=red!50!white,nobeforeafter}
Some text\dotfill
\tcbset{nobeforeafter,box align=base}{One line}
\tcbset{nobeforeafter,box align=base,size=fbox}{Another line}
Some text .........................................................  One line  Another line

\texttt{%2014-12-11} /tcb/ignore nobreak=true|false \texttt{(default true, initially false)}

After a heading, \LaTeX{} tries to avoid a break by setting a \texttt{nobreak} boolean value. Starting from version 3.33, the \texttt{/tcb/before} \texttt{→P.86} respectively \texttt{/tcb/before skip} \texttt{→P.88} settings are not used after a heading if \texttt{/tcb/ignore nobreak} is set to \texttt{false}. For an unbreakable box, \texttt{/tcb/before nobreak} is used instead. Further, a \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \texttt{→P.400} box will also try to avoid a break between a heading and a directly following first part of a break sequence. Set \texttt{/tcb/ignore nobreak} to \texttt{true}, if \texttt{nobreak} should be ignored as prior to version 3.33. Also, such a setting may be used locally to enforce the \texttt{/tcb/before} \texttt{→P.86} setting.

\texttt{%2014-12-16} /tcb/before nobreak=\langle code \rangle \texttt{(no default, initially \noindent)}

Sets the \langle\texttt{code}\rangle which is executed before the colored box if it is unbreakable, if \texttt{/tcb/ignore nobreak} is not set, and if the box follows a heading.

\texttt{%2017-02-23} /tcb/parfillskip restore=true|false \texttt{(default true, initially true)}

If this option is set to be \texttt{true}, the minimum value of \texttt{\parfillskip} is tested at specific spots, if it is greater than \texttt{0pt}. If so, \texttt{\parfillskip} is restored to \texttt{\@flushglue} which happens to be the default value.

These tests are executed for /tcb/parskip\texttt{→P.90}, /tcb/noparskip\texttt{→P.90}, /tcb/after skip\texttt{→P.88}, /tcb/breakable\texttt{→P.400}, and tcbraster\texttt{→P.306}.

This option was created to automatically avoid overfull box warnings with \texttt{\parfillskip} changing packages.
4.15 Bounding Box

Normally, every \texttt{tcolorbox} has a bounding box which fits exactly to the dimensions of the outer frame. Therefore, \LaTeX{} reserves exactly the space needed for the box. This behavior can be changed by enlarging (or shrinking) the bounding box. If the bounding box is enlarged, the \texttt{tcolorbox} will get some clearance around it. If the bounding box is shrunk, i.e. enlarged with negative values, the \texttt{tcolorbox} will overlap to other parts of the page. For example, the \texttt{tcolorbox} could be stretched into the page margin.

The following examples use \texttt{/tcb/show bounding box \textasciitilde P.200} to display the actual bounding box. For this, the library \texttt{skins} has to be included and \texttt{/tcb/enhanced \textasciitilde P.230} has to be set.

4.15.1 Shifting Bounding Box Borders

\texttt{/tcb/enlarge top initially by=⟨length⟩} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially 0mm)}

Enlarges the bounding box distance to the top of the box by \textit{⟨length⟩}. If the box is \textit{breakable}, only the first box of the break sequence gets enlarged. \texttt{/tcb/enlarge top by \textasciitilde P.94} overwrites this key.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbset\{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white\}}

\texttt{\begin{tcolorbox}[enlarge top initially by=-5mm]}
This is a \texttt{\textbf{tcolorbox}}.
\texttt{\end{tcolorbox}}

\texttt{\begin{tcolorbox}[enlarge top initially by=5mm,enhanced,show bounding box]}
This is a \texttt{\textbf{tcolorbox}}.
\texttt{\end{tcolorbox}}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/enlarge bottom finally by=⟨length⟩} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially 0mm)}

Enlarges the bounding box distance to the bottom of the box by \textit{⟨length⟩}. If the box is \textit{breakable}, only the last box of the break sequence gets enlarged. \texttt{/tcb/enlarge bottom by \textasciitilde P.94} overwrites this key.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbset\{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white\}}

\texttt{\begin{tcolorbox}[enlarge bottom finally by=5mm]}
This is a \texttt{\textbf{tcolorbox}}.
\texttt{\end{tcolorbox}}

\texttt{\begin{tcolorbox}[enlarge bottom finally by=-5mm,enhanced,show bounding box]}
This is a \texttt{\textbf{tcolorbox}}.
\texttt{\end{tcolorbox}}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/enlarge top at break by\{length\}  
(no default, initially 0mm)

Enlarges the bounding box distance to the top of the box by \{length\}, if the box is /tcb/breakable → P.400. In this case, it is applied to middle and last parts in a break sequence. /tcb/enlarge top by overwrites this key.

/tcb/enlarge bottom at break by\{length\}  
(no default, initially 0mm)

Enlarges the bounding box distance to the bottom of the box by \{length\}, if the box is /tcb/breakable → P.400. In this case, it is applied to first and middle parts in a break sequence. /tcb/enlarge bottom by overwrites this key.

/tcb/enlarge top by\{length\}  
(no default, initially 0mm)

Enlarges the bounding box distance to the top of the box by \{length\}. /tcb/enlarge top initially by → P.93 and /tcb/enlarge top at break by are set to \{length\}.

/tcb/enlarge bottom by\{length\}  
(no default, initially 0mm)

Enlarges the bounding box distance to the bottom of the box by \{length\}. /tcb/enlarge bottom finally by → P.93 and /tcb/enlarge bottom at break by are set to \{length\}.

/tcb/enlarge left by\{length\}  
(no default, initially 0mm)

Enlarges the bounding box distance to the left side of the box by \{length\}.

/tcb/enlarge right by\{length\}  
(no default, initially 0mm)

Enlarges the bounding box distance to the right side of the box by \{length\}.
/tcb/enlarge by=(length)  (no default, initially 0mm)
Enlarges the bounding box distance to all sides of the box by \langle length\rangle.

\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,width=5cm,nobeforeafter}
\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enlarge by=5mm,enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/grow to left by=(length)  (no default, initially 0mm)
Enlarges the current box width by \langle length\rangle and enlarges (shrinks) the bounding box distance
to the left side of the box by −\langle length\rangle. Also see /tcb/left skip → P.89.

\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white}
\begin{tcolorbox}[width=5cm,grow to left by=2cm,enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} with a width of 7cm.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/grow to right by=(length)  (no default, initially 0mm)
Enlarges the current box width by \langle length\rangle and enlarges (shrinks) the bounding box distance
to the right side of the box by −\langle length\rangle. Also see /tcb/right skip → P.89.

\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white}
\begin{tcolorbox}[grow to right by=2cm,enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\bigskip
\begin{tcolorbox}[grow to right by=2cm,grow to left by=1cm, enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
4.15.2 Box Alignment

/tcb/grow sidewards by=(length) (no default, initially 0mm)
Shortcut for setting /tcb/grow to left by → P.95 and /tcb/grow to right by → P.95 to (length). Also see /tcb/oversize → P.50 and /tcb/spread sidewards → P.99.

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

4.15.2.1 Box Alignment

/tcb/flush left (style, no value)
Enlarges the bounding box to the right side to fill the line completely.

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

/tcb/flush right (style, no value)
Enlarges the bounding box to the left side to fill the line completely.

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

/tcb/center (style, no value)
Enlarges the bounding box equally to both sides to fill the line completely.

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
4.15.3 Toggle Enlargements

/tcb/toggle enlargement=(toggle preset)  \hspace{20mm} (default evenpage, initially none)

According to the \texttt{toggle preset}, the left and the right enlargements of the bounding box are switched or not. Feasible values are:

- \texttt{none}: no switching.
- \texttt{forced}: the values of the left and right enlargement are switched.
- \texttt{evenpage}: if the page is an even page, the values of the left and right enlargement are switched. This value also sets \texttt{/tcb/check odd page} to true.

See \texttt{/tcb/toggle left and right} to toggle geometry settings.
4.15.4 Spread Box to Page Borders

The following border options are not applicable to nested boxes, boxes inside tables, etc. For boxes inside lists, the options may work, but not necessarily. Also, boxes should be set with \noindent and full width.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,spread inwards, colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,spread outwards, colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,move upwards=, colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,move upwards*, colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,fill downwards, colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.
This is an example for “spread upwards”.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,spread upwards,sharp corners=north,height=3cm, colframe=blue!75!black,interior style={top color=blue!50,bottom color=white}]
This is an example for \enquote{spread upwards}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,spread sidewards, colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,spread downwards,sharp corners=south, colframe=red!75!black,interior style={top color=white,bottom color=red!50}]
This is an example for \enquote{spread downwards}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is an example for “spread downwards”.

1. \texttt{/tcb/spread upwards=(length)} (default 0pt, initially unset)
   - Combination of \texttt{/tcb/move upwards} → P.98, \texttt{/tcb/spread inwards} → P.98, and \texttt{/tcb/spread outwards} → P.98. The optional \texttt{(length)} is used for all these keys.

2. \texttt{/tcb/spread upwards=(length)} (default 0pt, initially unset)
   - Identical to \texttt{/tcb/move upwards} → P.98, but without starting a new page.

3. \texttt{/tcb/spread sidewards=(length)} (default 0pt, initially unset)
   - Combination of \texttt{/tcb/spread inwards} → P.98 and \texttt{/tcb/spread outwards} → P.98. The optional \texttt{(length)} is used for all these keys. Also see \texttt{/tcb/oversize} → P.50 and \texttt{/tcb/grow sidewards} by → P.96.

4. \texttt{/tcb/spread=(length)} (default 0pt, initially unset)
   - Combination of \texttt{/tcb/move upwards} → P.98, \texttt{/tcb/fill downwards} → P.98, \texttt{/tcb/spread inwards} → P.98, and \texttt{/tcb/spread outwards} → P.98. Such, the box fills the whole page. The optional \texttt{(length)} is used for all these keys.

5. \texttt{/tcb/spread downwards=(length)} (default 0pt, initially unset)
   - Combination of \texttt{/tcb/fill downwards} → P.98, \texttt{/tcb/spread inwards} → P.98, and \texttt{/tcb/spread outwards} → P.98. The optional \texttt{(length)} is used for all these keys.
4.15.5 Box Extrusion

The following keys should not be used with breakable boxes.

\textbf{/tcb/shrink tight} \hspace{1em} (style, no value, initially unset)

The total colored box is shrunk to the dimensions of the upper part. There should be no lower part and no title. This style sets the \texttt{/tcb/boxsep} \textsuperscript{P.44} to 0pt and other geometry keys to fitting values. This option is likely to be used with the following extrusion keys.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbs{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,arc=0mm,boxrule=0.4pt,
nobeforeafter,tcbox raise base,shrink tight}
\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
Lorem \texttt{\texttt{tcbbox}ipsum} dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit.
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{This is a tcolorbox.}
Lorem \texttt{ipsum} dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit.

\textbf{/tcb/extrude left by} \texttt{=(length)} \hspace{1em} (style, no default, initially unset)

The colored box is extruded by the given \texttt{(length)} to the left side. The inner width and the bounding box is kept unchanged and the operation is additive!

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbs{enhanced,colframe=red,colback=yellow!25!white,frame style={opacity=0.25},interior style={opacity=0.5},
nobeforeafter,tcbox raise base,shrink tight,extrude by=2mm}
Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis.
\texttt{\tcbox[extrude left by=1cm]{Curabitur} dictum gravida mauris.}
Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna.
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna.}

\textbf{/tcb/extrude right by} \texttt{=(length)} \hspace{1em} (style, no default, initially unset)

The colored box is extruded by the given \texttt{(length)} to the right side. The inner width and the bounding box is kept unchanged and the operation is additive!

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbs{enhanced,colframe=red,colback=yellow!25!white,frame style={opacity=0.25},interior style={opacity=0.5},
nobeforeafter,tcbox raise base,shrink tight,extrude by=2mm}
Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis.
\texttt{\tcbox[extrude right by=1cm]{Curabitur} dictum gravida mauris.}
Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna.
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna.}
The colored box is extruded by the given \texttt{\textbackslash extrude by=\langle length\rangle} to the top side. The inner width and the bounding box is kept unchanged and the operation is additive!

\begin{verbatim}
\tcset{enhanced, colframe=red, colback=yellow!25!white, 
frame style={opacity=0.25}, interior style={opacity=0.5}, 
nobeforeafter, tcbox raise base, shrink tight, extrude by=2mm}
\end{verbatim}

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, 
vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. \texttt{\textbackslash tcb}[extrude top by=1cm]{Curabitur} dictum gravida mauris. 
Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna.

The colored box is extruded by the given \texttt{\textbackslash extrude top by=\langle length\rangle} to the bottom side. The inner width and the bounding box is kept unchanged and the operation is additive!

\begin{verbatim}
\tcset{enhanced, colframe=red, colback=yellow!25!white, 
frame style={opacity=0.25}, interior style={opacity=0.5}, 
nobeforeafter, tcbox raise base, shrink tight, extrude by=2mm}
\end{verbatim}

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, 
vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. \texttt{\textbackslash tcb}[extrude bottom by=1cm]{Curabitur} dictum gravida mauris. 
Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna.

The colored box is extruded by the given \texttt{\textbackslash extrude by=\langle length\rangle} to all sides. The inner width and the bounding box is kept unchanged and the operation is additive!

\begin{verbatim}
\tcset{enhanced, colframe=red, colback=yellow!25!white, 
frame style={opacity=0.25}, interior style={opacity=0.5}, 
nobeforeafter, tcbox raise base, shrink tight, extrude by=2mm}
\end{verbatim}

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, 
vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. \texttt{\textbackslash tcb}{Curabitur} dictum gravida mauris. \texttt{\textbackslash tcb}[colframe=Green, interior style={opacity=0.0}]{Nam} arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, \texttt{\textbackslash tcb}[vulputate] a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. \texttt{\textbackslash tcb}[Mauris ut leo.]

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, 
vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. \texttt{Curabitur} dictum gravida mauris. \texttt{Nam} arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. \texttt{Mauris ut leo.}
4.16 Layered Boxes and Every Box Settings

A \texttt{tcolorbox} may contain another \texttt{tcolorbox} and so on. The package takes track of the nesting level using a counter \texttt{tcblayer}. Counter values may be used for doing some fancy things, but you should never change the counter value yourself.

The package takes special care for the first four layers or nesting levels, called managed layers. Here, footnote texts are administrated to find their intended place and specific layer dependent options may be set by changing \texttt{/tcb/every box on layer n \textsuperscript{P.103}}. If needed, the number of managed layers can be increased by setting \texttt{\tcbsetmanagedlayers \textsuperscript{P.103}} to a higher value than 4.

The following styles have a considerable influence on how layered boxes are processed. Note especially that nested boxes are getting a \texttt{/tcb/reset \textsuperscript{P.119}} by default. You can change this, but be prepared for surprises if you do.

If the defaults are \textit{not changed}, a \texttt{tcolorbox} gets its options in the following order. Following options overwrite preceding options.

1. On package load, all options are set to default values.
2. Every \texttt{\tcbset \textsuperscript{P.13}} command adds or changes options for the following boxes inside the current \TeX{} group.
3. While entering a \texttt{tcolorbox}, a \texttt{/tcb/every box on layer n \textsuperscript{P.103}} or \texttt{/tcb/every box on higher layers \textsuperscript{P.103}} option list is applied. With default settings this means:
   - For layer 1 (lowest layer), the \texttt{/tcb/every box} option list is applied. Not overwritten options given by a preceding \texttt{\tcbset \textsuperscript{P.13}} survive.
   - For layer 2 and above (nested boxes), a \texttt{/tcb/reset \textsuperscript{P.119}} followed by \texttt{/tcb/every box} option list is applied. Every resettable options given by a preceding \texttt{\tcbset \textsuperscript{P.13}} and by the surrounding box(es) are reset.
4. The \texttt{\langle options \rangle} given to the \texttt{tcolorbox} are applied. Or, if the box was generated by \texttt{\newtcolorbox \textsuperscript{P.15}} or friends, the \texttt{\langle options \rangle} given there are applied.
5. If the box was generated by \texttt{\newtcolorbox \textsuperscript{P.15}} or friends, some automated options are applied.

\texttt{/tcb/every box} \hspace{1cm} (style)

By default, this style is empty.

\begin{quote}
\texttt{\% default setting:} \\
\texttt{\tcbset\{every box/.style={\}}} \\
\end{quote}

It may be changed by redefining this style.

\begin{quote}
\texttt{\% setting all boxes to be enhanced:} \\
\texttt{\tcbset\{every box/.style={enhanced}\}} \\
\end{quote}

The alternative for setting something for every box (on every layer) is \texttt{\tcbsetforeverylayer \textsuperscript{P.13}}:

\begin{quote}
\texttt{\% setting all boxes to be enhanced:} \\
\texttt{\tcbsetforeverylayer\{enhanced\}} \\
\end{quote}
Here, \( n \) has to be replaced by a number ranging from 1 to the highest managed layer number (4 by default).

\begin{verbatim}
\% default settings:
\tcbsset{
  every box on layer 1/.style={every box},
  every box on layer 2/.style={reset,every box},
  every box on layer 3/.style={reset,every box},
  every box on layer 4/.style={reset,every box},
}
\end{verbatim}

Here, \( n \) has to be replaced by a number ranging from 1 to the highest managed layer number (4 by default).

\begin{verbatim}
\% default settings:
\tcbsset{every box on higher layers/.style={reset,every box}}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{tcbsetmanagedlayers}\{\textit{number}\}\}

Replaces the highest managed layer number by \textit{number} where 4 is the default. This macro can only be used inside the preamble. Using a \textit{number} lower than 4 typically makes no sense, but is not forbidden.

\begin{verbatim}
\% \usepackage{lipsum} \tcbsuselibrary{skins,breakable}
\tcbsset{colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  colback=red!5!white,
  every box/.style={enhanced,watermark text=\thetcblayer,
    before=\par\smallskip,after=\par\smallskip},
  every box on layer 2/.append style={colback=yellow!10!white,drop fuzzy shadow}}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw,breakable,title=Layer 1 Box]
Here comes a footnote\footnote{Footnote from layer 1 box}.
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Layer 2 Box]
abc\footnote{The footnote of abc}
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Another Box,ams equation]
\tcbhighmath{\sum\limits_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n}} = \infty.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Yet Another Box]
\tcboxfit[height=2cm]\{\lipsum[1]\}
My text.
\begin{tcolorbox}
Another lipsum text\footnote{A lipsum text}. \lipsum[3]
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Layer 4,colframe=blue,colback=white]
Layer 4\footnote{Layer 4 footnote}
\end{tcolorbox}
The End\footnote{Last footnote}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

Layer 1 Box

Here comes a footnote\textsuperscript{a}. Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem non justo. Nam laeus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet, tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae

Layer 2 Box

abc\(^a\)

\(^a\)The footnote of abc

Another Box

\[\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty.\]

Some text\(^b\).

Yet Another Box


My text.


Layer 4

Layer 4\(^a\)

\(^a\)Layer 4 footnote

The End\(^b\).

\(^a\)A lipsum text

\(^b\)Last footnote
4.17 Capture Mode

\texttt{/tcb/capture\{mode\}} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially minipage)}

The capture \texttt{\{mode\}} defines how the box content is processed. Feasible values for \texttt{\{mode\}} are:

- \texttt{minipage}: This is the default \texttt{\{mode\}} for \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{\textit{P.12}}. The content may have an upper and a lower part. Optionally, the box can be \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \textsuperscript{\textit{P.400}}. The box content is put into a minipage or into something similar to a minipage.

- \texttt{hbox}: This is the default \texttt{\{mode\}} for \texttt{\tcbox} \textsuperscript{\textit{P.14}}. The content cannot have a lower part and cannot be broken. The colored box is sized according to the dimensions of the content. A shortcut to set this mode is \texttt{/tcb/hbox}.

- \texttt{fitbox}: (needs the \texttt{fitting} library) This is the default \texttt{\{mode\}} for \texttt{\tcboxfit} \textsuperscript{\textit{P.449}}. The content cannot have a lower part and cannot be broken. The content is sized according to the dimensions of the colored box. A shortcut to set this mode is \texttt{/tcb/fit} \textsuperscript{\textit{P.454}}.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white}
\begin{tcolorbox}[capture=minipage]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[capture=hbox]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[capture=fitbox,height=9mm]% needs the `fitting` library
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white}
\begin{tcolorbox}[hbox]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white}
\begin{tcolorbox}[minipage]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{/tcb/hbox} \hspace{1cm} \text{(style, no default)}

Shortcut for \texttt{capture=hbox}.

\texttt{/tcb/minipage} \hspace{1cm} \text{(style, no default)}

Shortcut for \texttt{capture=minipage}.
4.18 Text Characteristics

The text inside a tcolorbox is formatted using a \LaTeX\ minipage if the box is unbreakable. If breakable, the box tries a mimicry of a minipage. In a minipage or parbox, paragraphs are formatted slightly different as the main text. If the key value is set to false, the normal main text behavior is restored. In some situations, this has some unwanted side effects. It is recommended that you use this experimental setting only where you really want to have this feature.

```
\% \usepackage{lipsum} % preamble
\tcbset{width=(\linewidth-2mm)/2,nobeforeafter,arc=1mm, 
colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,fonttitle=\bfseries,fontupper=\small, 
left=2mm,right=2mm,top=1mm,bottom=1mm,equal height group=parbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[parbox,adjusted title={parbox=true (normal)}]
\lipsum[1-2]
\end{tcolorbox}
\% 
\begin{tcolorbox}[parbox=false,adjusted title={parbox=false}]
\lipsum[1-2]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>parbox=true (normal)</th>
<th>parbox=false</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
Long words at the beginning of paragraphs in very narrow boxes will not be hyphenated using \texttt{pdflatex}. This problem is circumvented by applying the \texttt{hyphenationfix} option.

\begin{tcolorbox}
Rechnungsadjunktentochter.\par
Statthaltereikonzipist.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[\texttt{hyphenationfix}]
Rechnungsadjunktentochter.\par
Statthaltereikonzipist.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\texttt{parbox=false} and \texttt{hyphenationfix} should not be used together. They are targeting different box types and they do not blend very well.
\end{tcolorbox}

\section*{4.19 Files}

\texttt{/tcb/tempfile=⟨file name⟩} \hspace{1cm} (no default, initially \texttt{\jobname.tcbtemp})

Sets \texttt{⟨file name⟩} as name for the temporary file which is used inside \texttt{tcbwritetemp}\textsuperscript{P.144} and \texttt{tcbusetemp}\textsuperscript{P.144} implicitely.
4.20 \texttt{tcbox} Specials

The following options are applicable for \texttt{tcbox}\textsuperscript{P.14} and \texttt{tcboxmath}\textsuperscript{P.374} only.

**/tcb/tcbox raise=(\texttt{length})**

(no default, initially 0pt)

Raises the \texttt{tcbox}\textsuperscript{P.14} by the given \texttt{\langle length\rangle}.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcset{colframe=blue!50!black,colback=white, colupper=red!50!black, fonttitle=\bfseries, nobeforeafter, center title}

\texttt{dotfill} \tcbox[tcbox raise base]{Hello World 1}\dotfill \tcbox{Hello World 2}\dotfill \tcbox[tcbox raise=5mm]{Hello World 3}

\end{verbatim}

\begin{tabular}{ccc}
\texttt{dotfill} & \texttt{Hello World 1} & \texttt{Hello World 2} & \texttt{Hello World 3}
\end{tabular}

**/tcb/tcbox raise base**

(style, no value, initially unset)

 Raises the \texttt{tcbox}\textsuperscript{P.14} such that the base of its content matches the base of the environmental line; see example above.

**/tcb/on line**

(style, no value, initially unset)

Combines \texttt{tcbox/tcbox raise base} with \texttt{tcbox/nobeforeafter}\textsuperscript{P.86}. The resulting box behaves analogue to \texttt{\fbox}.

**/tcb/verbatim**

(style, no value)

Sets options for a \textit{verbatim} style \texttt{tcbox}\textsuperscript{P.14}. Since the indented boxes may contain only very few words, the dimensions are made smaller and \texttt{tcbox/nobeforeafter}\textsuperscript{P.86} and \texttt{tcbox/tcbox raise base} are set.

\begin{verbatim}
\DeclareTotalTCBox{\myverb}{ v }{verbatim, colframe=red!75!black, colupper=blue}{#1}
\myverb{\textbf} is a \myverb{\LaTeX} command.
\textbf is a \LaTeX command.
\end{verbatim}
Controls how \tcbox \textsuperscript{P.14} respects a \texttt{/tcb/width} \textsuperscript{P.39} setting. Feasible values for \langle \textit{mode} \rangle are:

- \texttt{auto} (initial setting): ignore \texttt{/tcb/width} \textsuperscript{P.39} and set box width according to its content.
- \texttt{auto limited}: Set box width according to its content, if it is smaller than \texttt{/tcb/width} \textsuperscript{P.39}. Otherwise, the content is set like in a \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{P.12} with line breaks.
- \texttt{forced center}: Set box width according to \texttt{/tcb/width} \textsuperscript{P.39}. The content is centered and may overlap the box borders.
- \texttt{forced left}: Set box width according to \texttt{/tcb/width} \textsuperscript{P.39}. The content is left aligned and may overlap the box borders.
- \texttt{forced right}: Set box width according to \texttt{/tcb/width} \textsuperscript{P.39}. The content is right aligned and may overlap the box borders.
- \texttt{minimum center}: Set box width according to \texttt{/tcb/width} \textsuperscript{P.39}, if the content fits into. The content is centered and the box width may grow beyond \texttt{/tcb/width} \textsuperscript{P.39}.
- \texttt{minimum left}: Set box width according to \texttt{/tcb/width} \textsuperscript{P.39}, if the content fits into. The content is left aligned and the box width may grow beyond \texttt{/tcb/width} \textsuperscript{P.39}.
- \texttt{minimum right}: Set box width according to \texttt{/tcb/width} \textsuperscript{P.39}, if the content fits into. The content is right aligned and the box width may grow beyond \texttt{/tcb/width} \textsuperscript{P.39}.
4.21 Counters, Labels, and References

\( /\text{tcb/phantom}=\langle\text{code}\rangle \) (no default, initially unset)

The \( \langle\text{code}\rangle \) is put in a box at the upper left corner of the tcolorbox. If the tcolorbox is breakable, the \( \langle\text{code}\rangle \) is executed for the first box of the break sequence only. If there already was some phantom code given, the new \( \langle\text{code}\rangle \) is appended.

The \( \langle\text{code}\rangle \) is intended to be used for counter stepping, labelling, and related operations which do not produce visible text.

- The \( \langle\text{code}\rangle \) is executed before the title and box content, i.e. counter values are ensured to be increased before usage.
- Labels are ensured to reference the correct page number.
- The \( \langle\text{code}\rangle \) is executed only once even during fitting operations for title and box content.
- In combination with the hyperref package, the hyper anchor is set to the upper left corner of the tcolorbox, i.e. links inside the pdf document will jump to the box pleasantly.
- Since the \( \langle\text{code}\rangle \) is executed inside a \TeX\ group, only global operations can survive this group.

Examples for the phantom usage are given in Section 17.11 from page 365, e.g. Example 17.1 on page 366.

\( /\text{tcb/nophantom} \) (no value, initially set)

Removes the phantom code if set before.

\( /\text{tcb/label} \) is label (no value, initially set)

Sets \label as labelling for tcolorbox (global or per box). When /tcb/label and friends are used, the underlying labeling macro is \label. References can be made by \ref, \pageref, and similar macros. This is the default \LaTeX\ behaviour. Note that this option is not getting reset by /tcb/reset → P.119.

\( /\text{tcb/label} \) is zlabel (no value, initially unset)

Sets \zlabel as labelling for tcolorbox (global or per box). When /tcb/label and friends are used, the underlying labeling macro is \zlabel. This needs the zref package \[13\] or packages building upon zref to be loaded. References can be made by \zref. If the zref-clever package \[2\] is loaded, \zcref, \zcpageref, and similar macros can be applied. Note that this option is not getting reset by /tcb/reset → P.119.

\( /\text{tcb/label}=\langle\text{marker}\rangle \) (no default, initially unset)

The \( \langle\text{marker}\rangle \) is set as label text with \label for a reference with the \ref macro, if /tcb/label is label is active, or as label text with \zlabel for a reference with the zref macro and similar, if /tcb/label is zlabel is active. Typically, this option is used for numbered boxes, see Subsection 5.1 from page 124, e.g. /tcb/new/auto counter → P.124.

\( /\text{tcb/phantomlabel}=\langle\text{marker}\rangle \) (no default, initially unset)

Equivalent to /tcb/label for an unnumbered box. A \phantomsection from the package hyperref \[17\] is used to set a correct hyperlink target. This is not needed for a numbered box.
/tcb/step\{counter\} (no default, initially unset)

Shortcut for \phantom{\refstepcounter{#1}}. The given \(\text{(counter)}\) is increased and ready for labelling. This option is not needed when using the convenient automated numbering introduced with version 2.40, see Subsection 5.1 from page 124.

/tcb/step and label\{\textbf{(counter)}\}\{\textbf{(marker)}\} (no default, initially unset)

Shortcut for using /tcb/step and /tcb/label\textsuperscript{P.110}. This option is not needed when using the convenient automated numbering introduced with version 2.40, see Subsection 5.1 from page 124.

/tcb/label type\{\textbf{(type)}\} (no default, initially unset)

This option has a different meaning based upon the chosen labeling mechanism.

- If /tcb/label is label\textsuperscript{P.110} is active:
  The option key /tcb/label type can be used only in conjunction with the \texttt{cleveref} package [6] which has to be loaded separately. \(\textbf{(type)}\) has to be a cross-reference type known to \texttt{cleveref} like \texttt{theorem}, \texttt{algorithm}, \texttt{result}, etc. References made with \texttt{cleveref} will use this type. Note that using label type will result in compilation errors, if \texttt{cleveref} is not loaded. For an example, see Theorem 18.3.5 on page 394.

- If /tcb/label is zlabel\textsuperscript{P.110} is active:
  The option key /tcb/label type can be used only in conjunction with the \texttt{zref-clever} package [2] which has to be loaded separately. \(\textbf{(type)}\) has to be a cross-reference type known to \texttt{zref-clever}. This \(\textbf{(type)}\) is bound to an automatic \texttt{tcolorbox} counter which has to be set up using /tcb/new/auto counter\textsuperscript{P.124}, /tcb/new/use counter from\textsuperscript{P.125}, /tcb/new/use counter\textsuperscript{P.125}, or /tcb/new/use counter*\textsuperscript{P.125}. If /tcb/label is zlabel\textsuperscript{P.110} is set, but \texttt{zref-clever} is not loaded, using \texttt{zref-clever countertype} will be silently ignored.

/tcb/no label type (no value, initially set)

Removes a /tcb/label type, if set before.
If the \nameref{package} package is loaded, the given ⟨text⟩ is used for corresponding \nameref{macro}s. If the \zref-titeleref package is loaded, the given ⟨text⟩ is used to set the reference text for \ztiteleref. Typically, the ⟨text⟩ will be chosen to be identical or nearly identical to the one for /tcb/title\textsuperscript{P.23}.

\begin{pabox}[label={mynamelabel},nameref={Title or anything else}]{Title text}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{pabox}

This box is automatically numbered with \ref{mynamelabel} on page \pageref{mynamelabel}.
The box is titled \enquote{\nameref{mynamelabel}}.

Examp. 4.1: Title text

This is a tcolorbox.

This box is automatically numbered with 4.1 on page 112.
The box is titled “Title or anything else”.

\begin{tcolorbox}[auto counter, number within=section]{pabox}[2][{}%
colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
title=Examp.-\thetcbcounter: #2,#1]}

\begin{pabox}[label={mynamelabel},nameref={Title or anything else}]{Title text}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{pabox}

This box is automatically numbered with \ref{mynamelabel} on page \pageref{mynamelabel}.
The box is titled \enquote{\nameref{mynamelabel}}.

/tcb/nameref=⟨text⟩ (no default, initially unset)

/tcb/short title=⟨text⟩ (style, no default)

Sets both /tcb/list entry\textsuperscript{P.133} and /tcb/nameref to ⟨text⟩. The most likely use case is to set a short title for the «list of tcolorbox(es)» and for box referencing.
\texttt{\protect\textbackslash tcb/hypertarget=\{marker\}} (no default, initially unset)

A \texttt{\protect\textbackslash hypertarget} from the package \texttt{hyperref} \cite{hyperref} is used to create an internal link of an anchor \texttt{\{marker\}}. This \texttt{\{marker\}} can be referenced by \texttt{\protect\textbackslash hyperlink} or \texttt{/tcb/hyperlink} \footnote{P.220}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,\protect\textbackslash colback=red!10,\protect\textbackslash colframe=red!50!black,\protect\textbackslash hypertarget=hypertwinA,\protect\textbackslash hyperlink=hypertwinB,\protect\textbackslash title=Box A]\protect\textbackslash \textbackslash \textbackslash Click me to jump to Box B.\protect\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{\protect\textbackslash tcb/bookmark=\{text\}} (no default, initially unset)

Sets a PDF bookmark with the given \texttt{\{text\}}, if the package \texttt{bookmark} \cite{bookmark} is loaded. This bookmark is set with an automated destination (the current box) and is set one level below the current bookmark level.

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=blue!10,\protect\textbackslash colframe=blue!50!black,\protect\textbackslash bookmark=Example for using a bookmark,\protect\textbackslash title=Example for using a bookmark]Open the bookmark view of the previewer to see the bookmark.\protect\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{\protect\textbackslash tcb/bookmark*=\{\{options\}\}{\{text\}\}} (no default, initially unset)

Identical to \texttt{/tcb/bookmark}, but additional \texttt{\{options\}} from the package \texttt{bookmark} \cite{bookmark} can be given.

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!10,\protect\textbackslash colframe=red!50!black,\protect\textbackslash bookmark*=\{color=red,italic,bold\},\protect\textbackslash title=Red and bold bookmark]Open the bookmark view of the previewer to see the bookmark.\protect\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{\protect\textbackslash tcb/index=\{entry\}} (no default, initially unset)

Adds an index \texttt{\{entry\}} for the box. This is a shortcut for setting \texttt{\protect\textbackslash index\{(entry)\}} to \texttt{/tcb/phantom} \footnote{P.110}.

\texttt{\protect\textbackslash tcb/index*=\{name\}\{\{entry\}\}} (no default, initially unset)

Adds an \texttt{\{entry\}} to an index with a specific \texttt{\{name\}}. This is a shortcut for setting \texttt{\protect\textbackslash index[\{name\}\{(entry)\}]} to \texttt{/tcb/phantom} \footnote{P.110}. An index extension package like \texttt{imakeidx} has to be loaded to use this option key.
4.22 Even and Odd Pages

Also see `/tcb/toggle left and right` *P.51* and `/tcb/toggle enlargement` *P.97* for further even/odd options.

/U 2015-11-13 /tcb/check odd page=true|false (default true, initially false)
If set to **true**, a precise even/odd page testing for the current box is applied. This is done by using labels. If a box moves to another page, the document has to be compiled twice for the correct settings. If set to **false**, even/odd page tests may give wrong results for the first box of a page.

_/tcb/toggle left and right_ *P.51*, _/tcb/toggle enlargement_ *P.97*, and _/tcb/if odd page_ automatically set _check odd page_, but for _\tcbifoddpage_ *P.116* this option has to be set explicitly.

/N 2015-11-13 /tcb/if odd page=⟨{odd options}⟩{⟨even options⟩} (style, no default)
If the current box is on an odd page, the _⟨odd options⟩_ are applied. On an even page, the _⟨even options⟩_ are applied. _/tcb/check odd page_ is automatically set for precise even/odd page testing.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[if odd page={colback=yellow!50}{colback=red!50}]
This box is colored in yellow on an odd page and is colored in red on an even page.
\end{tcolorbox}

This box is colored in yellow on an odd page and is colored in red on an even page.

If a box is _/tcb/breakable_ *P.400*, using _/tcb/if odd page_ only acts upon the **first** box. If the setting should be repeated for every partial box of the break sequence, the option should be packed into _/tcb/extras_ *P.407*. In this case, _/tcb/check odd page_ has to be set explicitly! Also see _/tcb/if odd page* _P.115_.

/N 2016-11-18 /tcb/if odd page or oneside=⟨{odd options}⟩{⟨even options⟩} (style, no default)
For onesided documents, the _⟨odd options⟩_ are applied always. For twosided documents, this style is identical to _/tcb/if odd page_.

114
This option needs the \texttt{breakable} library, see Section 19 on page 398.

For breakable boxes, if the current partial box is on an odd page, the \texttt{(odd options)} are applied. On an even page, the \texttt{(even options)} are applied. /tcb/check odd page\textsuperscript{P.114} is automatically set for precise even/odd page testing.

In contrast to /tcb/if odd page\textsuperscript{P.114}, /tcb/if odd page\texttt{*} is used on every partial box of a break sequences and not only on the first box. Another difference is that /tcb/if odd page\texttt{*} is applied quite \textit{late} during option processing, while /tcb/if odd page\textsuperscript{P.114} is applied immediately.

/tcb/if odd page\texttt{*} is implemented as /tcb/if odd page\textsuperscript{P.114} packed into /tcb/extras\textsuperscript{P.407}.

```
% \tcbuselibrary{breakable}
\begin{tcolorbox}[breakable,if odd page*={colback=yellow!50}{colback=red!50}]
  This breakable box is colored in yellow on an odd page
  and is colored in red on an even page. For every partial box, the
  test is repeated, i.e. this would give a yellow, red, yellow, red, \ldots
  sequence for a long content.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

For onesided documents, the \texttt{(odd options)} are applied always. For twosided documents, this style is identical to /tcb/if odd page\texttt{*}.

```
% \tcbuselibrary{breakable}
\begin{tcolorbox}[breakable,if odd page or oneside*=\{}\{}\end{tcolorbox}
This breakable box is colored in yellow on an odd page and is colored in red on an even page.
For every partial box, the test is repeated, i.e. this would give a yellow, red, yellow, red, \ldots sequence for a long content.
```
\texttt{tcbifoddpage\{odd code\}\{even code\}}

If the current box is on an odd page, the \emph{(odd code)} is executed. On an even page, the \emph{(even code)} is executed. For precise even/odd page testing, the \texttt{/tcb/check odd page} \texttt{\textsuperscript{P.114}} has to be set manually inside the box options.

The macro \texttt{tcbifoddpage} can be used inside underlay, overlay, or watermark code to test if the box is on an odd page. This will work also for boxes in a break sequence.

The macro can also be used inside the box \texttt{content text}. For unbreakable boxes, the correct page test is applied. But for \texttt{/tcb/breakable\textsuperscript{P.400}} boxes, \texttt{tcbifoddpage} will always give the result for the page of the \textit{first} box inside the box \texttt{content text}. If needed, the methods from the packages \texttt{changepage} or \texttt{ifoddpage} could be used here.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,check odd page, title={Example for a box on an \tcbifoddpage\{odd\}\{even\} page}, watermark text={\tcbifoddpage\{Odd\}\{Even\} page!}]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{Example for a box on an even page}


\texttt{tcbifoddpageoroneside\{odd code\}\{even code\}}

For onesided documents, the \emph{(odd code)} is executed always. For twosided documents, this macro is identical to \texttt{tcbifoddpage}.
This is a unique identifier (arabic number) for a tcolorbox. It is locally defined inside boxes and has no meaning outside. It is used for precise even/odd page testing, but may also be valuable for elaborate user code.

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=yellow!5,title=Box \thestcolorboxnumber]
This box is \thestcolorboxnumber.
\tcbox[on line,size=fbox]{This box is \thestcolorboxnumber} and
\tcbox[on line,size=fbox]{this box is \thestcolorboxnumber}. This box is \thestcolorboxnumber.
\end{tcolorbox}

Box 1240
This box is 1240. This box is 1241 and this box is 1242. This box is 1240.

This macro contains the expanded arabic page number of the current tcolorbox. It is locally defined inside boxes and has no meaning outside. It is precise only, if /tcb/check odd page P.114 was set.

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=yellow!5,check odd page, title=Box on page \thestcolorboxpage]
This box is located on page \thestcolorboxpage.
\end{tcolorbox}

Box on page 117
This box is located on page 117.
4.23 Externalization

See Section 25 on page 476 for the \texttt{external} library of \texttt{tcolorbox}.

If the \texttt{externalization} library of the \texttt{tikz} package is used and \texttt{/tcb/graphical environment} \footnote{P.154} is set to \texttt{tikzpicture}, a \texttt{tcolorbox} could trigger the externalization process which will arise a compilation error.

To avoid this, there are two possible strategies:

- Ensure, that \texttt{\tikzexternaldisable} is set before a \texttt{tcolorbox} is used. If you typically use the pattern \texttt{\tikzexternalenable some picture \tikzexternaldisable}, there is nothing to care about.

- If \texttt{externalization} is enabled globally, use \texttt{/tcb/shield externalize} to shield any \texttt{tcolorbox}. The preamble code could look like this:

\begin{verbatim}
\usetikzlibrary{external}
\tikzexternalize
\tcbset{shield externalize}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{/tcb/shield externalize=\texttt{true}|\texttt{false}} \hfill (default \texttt{true}, initially \texttt{false})

If set to \texttt{true}, the drawing part of the \texttt{tcolorbox} is not being externalized which is a good thing at the current state of art. Nevertheless, if the \texttt{tcolorbox} contains a \texttt{tikzpicture}, this picture is still externalized. Pictures drawn with help of \texttt{/tcb/tikz upper} \footnote{P.77} or alike are \texttt{not} externalized.

If a \texttt{tcolorbox} is used inside a node of an encircling \texttt{tikzpicture} which is externalized, do not use \texttt{\tikzexternaldisable} in front of the \texttt{tcolorbox}. \texttt{/tcb/shield externalize} is deactivated automatically inside a \texttt{tikzpicture}.

\texttt{/tcb/shield externalize} is applied for every following \texttt{tcolorbox} inside the current \TeX{} group and is not affected by \texttt{/tcb/reset} \footnote{P.119}.

\texttt{/tcb/external=\texttt{⟨file name⟩}} \hfill (no default, initially unset)

Convenience option which calls \texttt{\tikzsetnextfilename{⟨file name⟩}}. Typically, it may be used inside the option list of a \texttt{tcolorbox} to set the externalization \texttt{⟨file name⟩} for the first \texttt{tikzpicture} which is discovered \texttt{inside} the box content. The package \texttt{tikz} \footnote{24} or the library \texttt{skins} has to be loaded to use this option. Additionally, \texttt{\usetikzlibrary{external}} has to be used.

\texttt{/tcb/remake=\texttt{true}|\texttt{false}} \hfill (default \texttt{true}, initially \texttt{false})

Convenience option which calls \texttt{/tikz/external/remake next}. Typically, it may be used inside the option list of a \texttt{tcolorbox} to force the remake of the first \texttt{tikzpicture} which is discovered \texttt{inside} the box content. The package \texttt{tikz} \footnote{24} or the library \texttt{skins} has to be loaded to use this option. Additionally, \texttt{\usetikzlibrary{external}} has to be used.
4.24 Miscellaneous

\texttt{/tcb/reset} (no value, initially set)

Sets (nearly) all \texttt{tcolorbox} settings (including loaded libraries) back to their default values plus any settings given by \texttt{\tcbsetforeverylayer} \textsuperscript{P.13}, \texttt{/tcb/savedelimiter} \textsuperscript{P.31}, \texttt{/tcb/capture} \textsuperscript{P.105}, and \texttt{/tcb/shield externalize} \textsuperscript{P.118} keep their values. Also, all raster values (see Section 16 on page 304) are not resetted. This option is useful for boxes in boxes where the inner box should not inherit the settings of the outer box. Note that for boxes inside boxes the \texttt{reset} is done automatically, if the standard settings of the package are used (v2.40 and above), see Section 4.16 from page 102.

\texttt{/tcb/code=\langle code\rangle} (no default, initially unset)

The given \texttt{(code)} is executed immediately. This option is useful to place some arbitrary code into an option list.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,
  code={Useless at this spot but functional.},
  fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[code={\newcommand{\mycommand}{\textit{working}},
  title=My \mycommand\ title}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

Useless at this spot but functional.

\begin{tcolorbox}
My \textit{working} title
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textcolor{red}{tcolorbox}.
```
Wraps the `\tl_if_blank:n(TF)` command(s) of expl3 for option setting. If the ⟨token list⟩ consists only of blank spaces or is entirely empty, the ⟨true options⟩ are set. Otherwise, the ⟨false options⟩ are set.

\begin{mybox}{My title}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
Wraps the `\IfNoValueTF` command(s) of `xparse` for option setting. If the `⟨argument⟩` has no value, the `⟨true options⟩` are set. Otherwise, the `⟨false options⟩` are set.

\begin{mybox}[My title]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}

Wraps the `\IfValueTF` command(s) of `xparse` for option setting. If the `⟨argument⟩` has a value, the `⟨true options⟩` are set. Otherwise, the `⟨false options⟩` are set.

\begin{mybox}[My title]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
IfBooleanTF\{⟨argument⟩\}\{⟨true options⟩\}\{⟨false options⟩\} (no default)
IfBooleanT\{⟨argument⟩\}\{⟨true options⟩\} (no default)
IfBooleanF\{⟨argument⟩\}\{⟨false options⟩\} (no default)

Wraps the \IfBooleanTF command(s) of \texttt{xparse} for option setting. If the \texttt{⟨argument⟩} is \texttt{\BooleanTrue}, the \texttt{⟨true options⟩} are set. If the \texttt{⟨argument⟩} is \texttt{\BooleanFalse}, the \texttt{⟨false options⟩} are set.

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}*
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.
This is a tcolorbox.
Annihilates the current \texttt{tcolorbox} as far as possible. Basically, this comments out the whole \texttt{tcolorbox} by using a key. If the option list of the current \texttt{tcolorbox} contains arbitrary code with global impact (like counter settings), these actions are not undone automatically. Nevertheless, the effects of \texttt{/tcb/phantom}→P.110, \texttt{/tcb/step}→P.111, \texttt{/tcb/new/auto counter}→P.124, etc., are removed by \texttt{/tcb/void}.

```latex
\begin{tcolorbox}[
  title=This box is completely removed by the following key,
  void
]  
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This option key cannot be applied for every situation. For example, if several box environments with the same environment name are nested, for the outer environment \texttt{/tcb/void} cannot be used, since the end of the inner environment will be misinterpreted as end of the outer environment. Also, \texttt{/tcb/void} cannot be used for environments wrapped with \texttt{\tcolorboxenvironment}→P.22.

The contents of the current \texttt{tcolorbox} are processed including counter settings, but the box is just not drawn. Therefore, \texttt{/tcb/nirvana} is less radical than \texttt{/tcb/void} and several box environments can be nested without problems.

```latex
\begin{tcolorbox}[
  title=This box is completely removed by the following key,
  nirvana
]  
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\begin{tcolorbox}
  Nested Box
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox} `
```
5 Initialization Option Keys

The initialization options are only applicable for the generation of new environments and commands based on \tcolorbox{} and friends. Particularly, they can be used for

- \newtcolorbox{} → P.15, \NewTColorBox{} → P.16, \NewTotalTColorBox{} → P.18,
- \newtcbox{} → P.19, \NewTCBox{} → P.20, \NewTotalTCBox{} → P.21,
- \newtcblisting{} → P.330, \NewTCBListing{} → P.332,
- \newtcbinputlisting{} → P.334, \NewTCBInputListing{} → P.335,
- \newtcbtheorem{} → P.371, \NewTcbTheorem{} → P.371,
- \newtcbxoxfit{} → P.451, \NewTCBoxFit{} → P.452, \NewTotalTCBoxFit{} → P.453,

and friends like \renewtcolorbox{} → P.15, etc.

Typically, these options may generate counters and alike. It is strongly recommended that you use initialization options inside the preamble only. Otherwise, you may get trouble when using \LaTeX{}’s \include{} features. Also, it is recommended to generate new environments and commands with these options after \hyperref{} is loaded to avoid warnings about duplicate identifiers.

5.1 Numbered Boxes

Counters assigned using the initialization options are administrated automatically. Especially, they are increased for each new box. Independent from the real counter name, the counter value can be referenced by \thetcbcounter{}, e.g. inside the title of the box. The real counter name is stored inside \tcbcounter{}.

\texttt{/tcb/new/auto counter} (no value, initially unset)

Creates a new counter automatically. With \texttt{/tcb/new/number format} → P.126 and \texttt{/tcb/new/number within} → P.126, the appearance and behavior of the counter can be changed. The counter value is referenced by \thetcbcounter{}.

\begin{tcbbox}{pabox}{[auto counter,number within=section]{pabox}{2}{%
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  title=Examp.~\the\thetcbcounter{}: #2,#1}
\begin{pabox}{label={myautocounter}}{Title with number}
This box is automatically numbered with \ref{myautocounter} on page \pageref{myautocounter}. Inside the box, the \thetcbcounter{} can also be referenced by \thetcbcounter{}. The real counter name is \tcb@cnt@pabox.
\end{pabox}

\texttt{Examp. 5.1: Title with number}

This box is automatically numbered with 5.1 on page 124. Inside the box, the 5.1 can also be referenced by \thetcbcounter{}. The real counter name is \tcb@cnt@pabox.
Here, a counter from another \texttt{tcolorbox} is reused. Note that the settings for \texttt{/tcb/new/number format} \textasciitilde P.126 and \texttt{/tcb/new/number within} \textasciitilde P.126 are inherited and cannot be changed. The counter value is referenced by \texttt{\thetcbcounter}.

\begin{mybox}[label={myusecounterfrom}]{Title with continued number}
This box is automatically numbered with \ref{myusecounterfrom} on page \pageref{myusecounterfrom}. Inside the box, the \texttt{\thetcbcounter} can also be referenced by |\texttt{\thetcbcounter}|. The real counter name is \texttt{tcb@cnt@pabox}.
\end{mybox}

\textbf{Some Box 5.2: Title with continued number}
This box is automatically numbered with 5.2 on page 125. Inside the box, the 5.2 can also be referenced by \texttt{\thetcbcounter}. The real counter name is \texttt{tcb@cnt@pabox}.

Here, an ordinary existing \LaTeX \texttt{counter} is used for numbering. With \texttt{/tcb/new/number format} \textasciitilde P.126 and \texttt{/tcb/new/number within} \textasciitilde P.126, the appearance and behavior of the counter can be changed. The counter value is referenced by \texttt{\thetcbcounter}.

% \newcounter{myexample}\% preamble
\begin{mybox}[label={myusecounter}]{Title with \LaTeX \ number}
This box is automatically numbered with \ref{myusecounter} on page \pageref{myusecounter}. Inside the box, the \texttt{\thetcbcounter} can also be referenced by |\texttt{\thetcbcounter}|. The real counter name is \texttt{myexample}.
\end{mybox}

\textbf{Some Box A: Title with \LaTeX \ number}
This box is automatically numbered with A on page 125. Inside the box, the A can also be referenced by \texttt{\thetcbcounter}. The real counter name is \texttt{myexample}.

\texttt{/tcb/new/use counter*}=(\texttt{counter}) \hspace{1cm} (no default, initially unset)

An existing \LaTeX \texttt{counter} is used for numbering. In contrast to \texttt{/tcb/new/use counter}, the options \texttt{/tcb/new/number format} \textasciitilde P.126 and \texttt{/tcb/new/number within} \textasciitilde P.126 are ignored. Use this for counters which are already configured outside the \texttt{tcolorbox} package, e.g. the standard \texttt{figure} counter.

\texttt{/tcb/new/no counter} \hspace{1cm} (no value, initially set)

The created boxes are not numbered. This is the default. The option may be used to overrule a previous option.

\texttt{/tcb/new/reset counter on overlays}=(\texttt{true}|\texttt{false}) \hspace{1cm} (default \texttt{true}, initially \texttt{false})

For \texttt{beamer} slides, this invokes the \texttt{\resetcounteronoverlays} command for the box counter. The counter is automatically reset on subsequent overlay slides of a frame. Thereby, the counter will be the same on all slides of every frame.
The automatic counter is set to zero, if $\langle counter \rangle$ is increased. Additionally, during output, the value of $\langle counter \rangle$ is prepended to the value of the automatic counter.

To prepend the automatic counter with the chapter number and to reset it with every new chapter, use:

\begin{tcbbox}[auto counter,number within=chapter]{\begin{phbox}{myfreestyle}\begin{phbox}{title=Question \thetcbcounter: #2,#1}\end{phbox}\end{phbox}}

This box is automatically numbered with \ref{myfreestyle} on page \pageref{myfreestyle}. Inside the box, the $\thetcbcounter$ can also be referenced by $\thetcbcounter$. The real counter name is \texttt{tcb@cnt@phbox}.

Definition in the preamble:
\begin{verbatim}
\newtcolorbox{auto counter,number within=section, number freestyle={(Q/\noexpand\thesection/\noexpand\Alph{\tcbcounter})}, }{\begin{phbox}{label={myfreestyle}}\end{phbox}}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{phbox}{label={myfreestyle}}\begin{phbox}{title=Question}\thetcbcounter: #2,#1\end{phbox}\end{phbox}

This box is automatically numbered with (Q/5/A) on page 126. Inside the box, the (Q/5/A) can also be referenced by $\thetcbcounter$. The real counter name is \texttt{tcb@cnt@phbox}.
The following options `/tcb/new/crefname` and `/tcb/new/Crefname` need to be set inside the preamble.

```
U 2014-12-01 /tcb/new/crefname={⟨singular⟩}{⟨plural⟩} (no default, initially unset)
This option key can be used only in conjunction with the cleveref package [6] which has
to be loaded separately. It creates a cross-reference type for the new tcolorbox'es, where
the lowercase ⟨⟨singular⟩⟩ and ⟨⟨plural⟩⟩ forms of the cross-reference are given. This type is
the environment or macro name and /tcb/label type → P.111 is set automatically. See
```

```
U 2014-12-01 /tcb/new/Crefname={⟨singular⟩}{⟨plural⟩} (no default, initially unset)
This option key can be used only in conjunction with the cleveref package [6] which has
to be loaded separately. It creates a cross-reference type for the new tcolorbox'es, where
the uppercase ⟨⟨singular⟩⟩ and ⟨⟨plural⟩⟩ forms of the cross-reference are given. This type
is the environment or macro name and /tcb/label type → P.111 is set automatically. See
```

```
\usepackage{cleveref}
\newtcolorbox[auto counter,number within=section,
crefname={bluebox}{blueboxes}]{mybluebox}[2][]{colback=blue!5!white,colframe=blue!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
title=Bluebox \thetcbcounter : #2,#1}
\usepackage{varioref}
\begin{mybluebox}[label={myreference}]{My title}
This is an example.
\end{mybluebox}
\Cref{myreference}, \cref{myreference}.
\Cpageref{myreference}, \cpageref{myreference}.
\nameCref{myreference}, \namecref{myreference}.
\labelcref{myreference}, \labelcpageref{myreference}.
With \texttt{varioref}::
\Vref{myreference}, \vref{myreference}.
\Vref*{myreference}, \vref*{myreference}.
```

```
Bluebox 5.1: My title
```

Bluebox 5.1, bluebox 5.1.
Page 127, page 127.
Bluebox, bluebox.
5.1, 127.
With varioref:
Bluebox 5.1, bluebox 5.1.
Bluebox 5.1, bluebox 5.1.
/tcb/new/blend into\langle name\rangle

(style, no default, initially unset)

Used to comfortably blend into an existing schema of naming and numbering for some selected cases. For example, a \tcolorbox can be used to display and entitle an image pretending to be a standard \texttt{figure} environment. Here, /tcb/title$^+$P.23 is used instead of the standard \texttt{\caption} and /tcb/list text$^+$P.133 can be used instead of the optional parameter of the standard \texttt{\caption}.

Feasible values for \langle name\rangle are:

- \textbf{figures}: blend into the standard \texttt{figure} environment.
- \textbf{tables}: blend into the standard \texttt{table} environment.
- \textbf{listings}: blend into the standard \texttt{lstlisting} environment of the package \texttt{listings} [7].

\begin{figure}[htb]
\centering\includegraphics[height=4cm]{lichtspiel.jpg}
\caption{A standard figure}
\end{figure}

\begin{myfigure}[2]{float=htb,capture=hbox, title={#2},every float=\centering,#1}
\includegraphics[height=4cm]{lichtspiel.jpg}
\end{myfigure}

Figure 1: A standard figure

Figure 2: A tcolorbox figure
This option formats the title output of \texttt{/tcb/new/blend} into →\texttt{P.128}. Note that this is a common \texttt{tcolorbox} option which should be set globally or in the normal option part of \texttt{\newtcolorbox}\texttt{\texttt{\texttt{P.15}}.}

Feasible values for \texttt{\langle value \rangle} are:

- \textbf{colon}: use name/number plus colon.
- \textbf{dash}: use name/number plus dash.
- \textbf{colon hang}: use name/number plus colon with hanging indent.
- \textbf{dash hang}: use name/number plus dash with hanging indent.

\begin{verbatim}
\newtcolorbox[blend into=figures]{myfigure}[2][]{float=htb,capture=hbox,
blend before title=dash hang,title={#2},every float=\centering,#1}

\begin{myfigure}{A tcolorbox figure with quite a long title}
\includegraphics[height=5cm]{lichtspiel.jpg}
\end{myfigure}
\end{verbatim}

Figure 3 – A tcolorbox figure with quite a long title
This option formats the title output of \texttt{/tcb/new/blend} into \cite{P.128}. The \texttt{(code)} takes one parameter, the name/number. Use this, if \texttt{/tcb/blend before title} \cite{P.129} is not flexible enough.

\begin{tcolorbox}[blend into=figures]{myfigure}
\begin{figure}[h]
\centering
\includegraphics[height=6cm]{lichtspiel.jpg}
\end{figure}
\end{tcolorbox}

Figure 4 A tcolorbox figure
5.2 Lists of \texttt{tcolorbox}

For figures and tables, \LaTeX provides the \texttt{listoffigures} and \texttt{listoftables} commands to create lists of these numbered entities. Also, a \texttt{tcolorbox} can be part of such a kind of list.

1. Assign a list \langle name \rangle by the \textit{initialization} option \texttt{/tcb/new/list inside}.

2. Optionally, a new \langle type \rangle for list entries may be assigned by the \textit{initialization} option \texttt{/tcb/new/list type}.

3. List entries generated automatically within each new \texttt{tcolorbox} using the above initialization.
   - If \texttt{/tcb/list entry} \texttt{\rightarrow P.133} is set, the entry is generated with it.
   - Otherwise, if \texttt{/tcb/title} \texttt{\rightarrow P.23} is set, the entry is generated with it.
   - Otherwise, the entry is generated with the current number and the environment name.

4. The generated list is displayed by \texttt{\tcblistof} \texttt{\rightarrow P.132}.

\texttt{/tcb/new/list inside=\langle name \rangle} \texttt{(no default, initially unset)}

Assigns a list or contents file to the generated \texttt{tcolorbox}es. Entries to this list are saved to a file which gets the \langle name \rangle as file name extension. The list is referenced by this name in \texttt{\tcblistof}. For example:

\begin{verbatim}
list inside=exam
\end{verbatim}

See Section 17.11 from page 365 for a complete example.

\texttt{/tcb/new/list type=\langle type \rangle} \texttt{(no default, initially \texttt{tcolorbox})}

Optionally, some \langle type \rangle can be assigned to the list entries. For a new \langle type \rangle, a macro \texttt{\l@\langle type \rangle} has to exist which controls the format of the list entry. The default type is defined by

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand*{\l@tcolorbox}{\@dottedtocline{1}{1.5em}{2.3em}}
\end{verbatim}

This is identical to the \texttt{\l@section} setting of \LaTeX. \texttt{\l@tcolorbox} can be redefined or a new \langle type \rangle can be assigned.
\texttt{\textbackslash tcblistof[\langle macro\rangle]{\langle name\rangle}{\langle short\rangle}{\langle title\text{ text}\rangle}}

Displays the generated list of \texttt{tcolorbox}es with the given \texttt{\langle name\rangle}. The heading is generated by \texttt{\langle macro\rangle}{\langle short\rangle}{\langle title\text{ text}\rangle} where \texttt{\textbackslash section} is the default setting for \texttt{\langle macro\rangle}. Here, as usual, \texttt{\langle title\text{ text}\rangle} is the title of the section or chapter while \texttt{\langle short\rangle} is a shorter title for headings and table of contents.

- If \texttt{\langle macro\rangle} ends with a *, \texttt{\textbackslash tcblistof} mimics the behavior of \texttt{\textbackslash listoffigures} from the standard \LaTeX{} classes and adds the title to the left and right mark for headings.
- If \texttt{\langle macro\rangle} starts with \texttt{\textbackslash chapter}, a possible two column document setting is restored to one column (as standard \LaTeX{} classes do for \texttt{\textbackslash listoffigures}).

To display the list inside a subsection, use for example:

\begin{quote}
\texttt{\textbackslash tcblistof[\texttt{\subsubsection}]\{exam\}\{List of Exercises\}}
\end{quote}

The result of the example is found as Subsection 17.12 on page 368.

To apply the list similar to \texttt{\textbackslash listoffigures} for a report or book, use for example:

\begin{quote}
\texttt{\textbackslash tcblistof[\texttt{\chapter*}]\{exam\}\{List of Exercises\}}
\end{quote}

To set a short title for headings with the default \texttt{\textbackslash section} setting, use for example:

\begin{quote}
\texttt{\textbackslash tcblistof\{exam\}\{List of Exercises\}\{Elaborate List of Fine Exercises for all Students of my Course\}}
\end{quote}

\texttt{The core of the list is generated by \texttt{\textbackslash @starttoc\{\langle name\rangle\}} which can be wrapped into an own macro.}
The following options are not initialization options, but common options, which are typically reasonable in connection with lists of \texttt{tcolorbox}es.

\texttt{/tcb/list entry=⟨text⟩} \hspace{1cm} (no default, initially unset)

If the «list of \texttt{tcolorbox(es)}» feature described in the current subsection is used, this key describes the \langle text\rangle for an entry into the generated list, e.g.

\begin{verbatim}
list entry={\protect\numberline{\thetcbcounter}My beautiful Example}
\end{verbatim}

See Section 17.11 from page 365 for a complete example.

If \texttt{\thetcbcounter} is omitted, \texttt{/tcb/list entry} could be used for unnumbered boxes too.

\textbf{!} This is a customization option. For numbered boxes, \texttt{/tcb/list entry} typically has not to be given, because this entry will be generated automatically.

\texttt{/tcb/list text=⟨text⟩} \hspace{1cm} (style, no default)

This is a shortcut for setting \texttt{/tcb/list entry} to \texttt{\protect\numberline{\thetcbcounter}⟨text⟩}. So, the following settings are identical:

\begin{verbatim}
list text={My beautiful Example},
list entry={\protect\numberline{\thetcbcounter}My beautiful Example}
\end{verbatim}

See Section 17.11 from page 365 for a complete example.

\texttt{/tcb/add to list=⟨list⟩{(type)}{(entry text)}} \hspace{1cm} (no default, initially unset)

If the «list of \texttt{tcolorbox(es)}» feature described in the current subsection is used, list entries are generated automatically. With this key, you can enforce an entry to the given \langle list\rangle with the given \langle type\rangle. This issues:

\begin{verbatim}
\addcontentsline{⟨list⟩}{⟨type⟩}{⟨entry text⟩}
\end{verbatim}

\langle entry text\rangle may be given by \texttt{/tcb/list entry}.

\textbf{!} This is a customization option. For numbered boxes, this feature is configured automatically, where \langle list\rangle is set by \texttt{/tcb/new/list inside} \hspace{0.5cm} \textsuperscript{P.131} and \langle type\rangle is set by \texttt{/tcb/new/list type} \hspace{0.5cm} \textsuperscript{P.131}
6 Side by Side

A side by side box is a special \texttt{tcolorbox} \cite{p.12} where the upper and lower part of the box are set side by side. All boxes of this kind are unbreakable.

Further side by side options for code examples are \texttt{/tcb/listing side text} \cite{p.346}, \texttt{/tcb/text side listing} \cite{p.346}, \texttt{/tcb/listing outside text} \cite{p.346}, and \texttt{/tcb/text outside listing} \cite{p.347}.

6.1 Basic Settings

\texttt{/tcb/sidebyside=\texttt{true}|\texttt{false}}  \hspace{1cm} (default \texttt{true}, initially \texttt{false})

Normally, the upper part and the lower part of the box have their positions as their names suggest. If \texttt{sidebyside} is set to \texttt{true}, the upper part is drawn \textit{left-handed} and the lower part is drawn \textit{right-handed}. Both parts are drawn together with the geometry settings of the upper part but the space is divided horizontally according to the following options. Colors, fonts, and box content additions are used individually. The resulting box is unbreakable.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tabular}{l}
\textbf{My title} \\
This is the upper (\textit{left-handed}) part. \\
This is the lower (\textit{right-handed}) part.
\end{tabular}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\texttt{\tcbset\{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, fonttitle=\bfseries\}}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title, sidebyside]
This is the upper (\textit{left-handed}) part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[bicolor, sidebyside, righthand width=3cm, sharp corners, boxrule=.4pt, colback=green!5, colbacklower=green!50!black!50]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}

\lipsum[134]
Sets the vertical \langle alignment \rangle for the left-handed and right-handed part. Feasible values for \langle alignment \rangle are:

- **center**: identical to \texttt{minipage} option \texttt{c}.
- **top**: identical to \texttt{minipage} option \texttt{t} (aligns the top lines of the left-handed and right-handed side according to their baselines).
- **bottom**: identical to \texttt{minipage} option \texttt{b} (aligns the bottom lines of the left-handed and right-handed side according to their baselines).
- **center seam**: aligns the center of the left-handed and right-handed side.
- **top seam**: aligns the very top seam of the left-handed and right-handed side.
- **bottom seam**: aligns the very bottom seam of the left-handed and right-handed side.

\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=center, sidebyside align=center]
This is a text which is too long for one line.
\tcblower
This is a short text.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=top, sidebyside align=top]
This is a text which is too long for one line.
\tcblower
This is a short text.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=bottom, sidebyside align=bottom]
This is a text which is too long for one line.
\tcblower
This is a short text.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{center}, \texttt{top}, and \texttt{bottom} are identical to the known corresponding \texttt{minipage} options. While this is the preferred approach for text content, the result for boxed content like tables or images may not be as expected.

For such content, one may use \texttt{center seam}, \texttt{top seam}, and \texttt{bottom seam}. For example, \texttt{top seam} aligns the very top seam of the left-handed and right-handed side.
This is my description text for the pictures displayed on the right-handed side.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Center Seam</th>
<th>Top Seam</th>
<th>Bottom Seam</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="goldshade" alt="Center Seam" /> <img src="blueshade" alt="Blue Shade" /></td>
<td><img src="goldshade" alt="Top Seam" /> <img src="blueshade" alt="Blue Shade" /></td>
<td><img src="goldshade" alt="Bottom Seam" /> <img src="blueshade" alt="Blue Shade" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This is my description text for the pictures displayed on the right-handed side.

This is my description text for the pictures displayed on the right-handed side.

This is my description text for the pictures displayed on the right-handed side.
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\textbf{series},nobeforeafter,\sidebyside,width=(\linewidth-2mm)/2}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=Wide gap,sidebyside gap=30mm]
This is a text which is too long for one line.
\tcblower
This is a short text.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=Narrow gap,sidebyside gap=1mm]
This is a text which is too long for one line.
\tcblower
This is a short text.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\textbf{series}}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title,sidebyside,lefthand width=3cm]
This is the upper (left-handed) part.
\tcblower
This is the lower (right-handed) part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\textbf{series}}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title,sidebyside,righthand width=3cm]
This is the upper (left-handed) part.
\tcblower
This is the lower (right-handed) part.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/sidebyside gap=⟨length⟩ (no default, initially 10mm)
Sets the horizontal distance between the left-handed and right-handed part to ⟨length⟩.

/tcb/lefthand width=⟨length⟩ (no default, initially unset)
Sets the width of the left-handed part to the given ⟨length⟩.

/tcb/righthand width=⟨length⟩ (no default, initially unset)
Sets the width of the right-handed part to the given ⟨length⟩.
\texttt{/tcb/lefthand ratio=\textit{fraction}}  \hspace{1cm} (no default, initially 0.5)

Sets the width of the left-handed part to the given \textit{\textit{fraction}} of the available space. \textit{\textit{fraction}} is a value between 0 and 1.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title,sidebyside,lefthand ratio=0.25]
This is the upper \texttt{(left-handed)} part.  
\tcblower 
This is the lower \texttt{(right-handed)} part. 
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/righthand ratio=\textit{fraction}}  \hspace{1cm} (no default, initially 0.5)

Sets the width of the right-handed part to the given \textit{\textit{fraction}} of the available space. \textit{\textit{fraction}} is a value between 0 and 1.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title,sidebyside,righthand ratio=0.25]
This is the upper \texttt{(left-handed)} part.  
\tcblower 
This is the lower \texttt{(right-handed)} part. 
\end{tcolorbox}
If one side of a side-by-side box should be adapted to the width of its content, this width has to be computed beforehand. The following example uses a savebox `\mysavebox` to store the picture to determine its width. A more convenient way to handle this task is to use the methods from Section 6.2 on page 140.

```latex
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \path[fill=red!20,draw=red!50!black]
    (0,0) node[below]{A} -- (3,1) node[above]{B} -- (1,4) node[above]{C} -- cycle;
\end{tikzpicture}
```

6.2 Advanced Settings

\texttt{tcbsidebyside[\langle options\rangle]\{\langle left-handed content\rangle\}\{\langle right-handed content\rangle\}}

Creates a colored box using more or less arbitrary \langle options\rangle for a tcolorbox$^\text{\textsuperscript{12}}$.

The /tcb/sidebyside$^\text{\textsuperscript{134}}$ option is set to \texttt{true} and the \langle left-handed content\rangle and \langle right-handed content\rangle is filled into the box appropriately. The resulting box is unbreakable. \texttt{tcbsidebyside} is not only a shortcut for using a normal tcolorbox$^\text{\textsuperscript{12}}$ with /tcb/sidebyside$^\text{\textsuperscript{134}}$, but allows setting further options like /tcb/sidebyside adapt$^\text{\textsuperscript{141}}$ and /tcb/sidebyside switch$^\text{\textsuperscript{143}}$.

```
% \tcbuselibrary{skins}
% \usepackage{lipsum}
\tcbsidebyside[title=The Triangle, 
sidebyside adapt=left, 
  bicolor,colback=white,colbacklower=yellow!10, 
  fonttitle=\bfseries,center title,drop lifted shadow, 
]{
  \begin{tikzpicture}
    \path[fill=red!20,draw=red!50!black]
      (0,0) node[below]{A} -- (3,1) node[right]{B}
      -- (1,4) node[above]{C} -- cycle;
  \end{tikzpicture}
}{
  \lipsum[1]
}
```

The Triangle

The option allows the left-handed and/or right-handed side to determine the dimensions of the box. This option is only valid inside \texttt{\backslash tcb\backslash sidebyside→P.140}.

Feasible values for \langle side(s) \rangle are:

- \texttt{none}: no measurement of left-handed and right-handed side.
- \texttt{left}: the actual width of the left-handed content is used to set \texttt{\backslash tcb\backslash lefthand width→P.137}.
- \texttt{right}: the actual width of the right-handed content is used to set \texttt{\backslash tcb\backslash righthand width→P.137}.
- \texttt{both}: the actual width of the left-handed and right-handed content is used to set \texttt{\backslash tcb\backslash lefthand width→P.137}, \texttt{\backslash tcb\backslash righthand width→P.137}, and the overall \texttt{\backslash tcb\backslash width→P.39}.

\begin{verbatim}
\% \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\tcbsidebyside[sidebyside adapt=left, 
title=Very important table, 
beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10, 
lower separated=false,sidebyside gap=5mm
]{
% \begin{tabular}{|l|c|r|}
\hline
  left & center & right \\
  \hline
  A & B & C \\
  \hline
  D & E & F \\
  \hline
\end{tabular}
}{
% This table contains the most important figures for 
% all future actions. You may notice that B follows A, 
% C follows B, and so on.
}
\end{verbatim}

Very important table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>left</th>
<th>center</th>
<th>right</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This table contains the most important figures for all future actions. You may notice that B follows A, C follows B, and so on.

\begin{verbatim}
\% \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\tcbsidebyside[sidebyside adapt=right, 
blanker,sidebyside gap=5mm
]{
% \lipsum[2]
}{%
\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow,draw=yellow!75!red] (0,0) circle (1cm);
\fill[red] (45:5mm) circle (1mm);
\fill[red] (135:5mm) circle (1mm);
\draw[line width=1mm,red] (215:5mm) arc (215:325:5mm);
\end{tikzpicture}
}
\end{verbatim}


141
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>left</th>
<th>center</th>
<th>right</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Both sides adapted

![Smiley face]
If set to `true`, the \( \text{left-handed content} \) and \( \text{right-handed content} \) of \texttt{tcbsidebyside} are switched. Obviously, this option is only valid inside \texttt{tcbsidebyside}.

The side switching can be made even/odd page sensitive, if used inside \texttt{/tcb/if odd page}.

\begin{tabular}{|l|c|r|}
\hline
left & center & right \\
A & B & C \\
D & E & F \\
\hline
\end{tabular} This table contains the most important figures for all future actions. You may notice that B follows A, C follows B, and so on.
7 Saving and Loading of Verbatim Texts

The following macros are slightly modified versions of the original macros from the known packages \texttt{moreverb} and \texttt{verbatim}. They are used implicitly inside of a \texttt{tcolorbox} environment, but they can be used outside also.

\begin{tcbverbatimwrite}{\jobname_verbexp.tex}
\begin{quote}
This text is saved \textit{as is}.
\end{quote}
\end{tcbverbatimwrite}

Now, we are using the file:
\input{\jobname_verbexp.tex}

Now, we are using the file:
This text is saved \textit{as is}.

This environment may be used inside an own environment. Note, that inside the environment definition \texttt{tcbverbatimwrite} has to be used instead of \texttt{\begin{tcbverbatimwrite}} and \texttt{\end{tcbverbatimwrite}} instead of \texttt{\end{tcbverbatimwrite}}.

\begin{quote}
\begin{verbatim}
This is the text which is saved by my own environment.
\end{verbatim}
\end{quote}

Now, we are using the file:
\input{\jobname_myverb.tex}

Now, we are using the file:
This text is saved \textit{as is}.

\begin{tcbwrite}{\jobname_myverb.tex}
\begin{quote}
This text is saved \textit{as is}.
\end{quote}
\end{tcbwrite}

Now, we are using the file:
\tcbusetemp

Now, we are using the file:
This text is saved \textit{as is}.

\begin{tcbwrite}{\jobname_myverb.tex}
\end{tcbwrite}

Has the same function as \texttt{tcbverbatimwrite}, but uses the key value of \texttt{tempfile} for the file name.

\begin{quote}
\begin{verbatim}
This text is saved \textit{as is}.
\end{verbatim}
\end{quote}

Now, we are using the file:
\input{\jobname_myverb.tex}

Now, we are using the file:
This text is saved \textit{as is}.

\begin{quote}
\begin{verbatim}
This text is saved \textit{as is}.
\end{verbatim}
\end{quote}

Now, we are using the file:
\tcbusetemp

Now, we are using the file:
This text is saved \textit{as is}.

\tcbusetemp

Loads the current temporary file which was saved by \texttt{tcbwrite}. 

144
If this option is set to be true, the percent sign % is silently ignored for \texttt{tcbverbatimwrite} \textsuperscript{P.144} and all macros and environments which are built using \texttt{tcbverbatimwrite} \textsuperscript{P.144}, e.g. \texttt{tcbwritetemp} \textsuperscript{P.144}, \texttt{tcblisting} \textsuperscript{P.327}, or \texttt{dispExample} \textsuperscript{P.496}.

This option may be useful for creating some special effects, but mainly it is intended to be applied for documentation with DocStrip. The creation of this option was motivated by Yudai Nakata. Note that this option is not getting reset by \texttt{/tcb/reset} \textsuperscript{P.119}.

\begin{tcbwritetemp}
%\begin{center}\bfseries
This is my text.
%\end{center}
\end{tcbwritetemp}
\tcbusetemp
\tcbset{verbatim ignore percent}
\tcbusetemp

Normal usage:
This is my text.

Option applied:
This is my text.

Note that every percent sign is removed, also escaped ones.

\begin{tcblisting}{title=Normal}
%\begin{center}\bfseries
This is my 5\% text and this is my 10\% text.
%\end{center}
\end{tcblisting}
\begin{tcblisting}{title=Option applied, verbatim ignore percent}
\begin{center}\bfseries
This is my 5\% text and this is my 10\% text.
\end{center}
\end{tcblisting}

This is my 5\% text and this is my 10\% text.

This is my 5\% text and this is my 10\% text.
If this option is set to be `true`, spaces and tabs before `\end{tcbverbatimwrite}`
on the same line are ignored. The same is true for all environments based on
`tcbverbatimwrite` \cite{144}. If anything else precedes `\end{tcbverbatimwrite}` on the same
line, the complete content is written.

If this option is set to be `false`, everything preceding `\end{tcbverbatimwrite}` is written.
This was the default behavior before version 6.0.0.

The idea of `/tcb/verbatim ignore indentation at end` is that the environment can be
indented. The creation of this option was inspired by Yukai Chou.

\begin{tcblisting}{listing engine=minted, listing only,
verbatim ignore indentation at end=false}
  \begin{minted}{c}
    int a;
  \end{minted}
\end{tcblisting}

\begin{tcblisting}{listing engine=minted, listing only,
verbatim ignore indentation at end=false}
  \begin{minted}{c}
    int a;\int b;
  \end{minted}
\end{tcblisting}

\begin{tcblisting}{listing engine=minted, listing only,
verbatim ignore indentation at end=true}
  \begin{minted}{c}
    int a;
  \end{minted}
\end{tcblisting}

\begin{tcblisting}{listing engine=minted, listing only,
verbatim ignore indentation at end=true}
  \begin{minted}{c}
    int a;\int b;
  \end{minted}
\end{tcblisting}
8 Recording

The package provides some macros and options to take records during compilation. This is done by \LaTeX file operations to save some data to a file for later usage. The main application scenario is depicted in Section 8.3 on the next page where information about example solutions is recorded and read again in Section 8.4 on page 151.

8.1 Macros

\texttt{tcbstartrecording}\langle file name\rangle]

Opens a file denoted by \langle file name\rangle for writing the records. The default file name is \jobname.records. See Section 8.3 on the next page for an example application.

In some situations, a not existing optional parameter may cause parsing problems. If this happens (or just for precaution), use

\texttt{tcbstartrecording}\relax

or

\texttt{tcbstartrecording[\jobname.records]}

\texttt{tcbrecord}\langle content\rangle

Records any \langle content\rangle to the record file. \texttt{tcbrecord} is implemented as \texttt{\immediate\write}. \texttt{tcbstartrecording} has to be called before; otherwise, \texttt{tcbrecord} is silently ignored.

\texttt{tcbrecord[\string\solution{\thetcbcounter\{solutions/exercise-\thetcbcounter.tex\}}]}

\texttt{tcbstoprecording}

Closes the current record file which was opened by \texttt{tcbstartrecording} before.

\texttt{tcbinputrecords}\langle file name\rangle]

Opens a file denoted by \langle file name\rangle for reading the records via \texttt{\input}. The default file name is the name of the last used record file for saving. \texttt{tcbstoprecording} has to be called before.

8.2 Options

\texttt{/tcb/record=\langle content\rangle} \hspace{1cm} \texttt{(style, no default)}

Records any \langle content\rangle to the record file, see \texttt{tcbrecord}. This key can be used several times to write several lines.

\texttt{record=\string\solution{\thetcbcounter\{solutions/exercise-\thetcbcounter.tex\}}}

\texttt{/tcb/no recording}

Disables \texttt{tcbrecord} and \texttt{/tcb/record} inside the current group.
8.3 Example: Exercises

The following application example creates exercises and their corresponding solutions. Each pair is generated inside a single `tcolorbox` where the solution is given below `tcblower`\(^\text{P.12}\). For every example, the solution part is saved by `/tcb/savelowerto`\(^\text{P.29}\) to a file. The saving is recorded using `/tcb/record`\(^\text{P.147}\). To enlighten the possibilities, the second exercise has no solution. Finally, the solutions are input in Section 8.4 on page 151.

**Definition in the preamble:**

\begin{verbatim}
\NewTColorBox[auto counter,number within=section]{exercise}{+!O{}}{
  enhanced,colframe=green!20!black,colback=yellow!10!white,coltitle=green!40!black,
  fonttitle=\bfseries,
  underlay={\begin{tcbclipinterior}
    \shade[inner color=green!80!yellow,outer color=yellow!10!white]
    (interior.north west) circle (2cm);
    \draw[help lines,step=5mm,yellow!80!black,shift={(interior.north west)}]
    (interior.south west) grid (interior.north east);
  \end{tcbclipinterior}},
  title={Exercise~\thetcbcounter:},
  label={exercise@\thetcbcounter},
  attach title to upper=\quad,
  after upper={\par\hfill\textcolor{green!40!black}{\itshape Solution on page~\pageref{solution@\thetcbcounter}}}},
  lowerbox=ignored,
  savelowerto=solutions/exercise-\thetcbcounter.tex,
  record={\string\solution{\thetcbcounter}{solutions/exercise-\thetcbcounter.tex}},
  #1
}
\NewTotalTColorBox{\solution}{mm}{
  enhanced,colframe=red!20!black,colback=yellow!10!white,coltitle=red!40!black,
  fonttitle=\bfseries,
  underlay={\begin{tcbclipinterior}
    \shade[inner color=red!50!yellow,outer color=yellow!10!white]
    (interior.north west) circle (2cm);
    \draw[help lines,step=5mm,yellow!80!black,shift={(interior.north west)}]
    (interior.south west) grid (interior.north east);
  \end{tcbclipinterior}},
  title={Solution of Exercise~\ref{exercise@#1} on page~\pageref{exercise@#1}:},
  phantomlabel={solution@#1},
  attach title to upper=\par,
  }\input{#2}
\tcbset{no solution/.style={no recording,after upper=}}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{exercise}
  Compute the derivative of the following function:
  \begin{equation*}
    f(x)=\sin((\sin x)^2)
  \end{equation*}
  \tcblower
  The derivative is:
  \begin{align*}
    f'(x) &= (\sin((\sin x)^2))' \\
    &= \cos((\sin x)^2) 2\sin x \cos x.
  \end{align*}
\end{exercise}
\end{verbatim}
\begin{exercise}[no solution]
It holds:
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d}{dx}(\ln|x|) = \frac{1}{x}.
\end{equation*}
\end{exercise}

\begin{exercise}
Compute the derivative of the following function:
\begin{equation*}
f(x)=(\sin(\sin x))^2
\end{equation*}
\tcblower
The derivative is:
\begin{align*}
f'(x) &= \left( (\sin(\sin x))^2 \right)' \\
&= 2\sin(\sin x)\cos(\sin x)\cos x.
\end{align*}
\end{exercise}

\begin{exercise}
Compute the derivative of the following function:
\begin{equation*}
f(x)=\sqrt{x^3-6x^2+2x}
\end{equation*}
\tcblower
The derivative is:
\begin{align*}
f'(x) &= \left( \sqrt{x^3-6x^2+2x} \right)' \\
&= \frac{3x^2-12x+2}{2\sqrt{x^3-6x^2+2x}}.
\end{align*}
\end{exercise}

\begin{exercise}
Compute the derivative of the following function:
\begin{equation*}
f(x)=\left(\frac{2+3x}{1-2x}\right)^3
\end{equation*}
\tcblower
The derivative is:
\begin{align*}
f'(x) &= \left( \left(\frac{2+3x}{1-2x}\right)^3 \right)' \\
&= 3 \left(\frac{2+3x}{1-2x}\right)^2 \left(\frac{(1-2x)3-(2+3x)(-2)}{(1-2x)^2}\right) \\
&= \frac{21(2+3x)^2}{(1-2x)^4}.
\end{align*}
\end{exercise}

\begin{exercise}
Compute the derivative of the following function:
\begin{equation*}
f(x)=\frac{\cos x}{(\tan 2x)^2}
\end{equation*}
\tcblower
The derivative is:
\begin{align*}
f'(x) &= \left( \frac{\cos x}{(\tan 2x)^2} \right)' \\
&= \left( \frac{\cos x \cos 2x}{(\sin 2x)^2} \right)' \\
&= \frac{\cos(2x) \left[\sin x \sin 2x \cos 2x+ 4\cos x (\sin 2x)^2-\cos x \cos 2x \cos 2x \cos 2x \cos 2x \cos x + 4 \cos x (\sin 2x)^2 \right]}{(\sin 2x)^3}.
\end{align*}
\end{exercise}
Exercise 8.1: Compute the derivative of the following function:

\[ f(x) = \sin((\sin x)^2) \]

Solution on page 151

Exercise 8.2: It holds:

\[ \frac{d}{dx} (\ln x) = \frac{1}{x} \]

Exercise 8.3: Compute the derivative of the following function:

\[ f(x) = (\sin(\sin x))^2 \]

Solution on page 151

Exercise 8.4: Compute the derivative of the following function:

\[ f(x) = \sqrt{x^3 - 6x^2 + 2} \]
Exercise 8.5: Compute the derivative of the following function:

\[ f(x) = \left(\frac{2 + 3x}{1 - 2x}\right)^3 \]

Solution on page 152

Exercise 8.6: Compute the derivative of the following function:

\[ f(x) = \frac{\cos x}{(\tan 2x)^2} \]

Solution on page 152

Exercise 8.7: Compute the derivative of the following function:

\[ f(x) = \cos((2x^2 + 3)^3) \]

Solution on page 152

Exercise 8.8: Compute the derivative of the following function:

\[ f(x) = (x^2 + 1)\sqrt{x^4 + 1} \]

Solution on page 152

8.4 Example: Solutions

This concludes the example given in Section 8.3 on page 148. Now, the saved and recorded solutions are included.

\begin{verbatim}
\textbf{Solution of Exercise 8.1 on page 150:}
The derivative is:
\[ f'(x) = \left(\sin((\sin x)^2)\right)' = \cos((\sin x)^2)2\sin x \cos x. \]
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\textbf{Solution of Exercise 8.3 on page 150:}
The derivative is:
\[ f'(x) = \left((\sin x)^3\right)' = 2\sin x \cos x. \]
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\textbf{Solution of Exercise 8.4 on page 150:}
The derivative is:
\[ f'(x) = \left(\sqrt{x^3 - 6x^2 + 2x}\right)' = \frac{3x^2 - 12x + 2}{2\sqrt{x^3 - 6x^2 + 2x}}. \]
\end{verbatim}
Solution of Exercise 8.5 on page 151:
The derivative is:
\[ f'(x) = \left( \frac{2 + 3x}{1 - 2x} \right)^3 = 3 \left( \frac{2 + 3x}{1 - 2x} \right)^2 \frac{(1 - 2x)3 - (2 + 3x)(-2)}{(1 - 2x)^2} = \frac{21(2 + 3x)^3}{(1 - 2x)^4}. \]

Solution of Exercise 8.6 on page 151:
The derivative is:
\[ f''(x) = \left( \frac{\cos x}{\tan 2x^2} \right)' = \left( \frac{\cos x \cos 2x^2}{\sin 2x^2} \right)' = \frac{(\sin 2x^2)\sin x \sin 2x \cos 2x^2 + 4 \cos x \sin 2x \cos x \sin 2x^2 + 4 \cos x \cos 2x^2}{(\sin 2x^2)^3} \]
\[ = \frac{-\cos(2x)(\sin x \sin 2x \cos 2x^2 + 4 \cos x \cos 2x^2)}{(\sin 2x^2)^3}. \]

Solution of Exercise 8.7 on page 151:
The derivative is:
\[ f'(x) = \left( \cos((2x^2 + 3)^3) \right)' = -\sin((2x^2 + 3)^3)(3(2x^2 + 3)^2 \cdot 4x) \]
\[ = -12x(2x^2 + 3)^2 \sin((2x^2 + 3)^3). \]

Solution of Exercise 8.8 on page 151:
The derivative is:
\[ f'(x) = \left( (x^2 + 1) \sqrt{x^4 + 1} \right)' = 2x \sqrt{x^4 + 1} + \frac{2x^3(x^2 + 1)}{\sqrt{x^4 + 1}}. \]
9 Technical Overview and Customization

This section provides a technical overview of the skin concept of \texttt{tcolorbox}. For most applications of \texttt{tcolorbox}, one will not need to know the bells and whistles described herein. You may proceed to Section 10 on page 168 where the customization options for most users are documented.

The following explanations also cover options and settings from the \texttt{skins} library, see Section 10 on page 168.

9.1 Skins and Drawing Engines

From a technical point of view, a skin is a style definition for the appearance of a \texttt{tcolorbox}. The core package provides some additional option keys for skins but only two skins called \texttt{standard} \footnote{P.228} and \texttt{standard jigsaw} \footnote{P.229}. The \texttt{skins} library adds several more skins. To change to a skin, only one option from the core package has to be set.

\texttt{/tcb/skin=⟨name⟩} \footnote{(style, no default, initially \texttt{standard})}

Sets the current skin to \texttt{⟨name⟩}. This is a style definition which sets all the following keys, i.e. for many use cases there is nothing more to do.

\texttt{\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=My title]}
This is my content.
\end{tcolorbox}}

\texttt{\begin{tcolorbox}[beamer,adjusted title=My title]}
This is my content.
\end{tcolorbox}}

\texttt{/tcb/skin first=⟨name⟩} \footnote{(style, no default, initially \texttt{standard})}

If the box is set to be \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \footnote{P.400} and is broken actually, then the skin for the first part of the break sequence is set to \texttt{⟨name⟩}, see Subsection 19.8 on page 414. Typically, this key is set by a \texttt{/tcb/skin}.

\texttt{/tcb/skin middle=⟨name⟩} \footnote{(style, no default, initially \texttt{standard})}

If the box is set to be \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \footnote{P.400} and is broken actually, then the skin for the middle parts (if any) of the break sequence is set to \texttt{⟨name⟩}, see Subsection 19.8 on page 414. Typically, this key is set by a \texttt{/tcb/skin}.

\texttt{/tcb/skin last=⟨name⟩} \footnote{(style, no default, initially \texttt{standard})}

If the box is set to be \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \footnote{P.400} and is broken actually, then the skin for the last part of the break sequence is set to \texttt{⟨name⟩}, see Subsection 19.8 on page 414. Typically, this key is set by a \texttt{/tcb/skin}. 

153
/tcb/graphical environment=(name)  (no default, initially pgfpicture)

Sets the graphical environment for the tcolorbox to ⟨name⟩. Feasible values are pgfpicture and tikzpicture or environments which inherit from one of these two. This key is set by a /tcb/skin→P.153 and may seldom be used directly.

The skin of a tcolorbox is drawn by up to four engines. Afterwards, the text content is drawn which is not part of a skin. The four steps are:

1. The frame of the box, drawn by /tcb/frame engine.
2. The interior of the box. The interior of a box with title is drawn differently from a box without title. /tcb/interior titled engine or /tcb/interior engine→P.155 is used to draw the interior.
3. The segmentation (line) of the box, if there is a lower part; drawn by /tcb/segmentation engine→P.155.
4. The title area of the box, if there is a title and /tcb/title filled→P.32 is set to true; drawn by /tcb/title engine→P.155.

/tcb/frame engine=(name)  (no default, initially standard)

Sets the frame drawing engine for a box to ⟨name⟩. Typically, this key is set by a /tcb/skin→P.153. Feasible values for ⟨name⟩ are:

- standard: the original code from the core package,
- path: a tikz path which is controlled by /tcb/frame style→P.168,
- pathjigsaw: a tikz path which is controlled by /tcb/frame style→P.168,
- pathfirst: a tikz path which is controlled by /tcb/frame style→P.168,
- pathfirstjigsaw: a tikz path which is controlled by /tcb/frame style→P.168,
- pathmiddle: a tikz path which is controlled by /tcb/frame style→P.168,
- pathmiddlejigsaw: a tikz path which is controlled by /tcb/frame style→P.168,
- pathlast: a tikz path which is controlled by /tcb/frame style→P.168,
- pathlastjigsaw: a tikz path which is controlled by /tcb/frame style→P.168,
- freelance: deprecated.
- spartan: a quite spartan code.
- empty: draw nothing.

/tcb/interior titled engine=(name)  (no default, initially standard)

Sets the interior drawing engine for a titled box to ⟨name⟩. Typically, this key is set by a /tcb/skin→P.153. Feasible values for ⟨name⟩ are:

- standard: the original code from the core package,
- path: a tikz path which is controlled by /tcb/interior style→P.169,
- pathfirst: a tikz path which is controlled by /tcb/interior style→P.169,
- pathmiddle: a tikz path which is controlled by /tcb/interior style→P.169,
- pathlast: a tikz path which is controlled by /tcb/interior style→P.169,
- freelance: deprecated.
- spartan: a quite spartan code.
- empty: draw nothing.
/tcb/interior engine\(=\langle name\rangle\) \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially \textbf{standard})}

Sets the \textit{interior} drawing engine for an untitled box to \(\langle name\rangle\). Typically, this key is set by a /tcb/skin \(^{*P.153}\). Feasible values for \(\langle name\rangle\) are:

- \textbf{standard}: the original code from the core package,
- \textbf{path}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by /tcb/interior style \(^{*P.169}\),
- \textbf{pathfirst}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by /tcb/interior style \(^{*P.169}\),
- \textbf{pathmiddle}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by /tcb/interior style \(^{*P.169}\),
- \textbf{pathlast}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by /tcb/interior style \(^{*P.169}\),
- \textbf{freelance}: deprecated.
- \textbf{spartan}: a quite spartan code.
- \textbf{empty}: draw nothing.

/tcb/segmentation engine\(=\langle name\rangle\) \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially \textbf{standard})}

Sets the \textit{segmentation} (line) drawing engine for a box to \(\langle name\rangle\). Typically, this key is set by a /tcb/skin \(^{*P.153}\). Feasible values for \(\langle name\rangle\) are:

- \textbf{standard}: the original code from the core package,
- \textbf{path}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by /tcb/segmentation style \(^{*P.171}\),
- \textbf{freelance}: deprecated.
- \textbf{spartan}: a quite spartan code.
- \textbf{empty}: draw nothing.

/tcb/title engine\(=\langle name\rangle\) \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially \textbf{standard})}

Sets the \textit{title area} drawing engine for a titled box to \(\langle name\rangle\). Typically, this key is set by a /tcb/skin \(^{*P.153}\). Feasible values for \(\langle name\rangle\) are:

- \textbf{standard}: the original code from the core package,
- \textbf{path}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by /tcb/title style \(^{*P.171}\),
- \textbf{pathfirst}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by /tcb/title style \(^{*P.171}\),
- \textbf{pathmiddle}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by /tcb/title style \(^{*P.171}\),
- \textbf{pathlast}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by /tcb/title style \(^{*P.171}\),
- \textbf{freelance}: deprecated.
- \textbf{spartan}: a quite spartan code.
- \textbf{empty}: draw nothing.

\begin{itemize}
\item After an engine is set to an initializing value, the resulting graphical code can be changed using code option keys, see Section 9.2 on page 157.
\end{itemize}
/tcb/geometry nodes=true|false (default true, initially false)

If set to true, up to four tikz nodes are defined for a tcolorbox which are named frame, interior, segmentation, and title. These nodes describe the boundaries of the equally named parts of a tcolorbox. They are used by most engines based on Ti\Kn. Typically, this key is set automatically by a /tcb/skin \textsuperscript{P.153}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=The title]
  The upper part. \tcblower The lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,adjusted title=The title, 
frame code={\path [draw=red,fill=red!25] (frame.south west) rectangle (frame.north east);},
interior titled code={\path [draw=blue,fill=blue!25] (interior.south west) rectangle (interior.north east);},
segmentation code={\path [draw=green,fill=green!25] (segmentation.south west) rectangle (segmentation.north east);},
title code={\path [draw=black,fill=brown!75!black] (title.south west) rectangle (title.north east);}]
  The upper part. \tcblower The lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
9.2 Code Option Keys

The following code options are applicable for all skins. The used \textit{(graphical code)} can be any \texttt{pgf} code. For all skins with exception of \texttt{standard} \textsuperscript{P.228} and \texttt{standard jigsaw} \textsuperscript{P.229}, the \texttt{(graphical code)} can also be any \texttt{TiKZ} code.

\texttt{/tcb/frame code}=(\texttt{graphical code}) \hspace{1cm} \text{(code, default from \texttt{standard})}

The given \texttt{(graphical code)} is used for drawing the \textit{frame} of the box.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\tcblset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,frame code={
\foreach \n in {north east,north west,south east,south west}
{\path [fill=red!75!black] (interior.\n) circle (3mm); } }]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/frame empty} \hspace{1cm} \text{(style, no value)}

This is a shortcut for setting \texttt{/tcb/frame code} to empty. This option removes the drawing of the frame. Alternatively, use \texttt{/tcb/frame hidden} \textsuperscript{P.169}.

\texttt{/tcb/interior titled code}=(\texttt{graphical code}) \hspace{1cm} \text{(code, default from \texttt{standard})}

The given \texttt{(graphical code)} is used for drawing the \textit{interior} of the box, if the box comes with a title.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\tcblset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,interior titled code={
\path [draw=red!5!white,line width=5mm,line cap=round]
{(\xshift=3mm,yshift=-3mm)interior.north west} --(\xshift=-3mm,yshift=3mm)interior.south east
{(\xshift=3mm,yshift=3mm)interior.south west} --(\xshift=-3mm,yshift=-3mm)interior.north east);}
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/interior titled empty} \hspace{1cm} \text{(style, no value)}

This is a shortcut for setting \texttt{/tcb/interior titled code} to empty. This option removes the drawing of the untitled interior. Alternatively, use \texttt{/tcb/interior hidden} \textsuperscript{P.170}.
/tcb/interior code=(graphical code) (code, default from standard)

The given (graphical code) is used for drawing the interior of the box, if the box is without a title.

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,interior code={
  \path[draw=red!5!white,line width=5mm,line cap=round]
  ([xshift=3mm,yshift=-3mm]interior.north west)
  --([xshift=-3mm,yshift=3mm]interior.south east)
  ([xshift=3mm,yshift=3mm]interior.south west)
  --([xshift=-3mm,yshift=-3mm]interior.north east);}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.
This is the lower part.

/tcb/interior empty (style, no value)

This is a shortcut for setting /tcb/interior code to empty. This option removes the drawing of the interior. Alternatively, use /tcb/interior hidden \textsuperscript{P.170}.

/tcb/segmentation code=(graphical code) (code, default from standard)

The given (graphical code) is used for drawing the segmentation area of the box.

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,segmentation code={
  \path[top color=red!5!white,bottom color=red!5!white,middle color=blue]
  (segmentation.south west) rectangle (segmentation.north east);}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a tcolorbox.
This is the lower part.

/tcb/segmentation empty (style, no value)

This is a shortcut for setting /tcb/segmentation code to empty. This option removes the drawing of the segmentation line. Alternatively, use /tcb/segmentation hidden \textsuperscript{P.171}.  

158
/tcb/title code\=(graphical code) (code, default from standard)

The given (graphical code) is used for drawing the title area of the box.

```
/tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=bfserseries, coltitle=black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,title code={
\path[draw=yellow,solid,decorate,line width=2mm,
\hphantom{\draw};
\decoration={coil,aspect=0,segment length=10.1mm}]
([xshift=1mm]title.west) -- ([xshift=-1mm]title.east);}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My title

This is a tcolorbox.

This is the lower part.

/tcb/title empty (style, no value)

This is a shortcut for setting /tcb/title code to empty. This option removes the drawing of the title area. Alternatively, use /tcb/title hidden\textsuperscript{*} P.172.
9.3 Subskins

A subskin is a new \texttt{/tcb/skin} based on an existing skin which is extended or changed.

\begin{itemize}
  \item Never use geometry settings or bounding box options inside a subskin definition! If one skin is replaced by another skin, the overall bounding box should stay constant. Especially, if a skin is used for a breakable box, unpredictable and unpleasant results could arise otherwise. If you want to change the geometry also, use an additional style. See the skin \texttt{beamer} and the style \texttt{/tcb/beamer} as pattern.
\end{itemize}

\texttt{\textbackslash tcbsubskin\{⟨name⟩\}\{⟨base skin⟩\}\{⟨options⟩\}}

Creates a new skin ⟨name⟩ which inherits all properties of an existing ⟨base skin⟩ plus the given ⟨options⟩. The new skin ⟨name⟩ can be used as value for the keys \texttt{/tcb/skin}, \texttt{/tcb/skin first}, \texttt{/tcb/skin middle}, and \texttt{/tcb/skin last}. As ⟨base skin⟩, one can take \texttt{standard}, \texttt{empty}, \texttt{enhanced}, or any skin from the \texttt{skins} library, see Section 10 on page 168.

\begin{verbatim}
\% \tcbsuselibrary{skins}
\tcbsubskin{mycross}{empty}{frame code={%
  \draw[red,line width=5pt] (frame.south west)--(frame.north east);
  \draw[red,line width=5pt] (frame.north west)--(frame.south east);},
  skin first=mycross, skin middle=mycross, skin last=mycross}
\begin{tcolorbox}[skin=mycross]
  This is my content.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{/tcb/skin first is subskin of\{⟨base skin⟩\}\{⟨options⟩\}} (no default, initially unset)

Creates a new unnamed skin which inherits all properties of an existing ⟨base skin⟩ plus the given ⟨options⟩. This skin is set as \texttt{/tcb/skin first}. See a detailed example on page 270.

\texttt{/tcb/skin middle is subskin of\{⟨base skin⟩\}\{⟨options⟩\}} (no default, initially unset)

Creates a new unnamed skin which inherits all properties of an existing ⟨base skin⟩ plus the given ⟨options⟩. This skin is set as \texttt{/tcb/skin middle}. See a detailed example on page 270.

\texttt{/tcb/skin last is subskin of\{⟨base skin⟩\}\{⟨options⟩\}} (no default, initially unset)

Creates a new unnamed skin which inherits all properties of an existing ⟨base skin⟩ plus the given ⟨options⟩. This skin is set as \texttt{/tcb/skin last}. See a detailed example on page 270.
9.4 Drawing Scheme

Depending on the complexity of a \texttt{tcolorbox} definition, the resulting box is drawn in a more or less complex series of steps.

To document and demonstrate these drawing steps, we consider the following box definition:

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=Test Box, boxrule=1mm,titlerule=0.5mm,colframe=blue!50!black, interior style={top color=blue!20!green!50!white,bottom color=blue!20!yellow!50!white}, colbacktitle=blue!50!green!90!white,segmentation style={solid}, fonttitle=\bfseries,drop fuzzy shadow,borderline={0.3mm}{0.35mm}{yellow!50!white}, underlay={\path[fill image opacity=0.15,fill image scale=0.9, fill stretch picture={\draw[blue,line width=2mm] circle (1);}(interior.south west) rectangle (interior.north east);}, watermark text={Watermark},watermark color={green!20!white}, finish={\begin{tcbclipframe} \path[bottom color=black,top color=black!50!white,opacity=0.1] (frame.south west) -- (frame.south east) -- (frame.north east) -- cycle; \path[top color=white,bottom color=black!50!white,opacity=0.1] (frame.south west) -- (frame.north east) -- (frame.north west) -- cycle; \end{tcbclipframe}}]

For this definition, we get the maximal number of drawing steps:

1. shadow

2. frame

- Section 10.6 on page 203.
- \texttt{/tcb/colframe} → P.32, \texttt{/tcb/opacityframe} → P.56
- \texttt{/tcb/frame code} → P.157
- \texttt{/tcb/frame style} → P.168

- Section 10.5 on page 198
- Section 10.2 on page 175
- Section 10.8 on page 216
- Section 4.12 on page 79
- Section 10.3 on page 186

Lower part

- Section 10.9 on page 218

All together, the box is drawn:

```latex
% \usepackage{lipsum}
\begin{testbox}
\lipsum[2]
\end{testbox}
```
9.5 Color Names

Color settings for a \texttt{tcolorbox} are saved into named colors which may be used inside a box, e.g. for an overlay. These color names are

- \texttt{tcbcolframe} set by \texttt{/tcb/colframe} \rightarrow \texttt{P.32} (frame color)
- \texttt{tcbcolback} set by \texttt{/tcb/colback} \rightarrow \texttt{P.32} (background color)
- \texttt{tcbcolbacktitle} set by \texttt{/tcb/colbacktitle} \rightarrow \texttt{P.32} (background color of the title)
- \texttt{tcbcolbacklower} set by \texttt{/tcb/colbacklower} \rightarrow \texttt{P.244} (skin dependend background color of the lower part; needs \texttt{skins} to be loaded)
- \texttt{tcbcolupper} set by \texttt{/tcb/colupper} \rightarrow \texttt{P.33} (text color upper part)
- \texttt{tcbcollower} set by \texttt{/tcb/collower} \rightarrow \texttt{P.33} (text color lower part)
- \texttt{tcbcoltitle} set by \texttt{/tcb/coltitle} \rightarrow \texttt{P.33} (text color title)


9.6 Useful Properties

The following macros describe certain properties which may be used for the drawing scheme, see Section 9.4 on page 161. Sometimes, they are even available inside the box content. All of them are considered to be read-only and should never be redefined by the user.

\textbf{\texttt{tcbheightspace}}

If the height of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is not the natural height, the space difference between the forced and the natural size is hold by \texttt{tcbheightspace}. This macro is not usable inside the box content, but for skins or inside \texttt{/tcb/underlay} \textsuperscript{P.216}, \texttt{/tcb/overlay} \textsuperscript{P.79}, etc. If such a space information is needed inside the box content, see \texttt{/tcb/space to} \textsuperscript{P.64} instead.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{verbatim}
\% \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\newtcolorbox{testbox}{[2][]}{enhanced,size=fbox,
  colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,height=#2,
  underlay={\node[above,inner sep=3pt] at (interior.south){%
    \includegraphics[width=\tcbtextwidth,height=\tcbheightspace-3pt]{goldshade.png}};}
},
#1}
\begin{testbox}{3cm}
  This is my box. The space is filled with a picture.
\end{testbox}
\begin{testbox}{2cm}
  This is my box. The space is filled with a picture.
\end{testbox}
\end{verbatim}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{itemize}
\item This property describes the box content width.
\item If there also is a lower part, it describes the width of the upper part.
\item For \texttt{/tcb/sidebyside} \textsuperscript{P.134} boxes, it describes the combined text width plus segmentation.
\item This property can be used inside the box content text with exception of \texttt{/tcb/fit} \textsuperscript{P.454} boxes.
\item \texttt{tcbtextwidth} can be used for all box types for skins or inside \texttt{/tcb/underlay} \textsuperscript{P.216}, \texttt{/tcb/overlay} \textsuperscript{P.79}, etc.
\end{itemize}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tcolorbox}[colframe=blue!75!black]
  Inside a box: \texttt{tcbtextwidth} (=\texttt{the\linewidth}).
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{\textbackslash tcbtextheight}

This property describes the designated box content height. If the box is larger than the natural height, the actual content will be smaller than \texttt{\textbackslash tcbtextheight}.

- For boxes with a fixed \texttt{/tcb/height} → P.58, this property can be used inside the box content text. For other boxes, it denotes 0pt inside the box content.
- \texttt{\textbackslash tcbtextheight} can be used for all box types for skins or inside \texttt{/tcb/underlay} → P.216, \texttt{/tcb/overlay} → P.79, etc.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,colframe=blue!75!black, underlay={\node[green!75!red,fill] at (frame.east) {Here: \texttt{\textbackslash tcbtextheight};}}]
Inside a box with natural height: \texttt{\textbackslash tcbtextheight}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,colframe=blue!75!black,height=1cm, underlay={\node[green!75!red,fill] at (frame.east) {Here: \texttt{\textbackslash tcbtextheight};}}]
Inside a box with fixed height: \texttt{\textbackslash tcbtextheight}.
\end{tcolorbox}

Here: 7.95pt

Inside a box with natural height: 0pt.  
Here: 7.95pt

Inside a box with fixed height: 8.5359pt.  
Here: 8.5359pt

\texttt{\textbackslash tcbsegmentstate}

This macro contains 0, 1, or 2. It is set for every unbroken box and every broken partial box with the following meaning:

- 0: The current (partial) box contains only an upper part.
- 1: The current (partial) box contains an upper and a lower part. The segmentation node can be used for positioning.
- 2: The current (partial) box contains only a lower part. This can only be true for parts of breakable boxes.

Skins like \texttt{bicolor} → P.242 use this property to paint the (partial) boxes.

\begin{tcbbraster}
[raster equal height,enhanced, watermark text=\texttt{\textbackslash tcbsegmentstate}]
\begin{tcolorbox}Upper part\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Upper part \tcblower Lower part\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbbraster}

Upper part 0  
Upper part 1

Lower part

167
The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\tcbuselibrary{skins}

This also loads the package tikz [24]. Typically but not necessarily, the following skins use tikz instead of pgf.

In the following, general settings and options of the library are documented. The actual catalog of skins is found in Section 11 on page 226.

10.1 Style Option Keys

The following style options are applicable for all skins which use engines of type path, pathfirst, pathmiddle, or pathlast. Especially, the skin enhanced \textsuperscript{P.230} supports all of them and standard \textsuperscript{P.228} none.

/tcb/frame style=(tikz keys) \hspace{2cm} (style, no default)

The \texttt{tikz keys} are used inside the \texttt{tikz path} command for drawing the frame of the box.

This option is available if the \texttt{/tcb/frame engine} \textsuperscript{P.154} is set to path, pathfirst, pathmiddle, or pathlast. It is not available for standard.

/tcb/frame style image=(file name) \hspace{2cm} (no default, initially unset)

Fills the frame with an external image referenced by \texttt{(file name)}.
/tcb/frame style tile\{\langle graphics options\rangle\}\{\langle file name\rangle\} (no default, initially unset)

Fills the frame with a tile pattern based on an external image referenced by \langle file name\rangle. The \langle graphics options\rangle are given to the underlying \includegraphics command.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,frame style tile={width=1cm}{pink_marble.png}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/frame hidden (style, no value)

This is a shortcut for frame style\{draw=none,fill=none\}. Depending on the skin, this option switches off the drawing of the frame. Alternatively, use /tcb/frame empty \P.157.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,frame hidden]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/interior style\{\langle tikz keys\rangle\} (style, no default)

The \langle tikz keys\rangle are used inside the \tikz path command for drawing the \textit{interior} of the box. They are used for the titled and for the untitled version as well.

This option is available if the /tcb/interior titled engine \P.154 or /tcb/interior engine \P.155 is set to path, pathfirst, pathmiddle, or pathlast. It is not available for standard.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,interior style={left color=red!20!white, right color=yellow!50!white}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
**/tcb/interior style image=(file name)** (no default, initially unset)

Fills the interior with an external image referenced by *(file name).*

```
\tcbset{colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
interior style image=goldshade.png]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

**/tcb/interior style tile={(graphics options)}{(file name)}** (no default, initially unset)

Fills the interior with a tile pattern based on an external image referenced by *(file name).* The *(graphics options)* are given to the underlying *\includegraphics* command.

```
\tcbset{colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
interior style tile={width=2cm}{crinklepaper.png}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

**/tcb/interior hidden** (style, no value)

This is a shortcut for *interior style={draw=none,fill=none}*. Depending on the skin, this option switches off the drawing of the interior. Alternatively, use */tcb/interior empty* P.158 and/or */tcb/interior titled empty* P.157.

```
\tcbset{frame style={top color=red!20!white, 
bottom color=red!20!white!75!black, 
fonttitle=\bfseries,coltitle=black}}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,
interior hidden]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```
/tcb/segmentation style = ⟨tikz keys⟩  
(style, no default)

The ⟨tikz keys⟩ are used inside the tikz path command for drawing the segmentation line of the box.  
This option is available if the /tcb/segmentation engine ↑P.155 is set to path. It is not available for standard.

\tcbs{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,  
fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,  
segmentation style={double=white,draw=blue,  
double distance=1pt,solid}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.  
\tcblower
This is the lower part.  
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a tcolorbox.  
This is the lower part.

/tcb/segmentation hidden  
(style, no value)

This is a shortcut for segmentation style={draw=none,fill=none}. Depending on the skin, this option switches off the drawing of the segmentation line. See also /tcb/lower separated ↑P.30 which has the same effect for most skins. Alternatively, use /tcb/segmentation empty ↑P.158.

\tcbs{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,  
fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,  
segmentation hidden]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.  
\tcblower
This is the lower part.  
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a tcolorbox.  
This is the lower part.

/tcb/title style = ⟨tikz keys⟩  
(style, no default)

The ⟨tikz keys⟩ are used inside the tikz path command for drawing the title area of the box.  
This option is available if the /tcb/title engine ↑P.155 is set to path, pathfirst, pathmiddle, or pathlast. It is not available for standard.

\tcbs{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,  
coltitle=blue!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,  
title style={left color=blue!15!yellow,  
right color=red!85!black}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.  
\tcblower
This is the lower part.  
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a tcolorbox.  
This is the lower part.
/tcb/title style image=(file name)  
(no default, initially unset)
Fills the title area with an external image referenced by \texttt{(file name)}.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[enhanced,title=My title, title style image=blueshade.png\]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.

/tcb/title style tile=((graphics options))\{file name\}  
(no default, initially unset)
Fills the title area with a tile pattern based on an external image referenced by \texttt{file name}. The \texttt{(graphics options)} are given to the underlying \texttt{\includegraphics} command.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[enhanced,title=My title, title style tile={width=1cm}{pink\_marble.png}\]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.

/tcb/title hidden
(style, no value)
This is a shortcut for title style={draw=none,fill=none}. Depending on the skin, this option switches off the drawing of the title background. See also /tcb/title filled\textsuperscript{P.32} for a similar effect. Alternatively, use /tcb/title empty\textsuperscript{P.159}.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[title=My title, enhanced,title hidden\]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
The \texttt{tikz keys} are used to draw a title rule, i.e. a rule below the optional title. The width of the rule is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/titlerule}\textsuperscript{P.41}. It may be set directly to a smaller width to create mixed effects with the standard rule. This option is implemented as an \texttt{/tcb/underlay}\textsuperscript{P.216}. Thus, it is not available for \texttt{standard}\textsuperscript{P.228} and \texttt{standard jigsaw}\textsuperscript{P.229}, but for all other skins, e.g. \texttt{enhanced}\textsuperscript{P.230}. As an underlay, this option can be used multiple times and is removed by \texttt{/tcb/no underlay}\textsuperscript{P.216}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,  
colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,  
colbacktitle=red!50!yellow,fonttitle=\bfseries,  
title=My title,  
titlerule=1mm,  
titlerule style=yellow ]  
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,  
colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,  
colbacktitle=red!50!yellow,fonttitle=\bfseries,  
title=My title,  
titlerule=1mm,  
titlerule style={yellow,line width=0.5mm} ]  
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,  
colback=red!10!white,colframe=red!75!black,  
colbacktitle=red!50!yellow,fonttitle=\bfseries,  
frame hidden,  
title=My title,  
boxrule=0pt,titlerule=1mm,  
titlerule style=red!50!black ]  
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[empty,  
coltitle=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,  
borderline horizontal={0.5mm}{0pt}{red!50!white},  
title=My title,  
titlerule style={red,  
arrows = {Hooks[arc=270]-Hooks[arc=270]}} ]  
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
The combined Ti\textit{kZ} style applied to frame, interior, and title background can be used by authors in customizing code.

/\textit{tikz/tcb fill frame} (style, no value)

This is a Ti\textit{kZ} style which is finally applied to the \textit{frame} of the box.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

/\textit{tikz/tcb fill interior} (style, no value)

This is a Ti\textit{kZ} style which is finally applied to the \textit{interior} of the box.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

/\textit{tikz/tcb fill title} (style, no value)

This is a Ti\textit{kZ} style which is finally applied to the \textit{title area} of the box.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
10.2 Boxed Title Option Keys

10.2.1 Boxed Title Placement

The following options place the title text into an own \texttt{\textbackslash{}tcbox} \textsuperscript{\texttt{\textbackslash{}P.14}}. This boxed title can be customized independently from the main box using \texttt{/tcb/boxed title style} \textsuperscript{\texttt{\textbackslash{}P.180}}. The placement can be influenced by \texttt{\langle{} boxtitle options \rangle{}}.

\texttt{/tcb/attach boxed title to top left=\{(boxtitle options)\}} \hspace{1cm} \texttt{(style, default empty)}

The title is boxed with a \texttt{\textbackslash{}tcbox} \textsuperscript{\texttt{\textbackslash{}P.14}} and attached to the top left corner of the main box.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,title=My title, 
attach boxed title to top left]
This is a \texttt{\textbf{tcolorbox}}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,title=My title, 
attach boxed title to top text left]
This is a \texttt{\textbf{tcolorbox}}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,title=My title, 
attach boxed title to top center]
This is a \texttt{\textbf{tcolorbox}}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,title=My title, 
attach boxed title to top text right]
This is a \texttt{\textbf{tcolorbox}}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,title=My title, 
attach boxed title to top right]
This is a \texttt{\textbf{tcolorbox}}.
\end{tcolorbox}
The title is boxed with a `\tcolorbox` and attached to the bottom left corner of the main box.

```latex
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to bottom left]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

The title is boxed with a `\tcolorbox` and attached to the bottom left corner of the main box and shifted to match title text and box text. Note that this matches the upper part, even, if there is a lower part.

```latex
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to bottom text left]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

The title is boxed with a `\tcolorbox` and attached to the bottom of the main box.

```latex
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to bottom center]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

The title is boxed with a `\tcolorbox` and attached to the bottom right corner of the main box and shifted to match title text and box text. Note that this matches the upper part, even, if there is a lower part.

```latex
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, halign=right, attach boxed title to bottom text right]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```
This is a convenient style to mimic a standard title. It uses \texttt{/tcb/attach boxed title to top} \textsuperscript{P.175}, \texttt{/tcb/minipage boxed title} \textsuperscript{P.184}, and sizes the boxed title to match the base box.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to top, boxed title style={colframe=red}]  
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

In contrast to \texttt{/tcb/attach boxed title to top}, this style uses smaller left and right rules to avoid previewer glitches. Typically, one would not use different colors for the frame as in the example below.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to top*, boxed title style={colframe=red}]  
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

This is a convenient style to produce a standard-like title at the bottom of the box. It uses \texttt{/tcb/attach boxed title to bottom center} \textsuperscript{P.176}, \texttt{/tcb/minipage boxed title} \textsuperscript{P.184}, and sizes the boxed title to match the base box.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to bottom, boxed title style={colframe=red}]  
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

My title
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

In contrast to \texttt{/tcb/attach boxed title to top}, this style uses smaller left and right rules to avoid previewer glitches.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to bottom]  
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

My title
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

This style combines \texttt{/tcb/attach boxed title to bottom*} with \texttt{/tcb/boxed title style} \textsuperscript{P.180}. The \texttt{/options} are given to \texttt{/tcb/boxed title style} \textsuperscript{P.180}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title,flip title={sharp corners}, title=My title,colback=red!10, colbacktitle=red!75!black]  
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

My title
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
10.2.2 Options for the Boxed Title Placement

The ⟨boxtitle options⟩ of the keys described above are shift values. The dimensions of the boxed title are stored into two macros \tcboxedtitleheight and \tcboxedtitlewidth. These macros can be used inside the following ⟨boxtitle options⟩:

/tcb/boxtitle/xshift=⟨length⟩ (no default, initially 0pt)

The boxed title is shifted by ⟨length⟩ in the horizontal direction.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,
title=My title,
attach boxed title to top left={xshift=-2mm},
boxed title style={size=small,colback=blue}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

/tcb/boxtitle/yshift=⟨length⟩ (no default, initially 0pt)

The boxed title is shifted by ⟨length⟩ in the vertical direction.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,
title=My title,
attach boxed title to top center=
{yshift=-\tcboxedtitleheight/2},
boxed title style={size=small,colback=blue}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

/tcb/boxtitle/yshifttext=⟨length⟩ (no default, initially 0pt)

The text inside the main box is shifted by ⟨length⟩ to give room for e.g. a sunken title.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,
title=My title,
attach boxed title to top center=
{yshift=-3mm,yshifttext=-1mm},
boxed title style={size=small,colback=blue}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

/tcb/boxtitle/yshift*=⟨length⟩ (no default, initially 0pt)

Sets /tcb/boxtitle/yshift and /tcb/boxtitle/yshifttext the same time. /tcb/boxtitle/yshifttext is only set if necessary.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,
title=My title,
attach boxed title to top center={yshift=-3mm},
boxed title style={size=small,colback=blue}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

The bounding box of the resulting total \textbf{tcolorbox} is adapted automatically to the vertical dimensions of the boxed title. Possible horizontal enlargements are not automatically computed.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,
title=My title,
attach boxed title to top left=
{xshift=-2mm,yshift=-2mm},
boxed title style={size=small,colback=blue},
show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

178
### 10.2.3 Options for the Boxed Title Box

The boxed title options are implemented as an underlay, see Section 10.8 on page 216. Therefore, a boxed title is not drawn, if a skin does not support underlays like standard. Still, the room for the boxed titles gets reserved in these cases.

A TikZ node title is produced by a boxed title which can be used inside /tcb/frame code, /tcb/interior code, underlays, overlays, and finishes.

A boxed title is almost always the first underlay. The only exceptions are underlays defined by /tcb/underlay boxed title which are drawn before. Additionally, underlays defined by /tcb/underlay boxed title are only drawn, if a boxed title is actually set. They are ignored, if there is no boxed title.

```
/tcb/boxed title size=(size)  \hspace{0.6\textwidth}(no default, initially title)
```

This setting defines the basic size for the title box. Further settings can be applied using /tcb/boxed title style. Feasible values for (size) are:

- **title**: Sets the size according to /tcb/size=normal.
- **standard**: No size setting. Typically, this is identical to /tcb/size=normal.
- **copy**: The size values for a title of the base box are copied for the title box.

```
\begin{tcbbraster}[raster columns=3,enhanced,boxrule=0.4pt,  
    title=My title,attach boxed title to top center]
\begin{tcolorbox}[boxed title size=title]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[boxed title size=standard]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[boxed title size=copy]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbbraster}
```

My title
My title
My title

This is a tcolorbox. This is a tcolorbox. This is a tcolorbox.
By default, a boxed title is dimensioned with \texttt{/tcb/size=49} and inherits the \texttt{/tcb/skin=153} and \texttt{/tcb/colframe=32} of the main box. Also, the \texttt{/tcb/colback=32} is inherited from the main \texttt{/tcb/colbacktitle=32}. Font and color of the title text are set as usual. All other \texttt{(options)} are set by the \texttt{/tcb/boxed title style} key. Since a boxed title is set by \texttt{\tcbox}, all \texttt{tcolorbox} options are applicable here. If \texttt{/tcb/boxed title style} is used several times, the \texttt{(options)} are appended.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,\fonttitle=\textbf,\coltitle=green!25!black,\attach boxed title to top center=\{yshift=-2mm,yshifttext=-1mm\},\boxed title style=\{colframe=green!75!black,\colback=yellow!50!green\}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,\colframe=red!50!black,\colback=red!10!white,\arc=1mm,\colbacktitle=red!10!white,\fonttitle=\textbf,\coltitle=red!50!black,\attach boxed title to top text left=\{yshift=-0.50mm\},\boxed title style=\{skin=enhancedfirst jigsaw,\size=small,\arc=1mm,\bottom=-1mm,\interior style=\{fill=none,\top color=red!30!white,\bottom color=red!20!white\}\}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,\colframe=blue!50!black,\colback=blue!10!white,\colbacktitle=blue!5!yellow!10!white,\fonttitle=\textbf,\coltitle=black,\attach boxed title to top center=\{yshift=-0.25mm-\tcbxtitleheight/2,yshifttext=2mm-\tcbxtitleheight/2\},\boxed title style=\{boxrule=0.5mm,\frame code={\path[\tcb fill frame] ([xshift=-4mm]frame.west)
-- (frame.north west) -- (frame.north east) -- ([xshift=4mm]frame.east)
-- (frame.south east) -- (frame.south west) -- cycle; },\interior code={\path[\tcb fill interior] ([xshift=-2mm]interior.west)
-- (interior.north west) -- (interior.north east)
-- ([xshift=2mm]interior.east) -- (interior.south east) -- (interior.south west)
-- cycle; }\}]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}

My title


My title


N 2016-02-26 /tcb/no boxed title style

(style, initially set)

Removes all options which were set by /tcb/boxed title style. 

P.180
The title text content is captured with a horizontal box. Especially, there are no linebreak possible.

\newtcolorbox{mybox}[1]{hbox boxed title, enhanced,attach boxed title to top center= {yshift=-3mm,yshifttext=-1mm}, boxed title style={size=small,colback=red}, title={#1}}

\begin{mybox}{Short title}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}{This title is not really very short}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}

The title text content is captured with a minipage with a width of \langle \text{length} \rangle. By default, the resulting boxed title is somewhat smaller than the main box.

\newtcolorbox{mybox}[1]{minipage boxed title, enhanced,attach boxed title to top center= {yshift=-3mm,yshifttext=-1mm}, boxed title style={size=small,colback=red}, center title,title={#1}}

\begin{mybox}{Short title}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}{This title is not really very short}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}

The title text content is captured with a minipage with a width of main box width plus \langle \text{length} \rangle. By default, the resulting boxed title is somewhat smaller than the main box.

\newtcolorbox{mybox}[1]{minipage boxed title*=,-2cm, enhanced,attach boxed title to top center= {yshift=-3mm,yshifttext=-1mm}, boxed title style={size=small,colback=red}, center title,title={#1}}

\begin{mybox}{Short title}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}{This title is not really very short}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
The title text content is captured with a TikZ node with given TikZ \texttt{(options)}. The text is centered by default.

\begin{mybox}{Short title}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
\bigskip
\begin{mybox}{This title is not really very short}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}

The title text content is captured with a \texttt{varwidth} environment with a width of \texttt{(length)}. This style needs the \texttt{varwidth} package \cite{varwidth} to be loaded manually. By default, the resulting boxed title is somewhat smaller than the main box.

\begin{mybox}{Short title}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
\bigskip
\begin{mybox}{This title is not really very short}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}

The title text content is captured with a \texttt{varwidth} environment with a width of main box width plus \texttt{(length)}. This style needs the \texttt{varwidth} package \cite{varwidth} to be loaded manually. By default, the resulting boxed title is somewhat smaller than the main box.

\begin{mybox}{Short title}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
\bigskip
\begin{mybox}{This title is not really very short}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
10.3 Watermark Option Keys

The following watermark options are applicable for all skins which use `tikzpicture` as `/tcb/graphical environment` \(^{P.154}\). Therefore, the skin `standard` \(^{P.228}\) does not support these watermarks, but all other skins, e.g. `enhanced` \(^{P.230}\).

The watermark options rely on the more general overlay options described in Section 4.12 from page 79. Therefore, `watermarks` and `overlays` cannot be used mixed. But a mixture is possible with the \texttt{hooks} library, see Section 23.

/\texttt{tcb/watermark text}=\texttt{(text)} \hspace{1cm} \text{\small (no default, initially unset)}

Writes some \texttt{(text)} in the center of the interior region of a `tcolorbox`. This \texttt{(text)} is written after the frame and interior are drawn and before the text content is drawn. It is zoomed or stretched according the values of `/\texttt{tcb/watermark zoom}` \(^{P.189}\) or `/\texttt{tcb/watermark stretch}` \(^{P.191}\).

\texttt{\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}}

\texttt{\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,watermark text=My Watermark]}
\texttt{\lipsum[1]}
\texttt{\tcblower}
\texttt{\lipsum[2]}
\texttt{\end{tcolorbox}}

My title


/\texttt{tcb/watermark text on}=\texttt{(part) is (text)} \hspace{1cm} \text{\small (no default, initially unset)}

This option writes some \texttt{(text)} in the center of the interior region of a `tcolorbox` as described for `/\texttt{tcb/watermark text}`. But this is done only for boxes named \texttt{(part)} of a break sequence, see `/\texttt{tcb/breakable}` \(^{P.400}\).

Feasible values for \texttt{(part)} are:
- broken: all broken box parts,
- unbroken: unbroken boxes only,
- first: first parts of a break sequence,
- middle: middle parts of a break sequence,
- last: last parts of a break sequence,
- unbroken and first: unbroken boxes and first parts of a break sequence,
- middle and last: middle and last parts of a break sequence,
- first and middle: first and middle parts of a break sequence.
Draws an external picture referenced by \texttt{⟨file name⟩} in the center of the interior region of a \texttt{tcolorbox}. The picture is drawn \textit{after} the frame and interior are drawn and \textit{before} the text content is drawn. It is zoomed or stretched according the values of \texttt{/tcb/watermark zoom} \textsuperscript{P.189} or \texttt{/tcb/watermark stretch} \textsuperscript{P.191}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,watermark graphics=Basilica_5.png, watermark opacity=0.15]
\lipsum[1-2]
\tcblover
This example uses a public domain picture from\[\url{http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Basilica_5.png}\]
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}}

This option draws a picture referenced by \texttt{⟨file name⟩} in the center of the interior region of a \texttt{tcolorbox} as described for \texttt{/tcb/watermark graphics}. But this is done only for boxes named \texttt{⟨part⟩} of a break sequence, see \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \textsuperscript{P.400}.

Feasible values for \texttt{⟨part⟩} are:
- \texttt{broken}: all broken box parts,
- \texttt{unbroken}: unbroken boxes only,
- \texttt{first}: first parts of a break sequence,
- \texttt{middle}: middle parts of a break sequence,
- \texttt{last}: last parts of a break sequence,
- \texttt{unbroken and first}: unbroken boxes and first parts of a break sequence,
- \texttt{middle and last}: middle and last parts of a break sequence.
/tcb/watermark tikz=(graphical code)  
(no default, initially unset)

Draws the given tikz (graphical code) in the center of the interior region of a tcolorbox. 
The code is executed after the frame and interior are drawn and before the text context is drawn. The result is zoomed or stretched according the values of /tcb/watermark zoom→P.189 or /tcb/watermark stretch→P.191.

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,  
watermark tikz={\draw[line width=2mm] circle (1cm) 
node[\fontfamily{ptm}\fontseries{b}\fontsize{20mm}{20mm}\selectfont ?];}]
\lipsum[1]
\tcblower
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}

My title


/tcb/watermark tikz on=(part) is (graphical code)  
(no default, initially unset)

This option draws the given tikz (graphical code) in the center of the interior region of a tcolorbox as described for /tcb/watermark tikz. But this is done only for boxes named (part) of a break sequence, see /tcb/breakable→P.400.

Feasible values for (part) are:
- broken: all broken box parts,
- unbroken: unbroken boxes only,
- first: first parts of a break sequence,
- middle: middle parts of a break sequence,
- last: last parts of a break sequence,
- unbroken and first: unbroken boxes and first parts of a break sequence,
- middle and last: middle and last parts of a break sequence.

/tcb/no watermark  
(style, no default, initially set)

Removes the watermark if set before. This is an alias for /tcb/no overlay→P.80.
Sets the opacity value ∈ [0, 1] for a watermark.

Sets the zoom value for a watermark. The zoom respects the aspect ratio. The value 1.0 means to fill the whole box until the watermark touches the frame.
Identically to `/tcb/watermark zoom` \(\Rightarrow\) P.189, but the watermark never gets enlarged. Thus, the watermark keeps its original size or is shrunk.

Sets the overzoom value for a watermark. The overzoom respects the aspect ratio. The value 1.0 means to fill the whole box until the watermark touches all four sides of the frame.

If a `/tcb/watermark overzoom` value of 1.0 is used in connection with invisible top and bottom rules which still have a thickness greater than \(\text{\texttt{Opt}}\), the space of these invisible rules may not be covered by the watermark. For example, this situation may occur during the breaking of `/tcb/enhanced` \(\Rightarrow\) P.230 boxes. To avoid this optical glitch, just set `/tcb/pad at break` \(\Rightarrow\) P.403 to any desired value.
Sets the stretch value for a watermark. The stretch value is applied to width and height in relation to the box dimensions. It does not respect the aspect ratio. The value 1.0 means to fill the whole box.

\tcbset{enhanced,colback=white,colframe=blue!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, 
watermark graphics=lichtspiel.jpg,watermark opacity=0.5, nobeforeafter,width=(\linewidth-2mm)/2}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Stretch 1.00,watermark stretch=1.00]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Stretch 0.50,watermark stretch=0.50]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}

Stretch 1.00

Stretch 0.50

Sets the color for the watermark.

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,watermark text=My Watermark, 
watermark color=yellow!50!red]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
/tcb/clip watermark=true|false

Sets the watermark to be clipped to the interior area.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Clip (default),clip watermark]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=No clip,clip watermark=false]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}

Removing the clipping should be necessary only in very rare situations. Until version 5.1.1 (2022/06/24), theoretically, the watermark could be extended over the boundaries of the box without limit. Newer versions restrict the watermark to a box scaled 4 times the actual \texttt{tcolorbox}. If you really need to extend further, you are strongly advised to implement this by using /tcb/overlay\textsuperscript{P.79} or /tcb/underlay\textsuperscript{P.216} directly where no restrictions apply. Note that a watermark is just a special /tcb/overlay\textsuperscript{P.79}.
10.4 Clip Environments

The following clip environments are applicable for all skins which use engines of type \texttt{path}, \texttt{pathfirst}, \texttt{pathmiddle}, or \texttt{pathlast}. Especially, the skin \texttt{enhanced} \footnote{Page 230} supports all of them and \texttt{standard} \footnote{Page 228} none. The typical area of application is inside overlay code, see Section 4.12 from page 79.

\begin{tcbclipframe}
\begin{environment content}
\end{tcbclipframe}

Defines a Tikz scope which clips to the frame area path.

\begin{tcbclipframe}
\begin{environment content}
\end{tcbclipinterior}
\end{tcbclipframe}

\begin{picturebox}[title=My Picture Box]{lichtspiel.jpg}
\lipsum[1]
\end{picturebox}
\begin{tcbinvclipframe}
\begin{environment content}
\end{tcbinvclipframe}

Defines a \texttt{Tikz} scope which clips to the \textit{outside} of the frame area path.

\begin{tcbset}{enhanced jigsaw,fonttitle=\textbfseries,opacityback=0.35,colback=blue!5!white, frame style={left color=red!75!black,right color=red!10!yellow}}
\begin{tikzpicture}
% draw two balls
\path[use as bounding box] (0,0.8) rectangle +(0.1,0.1);
\shadedraw [shading=ball] (0,0) circle (1cm);
\shadedraw [ball color=red] (3,-2.2) circle (1cm);
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{tcbset}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=A translucent box, overlay={\begin{tcbinvclipframe}
\draw[red,line width=1cm] ([xshift=-2mm,yshift=2mm]frame.north west) --([xshift=2mm,yshift=-2mm]frame.south east);
\draw[red,line width=1cm] ([xshift=-2mm,yshift=-2mm]frame.south west) --([xshift=2mm,yshift=2mm]frame.north east);
\end{tcbinvclipframe}}]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}

A translucent box

\begin{tcbclipinterior}
\begin{environment content}
\end{tcbclipinterior}
Defines a \textit{Tikz} scope which clips to the interior area path.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My Title,
overlay={\begin{tcbclipinterior}
\draw[red,line width=1cm] (interior.north west)--(interior.south east);
\draw[red,line width=1cm] (interior.south west)--(interior.north east);
\end{tcbclipinterior}}]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcbcliptitle}
\begin{environment content}
\end{tcbcliptitle}
Defines a \textit{Tikz} scope which clips to the title area path.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My Title,colframe=blue,colback=yellow!10!white,
overlay={\begin{tcbcliptitle}node at (title)
\includegraphics[width=\linewidth]{lichtspiel.jpg};\end{tcbcliptitle}}]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}
Sets the title to be clipped to the title area.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=\mbox{This is a title which is unbreakable and far too long}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=\mbox{This is a title which is unbreakable and far too long}, clip title]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

Sets the upper part to be clipped to the interior area.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,boxsep=0pt,top=0pt,bottom=0pt,left=0pt,right=0pt,boxrule=0.4pt,drop fuzzy shadow,clip upper, colback=black!75!white,toptitle=2pt,bottomtitle=2pt,nobeforeafter, center title,fonttitle=\small\sffamily,title=\detokenize{#2}]{\includegraphics[width=\the\dimexpr(\linewidth-4mm)/2\relax]{#2}}
\end{tcolorbox}

\mygraphics{lichtspiel.jpg}\hfill
\mygraphics{Basilica_5.png}
The example for \texttt{/tcb/clip upper} \textsuperscript{P.196} sizes the box according to the dimensions of the picture. To do it the other way around, the watermark options provide an easy solution.

\begin{tcblisting}{clip lower} Donau-dampfschiffschaftskapit\"anSM"
\end{tcblisting}

\begin{tcblisting} Donau-dampfschiffschaftskapit\"anSMutenfransen
\end{tcblisting}

\newcommand{\mygraphics}[2][]{% 
\tcbox[enhanced,capture=minipage,boxsep=0pt,top=0pt,bottom=0pt,left=0pt, 
right=0pt,boxrule=0.4pt,drop fuzzy shadow,nobeforeafter, 
colback=black!75!white,toptitle=2pt,bottomtitle=2pt, 
center title,fonttitle=\textit{\textsmaller{\textsf{family}},title=\detokenize{#2}, 
width=(\linewidth-4mm)/2,height=6cm,colbacktitle={black}, 
watermark zoom=1.0,watermark graphics={#2}]{}\}}

\mygraphics{lichtspiel.jpg}\hfill \mygraphics{Basilica_5.png}
10.5 Border Line Option Keys

The following borderline options are applicable for most skins which use `tikzpicture` as `/tcb/graphical environment`\textsuperscript{P.154}. Therefore, the skin `standard`\textsuperscript{P.228} does not support these border lines, but most other skins, e.g. `enhanced`\textsuperscript{P.230}.

The borderlines are independent from the normal `tcolorbox` rules. They may be used with or without the `/tcb/segmentation engine`\textsuperscript{P.155}.

The borderlines are stackable, i.e. several different border lines can be used on the same `tcolorbox`. They are drawn after the box frame and box interior and before overlays or watermarks.

Technically, the normal `tcolorbox` rules result from a TikZ filling process. The border lines are created by a TikZ drawing process. This can be used to apply different effects.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=Rounded corners,fonttitle=\bfseries,boxsep=5pt,arc=8pt,  
borderline={0.5pt}{0pt}{red},  
borderline={0.5pt}{5pt}{blue,dotted},  
borderline={0.5pt}{-5pt}{green} ]  
This is a tcolorbox.  
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=Sharp corners,fonttitle=\bfseries,boxsep=5pt,arc=8pt,  
sharp corners=downhill,  
borderline={0.5pt}{0pt}{red},  
borderline={0.5pt}{5pt}{blue,dotted},  
borderline={0.5pt}{-5pt}{green} ]  
This is a tcolorbox.  
\end{tcolorbox}

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=Rounded corners,fonttitle=\bfseries,boxsep=5pt,  
arc=8pt,  
borderline={0.5pt}{0pt}{red},  
borderline={0.5pt}{5pt}{blue,dotted},  
borderline={0.5pt}{-5pt}{green} ]  
This is a tcolorbox.  
\end{tcolorbox}
```

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=Sharp corners,fonttitle=\bfseries,boxsep=5pt,arc=8pt,  
sharp corners=downhill,  
borderline={0.5pt}{0pt}{red},  
borderline={0.5pt}{5pt}{blue,dotted},  
borderline={0.5pt}{-5pt}{green} ]  
This is a tcolorbox.  
\end{tcolorbox}
```

\textbf{Rounded corners}

This is a tcolorbox.

\textbf{Sharp corners}

This is a tcolorbox.


My title


/tcb/no borderline (no default, initially set)

Removes all borderlines if set before.

/tcb/show bounding box=(color) (default red, initially unset)

Displays the bounding box borderline of a tcolorbox. Its intended use is debugging and fine tuning. It should not be part of a final document. The optional (color) is the base color for the bounding box borderline.
The following partial borderlines act slightly different from the complete borderlines described before. They ignore rounded corner settings, their length is not modified by their \langle offset \rangle, they ignore skin settings but adapt to breakable boxes.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,\
  borderline north={2pt}{-2pt}{red}]\textbf{This is a tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,\
  borderline south={2pt}{-2pt}{red}]\textbf{This is a tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,\
  borderline east={2pt}{-2pt}{red}]\textbf{This is a tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,\
  borderline west={2pt}{-2pt}{red}]\textbf{This is a tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
N 2014-10-20
\tcb/borderline horizontal={⟨width⟩}{⟨offset⟩}{⟨options⟩}  (no default, initially unset)

Adds a new borderline with the given ⟨width⟩ to the north and south of the \textbf{tcolorbox}. A positive ⟨offset⟩ value moves the borderlines inside the \textbf{tcolorbox} and a negative ⟨offset⟩ value moves them outside without changing the bounding box.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[blanker,top=3mm,bottom=3mm,
  borderline horizontal={2pt}{0pt}{red}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

N 2014-10-20
\tcb/borderline vertical={⟨width⟩}{⟨offset⟩}{⟨options⟩}  (no default, initially unset)

Adds a new borderline with the given ⟨width⟩ to the east and west of the \textbf{tcolorbox}. A positive ⟨offset⟩ value moves the borderlines inside the \textbf{tcolorbox} and a negative ⟨offset⟩ value moves them outside without changing the bounding box.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[blanker,left=3mm,right=3mm,
  borderline vertical={2pt}{0pt}{red}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
My second line.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,colback=yellow!10!white,boxrule=0pt,frame hidden,
  borderline north={1mm}{-2mm}{red},
  borderline south={1mm}{-2mm}{blue},
  borderline west={1mm}{-2mm}{green},
  borderline east={1mm}{-2mm}{yellow}]
\text{\lipsum}[1]
\end{tcolorbox}

10.6 Shadow Option Keys

The following shadow options are applicable for most skins which use \texttt{tikzpicture} as \\
\texttt{/tcb/graphical environment}. Therefore, the skin \texttt{standard} does not support these shadows, but most other skins, e.g. \texttt{enhanced}.

The shadows are stackable, i.e. several different shadows can be used on the same \texttt{tcolorbox}. They are drawn \textit{before} the box frame is drawn.

\texttt{/tcb/no shadow} \hspace{3em} (no default)

Removes all shadows if set before.

10.6.1 Common Shadows and Halos

\texttt{/tcb/drop shadow=(color)} \hspace{3em} (style, default \texttt{black!50!white})

Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. Optionally, the \texttt{(color)} for the shadow can be changed.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\texttt{\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,}
\texttt{colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}}
\begin{Verbatim}
\begin{tcolorbox}[drop shadow]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{Verbatim}
\end{tcolorbox}

Another shadow

\begin{tcolorbox}
\texttt{\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,}
\texttt{colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}}
\begin{Verbatim}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Another shadow,\texttt{drop shadow=blue}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{Verbatim}
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/drop fuzzy shadow=(color)} \hspace{3em} (style, default \texttt{black!50!white})

Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. Optionally, the \texttt{(color)} for the shadow can be changed.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\texttt{\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,}
\texttt{colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}}
\begin{Verbatim}
\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{Verbatim}
\end{tcolorbox}

Another shadow

\begin{tcolorbox}
\texttt{\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,}
\texttt{colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}}
\begin{Verbatim}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Another shadow,\texttt{drop fuzzy shadow=blue}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{Verbatim}
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/drop midday shadow=(color)} \hspace{3em} (style, default \texttt{black!50!white})

Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. Optionally, the \texttt{(color)} for the shadow can be changed.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\texttt{\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,}
\texttt{colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}}
\begin{Verbatim}
\begin{tcolorbox}[drop midday shadow]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{Verbatim}
\end{tcolorbox}

Another shadow

\begin{tcolorbox}
\texttt{\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,}
\texttt{colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}}
\begin{Verbatim}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Another shadow,\texttt{drop midday shadow=blue}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{Verbatim}
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/drop fuzzy midday shadow=$\langle \text{color} \rangle$ (style, default black!50!white)

Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. Optionally, the $\langle \text{color} \rangle$ for the shadow can be changed.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy midday shadow]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Another shadow

This is a tcolorbox.

/tcb/halo=$\langle \text{size} \rangle$ with $\langle \text{color} \rangle$ (style, default 0.9mm with yellow)

Adds a new halo shadow with the given $\langle \text{color} \rangle$ which overlaps the colorbox an all sides by $\langle \text{size} \rangle$.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My own halo,halo]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My own halo

This is a tcolorbox.

/tcb/fuzzy halo=$\langle \text{size} \rangle$ with $\langle \text{color} \rangle$ (style, default 0.9mm with yellow)

Adds a new fuzzy halo shadow with the given $\langle \text{color} \rangle$ which overlaps the colorbox all sides by $\langle \text{size} \rangle$ plus 0.48mm.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My own halo,fuzzy halo]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My own halo

This is a tcolorbox.

For all following shadows, the optionally given ⟨color⟩ for the shadow can be changed equivalent to the preceding examples.

\[\text{/tcb/drop shadow southeast}=(\text{color})\] (style, default black!50!white)
Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. This shadow is identical to /tcb/drop shadow → P.203.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop shadow southeast, enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\[\text{/tcb/drop shadow south}=(\text{color})\] (style, default black!50!white)
Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. This shadow is identical to /tcb/drop midday shadow → P.203.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop shadow south, enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\[\text{/tcb/drop shadow southwest}=(\text{color})\] (style, default black!50!white)
Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop shadow southwest, enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\[\text{/tcb/drop shadow west}=(\text{color})\] (style, default black!50!white)
Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop shadow west, enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\[\text{/tcb/drop shadow northwest}=(\text{color})\] (style, default black!50!white)
Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop shadow northwest, enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\[\text{/tcb/drop shadow north}=(\text{color})\] (style, default black!50!white)
Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop shadow north, enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/drop shadow northeast=(color) (style, default black!50!white)
Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop shadow northeast, enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/drop shadow east=(color) (style, default black!50!white)
Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop shadow east, enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/drop fuzzy shadow southeast=(color) (style, default black!50!white)
Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. This shadow is identical to /tcb/drop fuzzy shadow → P. 203.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow southeast, enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/drop fuzzy shadow south=(color) (style, default black!50!white)
Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. This shadow is identical to /tcb/drop fuzzy midday shadow → P. 204.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow south, enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/drop fuzzy shadow southwest=(color) (style, default black!50!white)
Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow southwest, enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/drop fuzzy shadow west=(color) (style, default black!50!white)
Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow west, enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/drop fuzzy shadow northwest=⟨color⟩ (style, default black!50!white)
Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow northwest, enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black]
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/drop fuzzy shadow north=⟨color⟩ (style, default black!50!white)
Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow north, enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black]
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/drop fuzzy shadow northeast=⟨color⟩ (style, default black!50!white)
Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow northeast, enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black]
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/drop fuzzy shadow east=⟨color⟩ (style, default black!50!white)
Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow east, enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black]
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
10.6.2 Lifted Shadows

\tcb/drop lifted shadow=(color)

Adds a new lifted shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. Optionally, the \textit{color} for the shadow can be changed.

```
\tcbset{enhanced, colback=red!5!white, boxrule=0.4pt, sharp corners, colframe=red!75!black, fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[drop lifted shadow, title=Another shadow, drop lifted shadow=blue]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

\tcb/drop small lifted shadow=(color)

Adds a new small lifted shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. Optionally, the \textit{color} for the shadow can be changed.

```
\tcbset{enhanced, colback=red!5!white, boxrule=0.4pt, sharp corners, colframe=red!75!black, fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[drop small lifted shadow, title=Another shadow, drop small lifted shadow=black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

\tcb/drop large lifted shadow=(color)

Adds a new large lifted shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. Optionally, the \textit{color} for the shadow can be changed.

```
\tcbset{enhanced, colback=red!5!white, boxrule=0.4pt, sharp corners, colframe=red!75!black, fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[drop large lifted shadow, title=Another shadow, large lifted shadow=blue]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```
10.6.3 Generic Shadows

\texttt{/tcb/shadow=\{\langle xshift \rangle\}\{\langle yshift \rangle\}\{\langle offset \rangle\}\{\langle options \rangle\}} (no default)

Adds a new shadow to the stack of shadows. This shadow follows the outline of the \texttt{tcolorbox} but is shifted by \langle xshift \rangle and \langle yshift \rangle. The \langle offset \rangle value is a distance value from the frame outline. A positive \langle offset \rangle value shrinks the shadow and a negative \langle offset \rangle value enlarges the shadow. The shadow is filled along a Ti\kZ path with the given Ti\kZ \langle options \rangle.

The shadows adapt to the rounded corners of the \texttt{tcolorbox}. An shrinked shadow will switch to sharp corners if necessary, an enlarged shadow may become more rounded depending on several factors. But \texttt{/tcb/sharp corners} \footnote{Page 53} have sharp shadows.

Shadows are not considered for the bounding box computation by default. Large shadows may be overlaped by the following content. But, the bounding box can be adapted if necessary.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My own shadow, shadow={2mm}{-1mm}{0mm}{black!50!white}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\par\bigskip
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Another shadow, shadow={-1mm}{-2mm}{0mm}{fill=blue, opacity=0.5}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\par\bigskip
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Double shadow, shadow={-1.5mm}{-1.5mm}{0mm}{fill=blue, opacity=0.25}, shadow={1.5mm}{-1.5mm}{0mm}{fill=red, opacity=0.25}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\par\bigskip
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Far shadow, shadow={5.5mm}{-3.5mm}{2mm}{fill=black, opacity=0.25}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\par\bigskip
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Halo shadow, shadow={0mm}{0mm}{-1.5mm}
\{fill=yellow!75!red,opacity=0.5}\]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}
/tcbox/fuzzy shadow=\{(xshift)\}\{(yshift)\}\{(offset)\}\{(step)\}\{(options)\} (no default)

Adds a new fuzzy shadow to the stack of shadows. Actually, this option adds several shadows which appear like a shadow with a fuzzy border. This fuzzy shadow follows the outline of the tcolorbox but is shifted by \{(xshift)\} and \{(yshift)\}. The \{(offset)\} value is a distance value from the frame outline. A positive \{(offset)\} value shrinks the shadow and a negative \{(offset)\} value enlarges the shadow. The \{(step)\} value describes a shrink offset used for the combination of the partial shadows. The shadow is filled along a TikZ path with the given TikZ \{(options)\} but any opacity value will be ignored.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\tcbset{enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My own shadow,]
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Another shadow,]
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\tcbset{enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Double shadow,]
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\tcbset{enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Far shadow,]
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\tcbset{enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Glow shadow,]
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\tcbset{enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=A multi shadow box,]
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}
If set to `true`, the shadow drawing algorithm tries to do a somewhat smart calculation of the arc for the shadow. The result is pleasing for typical boxes with rounded corners, but gives strange results for circular boxes.

```
\tcbset{enhanced,nobeforeafter,colback=red!5!white,}
   \colframe=red!75!black,width=3cm,square,halign=center,\valign=center}

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop shadow]
Smart shadow arc (arguably better than normal)
\end{tcolorbox}
\hfill
\begin{tcolorbox}[smart shadow arc=false, drop shadow]
Normal shadow arc
\end{tcolorbox}
\hfill
\begin{tcolorbox}[circular arc, drop shadow]
Smart shadow arc (worse than normal)
\end{tcolorbox}
\hfill
\begin{tcolorbox}[circular arc, smart shadow arc=false, drop shadow]
Normal shadow arc
\end{tcolorbox}
```

/\texttt{tcb/lifted shadow}={⟨xshift⟩}{⟨yshift⟩}{⟨bend⟩}{⟨step⟩}{⟨options⟩} (no default)

Adds a new lifted shadow to the stack of shadows. Actually, this option adds several shadows which appear like a shadow with a fuzzy border. This lifted shadow follows the outline of the \texttt{tcolorbox} but is shifted by ⟨xshift⟩ and ⟨yshift⟩ on the lower left corner and by −⟨xshift⟩ and ⟨yshift⟩ on the lower right corner. Additionally, there is a ⟨bend⟩ in the middle. The ⟨{step}⟩ value describes a shrink offset used for the combination of the partial shadows. The shadow is filled along a Ti\texttt{kZ} path with the given Ti\texttt{kZ} ⟨options⟩ but any \texttt{opacity} value will be ignored.

```
\tcbset{enhanced,\colback=red!5!white,}
   \boxrule=0.1pt,\colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My own shadow,}
   \texttt{\lifted shadow}={1mm}{-2mm}{3mm}{0.1mm}{black!50!white}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```
10.6.4 TikZ Shadows

Alternatively to the package shadow options described before, shadows from the «Shadows Library» of TikZ can be used. Such shadows can be added directly to the frame path using `/tcb/frame style`\footnote{\texttt{P.168}}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,\vspace{-5pt}
colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,\vspace{-5pt}
frame style={drop shadow} ]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,height=3cm,\vspace{-5pt}
colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,\vspace{-5pt}
halign=center,valign=center,\vspace{-5pt}
frame style={circular drop shadow} ]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,width=2.5cm,\vspace{-5pt}
square,circular arc,\vspace{-5pt}
halign=center,valign=center,\vspace{-5pt}
colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,\vspace{-5pt}
frame style={circular glow={fill=red}} ]
tcolorbox\vspace{-5pt}
\end{tcolorbox}
10.7 TikZ Picture Option Keys

The following general options are applicable for skins which use tikzpicture as /tcb/graphical environment \[ P.154 \]. Therefore, the skin standard \[ P.228 \] does not support these options, but most other skins, e.g. enhanced \[ P.230 \].

/tcb/tikz={⟨tikz option list⟩} \[ \text{(no default, initially empty)} \]

Adds the given ⟨tikz option list⟩ to the main tikzpicture environment used to draw the color box, see [24]. If this option is applied a second time, the new ⟨tikz option list⟩ is appended to the current option list.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Transparent box, tikz={opacity=0.5,transparency group}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Rotated box, tikz={rotate=30}]
Sold!
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/tikz reset \[ \text{(initially set)} \]

Removes all options given by /tcb/tikz.

/tcb/at begin tikz={⟨tikz code⟩} \[ \text{(no default, initially empty)} \]

The given ⟨tikz code⟩ is executed at the beginning of the tikzpicture environment after the TikZ option execute at begin picture was applied. If this option is applied a second time, the new ⟨tikz code⟩ is appended to the current code.

/tcb/at begin tikz reset \[ \text{(initially set)} \]

Removes all code given by /tcb/at begin tikz.

/tcb/at end tikz={⟨tikz code⟩} \[ \text{(no default, initially empty)} \]

The given ⟨tikz code⟩ is executed at the ending of the tikzpicture environment before the TikZ option execute at end picture was applied. If this option is applied a second time, the new ⟨tikz code⟩ is appended to the current code.

/tcb/at end tikz reset \[ \text{(initially set)} \]

Removes all code given by /tcb/at end tikz.
/tcb/rotate=⟨angle⟩
(no default, initially unset)
Rotates the \tcolorbox by the given \langle angle \rangle. Note that this is a TikZ coordinate transformation i.e. not all graphical elements like shadings will really be rotated.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Rotated box,rotate=30]
This is a \tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/scale=⟨fraction⟩
(no default, initially unset)
Scales the \tcolorbox by the given \langle fraction \rangle. Note that this is a TikZ coordinate transformation i.e. not all graphical elements like line widths will really be scaled.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Scaled box,scale=0.5]
This is a \tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Scaled box,scale=1.25]
This is a \tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/remember
(style, initially unset)
Shortcut for \tikz={remember picture}. This allows one to reference nodes in other TikZ pictures.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,remember,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\textbf{series},title=The four corners of a paper,overlay={\draw[red!50!white,line width=1mm,opacity=0.5,shorten >=3mm] (frame.north west) edge[->] (current page.north west) (frame.north east) edge[->] (current page.north east) (frame.south west) edge[->] (current page.south west) (frame.south east) edge[->] (current page.south east);}]
This is a \tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}
The `frame` node will be remembered by the given `(name)` to be referenced in other TikZ pictures.

```
\begin{mybox}[title=First Box,nobeforeafter,width=\linewidth/4,remember as=one]
This is a test.
\end{mybox}
\hfill
\begin{mybox}[title=Second Box,nobeforeafter,width=\linewidth/4,remember as=two]
This is a test.
\end{mybox}
\hfill
\begin{mybox}[title=Third Box,nobeforeafter,width=\linewidth/4,remember as=three]
This is a test.
\end{mybox}
\hfill
\begin{mybox}[title=Fourth Box,remember as=four]
This is a test.
\end{mybox}
```

```
\begin{tikzpicture}[overlay,remember picture,line width=1mm,draw=red!75!black]
\draw[->] (one.east) to[bend right] node[above] {A} (two.west);
\draw[->] (two.east) to[bend left] node[above] {B} (three.west);
\draw[->] (three.east) to[bend left=90] node[right] {C} (four.east);
\draw[->] (four.west) to[bend left=90] node[left] {D} (one.west);
\end{tikzpicture}
```

10.8 Underlay Option Keys

Underlays are quite similar to overlays described in Section 4.12 on page 79. Underlays are drawn after the frame and interior are drawn and before overlays and the text content is drawn; see Section 9.4 on page 161 for the general drawing scheme.

The differences between underlays and overlays are:

- Underlays are not applicable for the skins standard\textsuperscript{p.\,228} and standard jigsaw\textsuperscript{p.\,229}, whereas overlays are applicable also for these skins. The skin spartan\textsuperscript{p.\,274} supports underlays but no overlays.

\begin{itemize}
  \item If an underlay is used with the standard\textsuperscript{p.\,228} skin, it is silently ignored.
  \item Underlays are stackable, i.e. several different underlays can be used on the same \texttt{tcolorbox}. Overlays are not stackable by default (but with some help of the library \texttt{LIB}\texttt{hooks}).
  \item Boxed titles are implemented with underlays (Section 10.2 on page 175), watermarks are implemented with overlays (Section 10.3 on page 186).
\end{itemize}

\texttt{/tcb/underlay=⟨graphical code⟩} (no default, initially unset)

 Adds \langle graphical code \rangle to the box drawing process. This \langle graphical code \rangle is drawn after the frame and interior and before the text content.

\begin{tcolorbox}[mybox]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}

My box

\begin{tcolorbox}[mybox]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/no\ underlay}\hspace{1em}(style, no default, initially set)

Removes the underlay if set before.
\texttt{tcb/underlay\ broken}=\langle\textit{graphical code}\rangle\quad\text{(no default, initially unset)}

If the box is set to be \texttt{tcb/breakable} → P.400 and is broken actually, then the \langle\textit{graphical code}\rangle is added to the box drawing process. \texttt{tcb/underlay} → P.216 overwrites this key.

\texttt{tcb/underlay\ unbroken}=\langle\textit{graphical code}\rangle\quad\text{(no default, initially unset)}

If the box is set to be \texttt{tcb/breakable} → P.400 but \textit{is not} broken actually or if the box is set to be \texttt{tcb/unbreakable} → P.401, then the \langle\textit{graphical code}\rangle is added to the box drawing process. \texttt{tcb/underlay} → P.216 overwrites this key.

\texttt{tcb/no\ underlay\ unbroken}\quad\text{(style, no default, initially set)}

Removes the unbroken underlay if set before.

\texttt{tcb/underlay\ first}=\langle\textit{graphical code}\rangle\quad\text{(no default, initially unset)}

If the box is set to be \texttt{tcb/breakable} → P.400 and is broken actually, then the \langle\textit{graphical code}\rangle is added to the box drawing process for the \textit{first} part of the break sequence. \texttt{tcb/underlay} → P.216 overwrites this key.

\texttt{tcb/no\ underlay\ first}\quad\text{(style, no default, initially set)}

Removes the first underlay if set before.

\texttt{tcb/underlay\ middle}=\langle\textit{graphical code}\rangle\quad\text{(no default, initially unset)}

If the box is set to be \texttt{tcb/breakable} → P.400 and is broken actually, then the \langle\textit{graphical code}\rangle is added to the box drawing process for the \textit{middle} parts (if any) of the break sequence. \texttt{tcb/underlay} → P.216 overwrites this key.

\texttt{tcb/no\ underlay\ middle}\quad\text{(style, no default, initially set)}

Removes the middle underlay if set before.

\texttt{tcb/underlay\ last}=\langle\textit{graphical code}\rangle\quad\text{(no default, initially unset)}

If the box is set to be \texttt{tcb/breakable} → P.400 and is broken actually, then the \langle\textit{graphical code}\rangle is added to the box drawing process for the \textit{last} part of the break sequence. \texttt{tcb/underlay} → P.216 overwrites this key.

\texttt{tcb/no\ underlay\ last}\quad\text{(style, no default, initially set)}

Removes the last underlay if set before.

\texttt{tcb/underlay\ boxed\ title}=\langle\textit{graphical code}\rangle\quad\text{(no default, initially unset)}

If the box has a \textit{boxed title}, see Section 10.2 on page 175, then the \langle\textit{graphical code}\rangle is added to the box drawing process before the boxed title is drawn.

\texttt{tcb/no\ underlay\ boxed\ title}\quad\text{(style, no default, initially set)}

Removes the boxed title underlay if set before.

\texttt{tcb/underlay\ unbroken\ and\ first}=\langle\textit{graphical code}\rangle\quad\text{(no default, initially unset)}

This is an abbreviation for setting \texttt{tcb/underlay\ unbroken} and \texttt{tcb/underlay\ first} together. \texttt{tcb/underlay} → P.216 overwrites this key.

\texttt{tcb/underlay\ middle\ and\ last}=\langle\textit{graphical code}\rangle\quad\text{(no default, initially unset)}

This is an abbreviation for setting \texttt{tcb/underlay\ middle} and \texttt{tcb/underlay\ last} together. \texttt{tcb/underlay} → P.216 overwrites this key.

\texttt{tcb/underlay\ unbroken\ and\ last}=\langle\textit{graphical code}\rangle\quad\text{(no default, initially unset)}

This is an abbreviation for setting \texttt{tcb/underlay\ unbroken} and \texttt{tcb/underlay\ last} together. \texttt{tcb/underlay} → P.216 overwrites this key.

\texttt{tcb/underlay\ first\ and\ middle}=\langle\textit{graphical code}\rangle\quad\text{(no default, initially unset)}

This is an abbreviation for setting \texttt{tcb/underlay\ first} and \texttt{tcb/underlay\ middle} together. \texttt{tcb/underlay} → P.216 overwrites this key.
10.9 Finish Option Keys

Finishes are quite similar to underlays described in Section 10.8 on page 216 and overlays described in Section 4.12 on page 79. Finishes are drawn after the text content is drawn; see Section 9.4 on page 161 for the general drawing scheme. Therefore, a finish will reduce the readability of the text content.

Finishes are intended for special effects like highlights or glosses or text over text.

- Finishes are only applicable for the skins enhanced → P. 230, empty → P. 264, freelance → P. 277, bicolor → P. 242, beamer → P. 257, and widget → P. 261.

  If a finish is used with the standard → P. 228 skin, it is silently ignored.

- Finishes are stackable, i.e. several different finishes can be used on the same tcolorbox.

\[
\text{/tcb/finish=⟨graphical code⟩} \quad \text{(no default, initially unset)}
\]

Adds ⟨graphical code⟩ to the box drawing process. This ⟨graphical code⟩ is drawn after the text content.

\begin{verbatim}
\newtcolorbox{mybox}[1][{enhanced,colback=red!5!white, colbacktitle=red!85!black!50!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, finish={\begin{tcbclipframe}
    \path[bottom color=black,top color=black!50!white,opacity=0.1]
    (frame.south west) -- (frame.south east) -- (frame.north east) -- cycle;
    \path[top color=white,bottom color=black!50!white,opacity=0.1]
    (frame.south west) -- (frame.north east) -- (frame.north west) -- cycle;
    \end{tcbclipframe}},#1}
\begin{mybox}[title=My box]
\lipsum[2]
\end{mybox}
\end{verbatim}

My box


\begin{verbatim}
\newtcolorbox{mybox}[1][{enhanced,colback=red!5!white, colbacktitle=red!85!black!50!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, finish={\node[draw,fill=white,fill opacity=0.85,inner sep=5mm, rounded corners] at (frame.center) {\Huge\bfseries Finish!};},#1}
\begin{mybox}[title=My box]
\lipsum[2]
\end{mybox}
\end{verbatim}

My box

/tcb/no finish (style, no default, initially set)
Removes the finish if set before.

/tcb/finish broken=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable^P.400 and is broken actually, then the (graphical code) is added to the box drawing process. /tcb/finish^P.218 overwrites this key.

/tcb/finish unbroken=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable^P.400 but is not broken actually or if the box is set to be /tcb/unbreakable^P.401, then the (graphical code) is added to the box drawing process. /tcb/finish^P.218 overwrites this key.

/tcb/no finish unbroken (style, no default, initially set)
Removes the unbroken finish if set before.

/tcb/finish first=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable^P.400 and is broken actually, then the (graphical code) is added to the box drawing process for the first part of the break sequence. /tcb/finish^P.218 overwrites this key.

/tcb/no finish first (style, no default, initially set)
Removes the first finish if set before.

/tcb/finish middle=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable^P.400 and is broken actually, then the (graphical code) is added to the box drawing process for the middle parts (if any) of the break sequence. /tcb/finish^P.218 overwrites this key.

/tcb/no finish middle (style, no default, initially set)
Removes the middle finish if set before.

/tcb/finish last=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable^P.400 and is broken actually, then the (graphical code) is added to the box drawing process for the last part of the break sequence. /tcb/finish^P.218 overwrites this key.

/tcb/no finish last (style, no default, initially set)
Removes the last finish if set before.

/tcb/finish unbroken and first=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

This is an abbreviation for setting /tcb/finish unbroken and /tcb/finish first together. /tcb/finish^P.218 overwrites this key.

/tcb/finish middle and last=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

This is an abbreviation for setting /tcb/finish middle and /tcb/finish last together. /tcb/finish^P.218 overwrites this key.

/tcb/finish unbroken and last=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

This is an abbreviation for setting /tcb/finish unbroken and /tcb/finish last together. /tcb/finish^P.218 overwrites this key.

/tcb/finish first and middle=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

This is an abbreviation for setting /tcb/finish first and /tcb/finish middle together. /tcb/finish^P.218 overwrites this key.
10.10 Hyper Option Keys

All options of this section need the package \texttt{hyperref} \cite{hyperref} to be loaded separately. All these options are implemented as \texttt{/tcb/finish} \cite{tcb/finish} and can be disabled by \texttt{/tcb/no finish} \cite{tcb/no finish}.

\begin{itemize}
\item If the package \texttt{hyperref} \cite{hyperref} is not loaded or if the standard \cite{standard} skin is used, all hyper option are silently ignored.
\end{itemize}

\texttt{/tcb/hyperref} = \langle \texttt{marker} \rangle \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially unset)}

The whole \texttt{frame} of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is make an active hyperlink for a \langle \texttt{marker} \rangle which was given by \texttt{/label} or \texttt{/tcb/label} \cite{tcb/label} or \texttt{/tcb/phantomlabel} \cite{tcb/phantomlabel}. Such, the \texttt{tcolorbox} is made a clickable button (depending on the previewer).

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{/tcb/hyperlink} = \langle \texttt{marker} \rangle \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially unset)}
\end{itemize}

The whole \texttt{frame} of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is make an active hyperlink for a \langle \texttt{marker} \rangle which was given by \texttt{\hyperlink} or \texttt{/tcb/hypertarget} \cite{tcb/hypertarget}. Such, the \texttt{tcolorbox} is made a clickable button (depending on the previewer).
Identical to \texttt{/tcb/hyperlink} \cite{P.220}, but only the \textit{interior} of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is made a hyperlink (without frame and title).

Identical to \texttt{/tcb/hyperlink} \cite{P.220}, but only the \textit{title} of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is made a hyperlink.

Identical to \texttt{/tcb/hyperlink} \cite{P.220}, but only the given Ti\textsc{k}Z \texttt{node} is made a hyperlink. This \texttt{node} may be \texttt{frame}, \texttt{interior}, \texttt{title}, or any other named node used for drawing the \texttt{tcolorbox}. The \texttt{node} may be defined inside \texttt{/tcb/underlay} \cite{P.216}, \texttt{/tcb/overlay} \cite{P.79} or \texttt{/tcb/finish} \cite{P.218}. If the later is used, define the node \textit{before} \texttt{/tcb/hyperlink node} is applied.

The whole \textit{frame} of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is make an active hyperlink for an \texttt{url} in the same manner as using \texttt{\href} or \texttt{\url}. Such, the \texttt{tcolorbox} is made a clickable button (depending on the previewer).

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{Verbatim}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,colback=red!50,
hyperurl=https://www.ctan.org/pkg/tcolorbox]
View CTAN with a browser.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{Verbatim}
\end{tcolorbox}

Identical to \texttt{/tcb/hyperurl} \cite{P.220}, but only the \textit{interior} of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is made a hyperlink (without frame and title).

Identical to \texttt{/tcb/hyperurl} \cite{P.220}, but only the \textit{title} of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is made a hyperlink.

Identical to \texttt{/tcb/hyperurl} \cite{P.220}, but only the given Ti\textsc{k}Z \texttt{node} is made a hyperlink. This \texttt{node} may be \texttt{frame}, \texttt{interior}, \texttt{title}, or any other named node used for drawing the \texttt{tcolorbox}. The \texttt{node} may be defined inside \texttt{/tcb/underlay} \cite{P.216}, \texttt{/tcb/overlay} \cite{P.79} or \texttt{/tcb/finish} \cite{P.218}. If the later is used, define the node \textit{before} \texttt{/tcb/hyperurl node} is applied.

Identical to \texttt{/tcb/hyperurl} \cite{P.220}, but additional \texttt{hyperref} \cite{P.17} \texttt{options} are applied.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{Verbatim}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,colback=green!50, hyperurl*={page=3,pdfnewwindow=true}
\{tcolorbox-example.pdf}\%
{tcolorbox=example.pdf}]
Open example file on Page~3.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{Verbatim}
\end{tcolorbox}

Identical to \texttt{/tcb/hyperurl} \cite{P.220}, but additional \texttt{hyperref} \cite{P.17} \texttt{options} are applied.
10.11 Jigsaw Skin Variants

As described in Section 9.1 on page 153, a \texttt{tcolorbox} is drawn by up to four \textit{engines}. Typically, the \textit{frame} engine fills the complete box area with color and the other engines fill certain areas with other colors. Finally, only the area which you see as \textit{frame} of the box will display the frame color. For most applications, this is a good approach.

For certain boxes, a more delicate procedure is needed. E.g., if the box should be translucent, an already painted area cannot be made unpainted. Therefore, more elaborate frame engines saw holes into the frame where the interior area and optionally the title area will be painted. The resulting skins are called \textit{jigsaw} skins. For standard \footnote{P.228}, enhanced \footnote{P.230}, and bicolor \footnote{P.242}, there are variants called standard jigsaw \footnote{P.229}, enhanced jigsaw \footnote{P.236}, and bicolor jigsaw \footnote{P.249}.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path [use as bounding box] (0,0.8) rectangle +(0.1,0.1);
\shadedraw [shading=ball] (0,0) circle (1cm);
\shadedraw [ball color=red] (3,-2.2) circle (1cm);
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=A normal box]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=A translucent jigsaw box, enhanced jigsaw,opacityback=0.35]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}
A normal box with hidden interior and title
This is a tcolorbox.

A jigsaw box with hidden interior and title
This is a tcolorbox.

\newtcolorbox{mybox}{skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw,leftrule=5mm,rightrule=5mm,
boxsep=0mm,top=0mm,bottom=0mm,
frame style={top color=blue,bottom color=red},interior hidden}

\begin{mybox}
\lipsum[2]
\end{mybox}

10.12 Draft Mode

To reduce the compilation time while drafting a document, the draft mode can be applied. Basically, it changes all skins to spartan \(^{p.274}\) and sets the /tcb/fit algorithm \(^{p.460}\) to squeeze. Especially, when fuzzy shadows are used, the speedup will be considerable high.

It is strongly recommended that the draft mode is not used for the final document. Use spartan \(^{p.274}\) directly, if you want to stay with it. The draft mode implementation may change in future.

Normally, switching to the draft mode should not alter the geometry of your document. Since overlays are deactivated, any code placed there (e.g. counter changes) is not executed anymore! Also, /tcb/remember as \(^{p.215}\) will not have any effect. You may exclude critical code with \texttt{tcbinterruptdraftmode / tcbcontinuedraftmode} from converting to draft mode.

Any following \texttt{tcolorbox} code is put into draft mode. All skin settings are overruled with spartan \(^{p.274}\). Overlays, watermarks, shadows, borderlines, and rounded corners are deactivated for all \texttt{tcolorbox} layers.

The draft mode is deactivated for the following code.

If the compilation is in draft mode, the draft mode is deactivated until a following \texttt{tcbcontinuedraftmode} is detected.

If the compilation is not in draft mode, nothing happens and a following \texttt{tcbcontinuedraftmode} will not start the draft mode.

The pair \texttt{tcbinterruptdraftmode} and \texttt{tcbcontinuedraftmode} cannot be used nested.

Continues the draft mode which was suspended by a preceding \texttt{tcbinterruptdraftmode}. Nothing happens, if there was no draft mode before \texttt{tcbinterruptdraftmode}.

Code, which is place between \texttt{tcbinterruptdraftmode} and \texttt{tcbcontinuedraftmode} is shielded from draft mode.
If set to \texttt{true}, the \textit{draft mode} is started. If set to \texttt{false}, the \textit{draft mode} is stopped.
11 Library \texttt{skins} - Catalog of Skins

The \texttt{skins} library provides a catalog of skins to choose from which is documented in the following. The \texttt{skins} library has to be loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbsublibrary{skins}
\end{verbatim}

See Section 10 on page 168 for the documentation of all other options of the \texttt{skins} library.

- In principle, a skin is applied by choosing a value for \texttt{/tcb/skin} \textsuperscript{P.153}, e.g. \texttt{enhanced}. Since the parts of a breakable box should look different, there are individual skins for breakable boxes, also see Section 19.8 on page 414. Skins for breakable boxes derived from a base skin are called a skin family in the following.

- Instead of setting values for \texttt{/tcb/skin} \textsuperscript{P.153}, equally named options can be used which are shortcuts and which sometimes also change some geometry or style settings. These are the intended options for normal users. Typically, one of the following options is sufficient to select a skin:

  - \texttt{/tcb/standard} \textsuperscript{P.228}
  - \texttt{/tcb/standard jigsaw} \textsuperscript{P.229}
  - \texttt{/tcb/enhanced} \textsuperscript{P.230}
  - \texttt{/tcb/enhanced jigsaw} \textsuperscript{P.236}
  - \texttt{/tcb/enhanced standard} \textsuperscript{P.232}
  - \texttt{/tcb/enhanced standard jigsaw} \textsuperscript{P.236}
  - \texttt{/tcb/bicolor} \textsuperscript{P.243}
  - \texttt{/tcb/tile} \textsuperscript{P.253}
  - \texttt{/tcb/beamer} \textsuperscript{P.257}
  - \texttt{/tcb/widget} \textsuperscript{P.261}
  - \texttt{/tcb/empty} \textsuperscript{P.264}
  - \texttt{/tcb/spartan} \textsuperscript{P.274}
  - \texttt{/tcb/draft} \textsuperscript{P.275}

Additionally, there are some special applications:

  - \texttt{/tcb/marker} \textsuperscript{P.238}
  - \texttt{/tcb/blank} \textsuperscript{P.232}
  - \texttt{/tcb/blanker} \textsuperscript{P.265}
  - \texttt{/tcb/blankest} \textsuperscript{P.266}
The auxiliary macro \texttt{\string皮肤ExampleSet} is used for the following examples to display skin applications. Note that \texttt{\string皮肤ExampleSet} is not part of the package, but is defined just for this documentation.

\NewDocumentCommand{\string皮肤ExampleSet}{m}{%
\begin{tcbbraster}[raster equal height,raster columns=3,
colback=LightGreen,colframe=DarkGreen,colbacktitle=LimeGreen!75!DarkGreen,#1,
left=1mm,right=1mm,top=1mm,bottom=1mm,middle=1mm,
sidebyside gap=4mm]
\begin{tcolorbox}
This is my content.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}
This is my content.
\tcbblower
More content.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[sidebyside]
My content.
\tcbblower
More content.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=My title]
This is my content.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=My title]
This is my content.
\tcbblower
More content.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=My title,sidebyside]
My content.
\tcbblower
More content.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=My title,sidebyside]
My content.
\tcbblower
More content.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbbraster}
11.1 Skin Family “standard”

Note that the option keys `/tcb/frame style` → P.168, `/tcb/interior style` → P.169, `/tcb/segmentation style` → P.171, and `/tcb/title style` → P.171 are not applicable to the standard skin. Also, watermarks (see Subsection 10.3) are not usable with the standard skin.

`/tcb/skin=standard` (skin)

This is the standard skin from the core package. All drawing engines are set to type `standard`. The drawing is based on `pgf` commands and does not need the `tikz` package.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environment and engines for the skin “standard”</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/graphical environment</code> → P.154: <code>pgfpicture</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/frame engine</code> → P.154: <code>standard</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/interior titled engine</code> → P.154: <code>standard</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/interior engine</code> → P.155: <code>standard</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/segmentation engine</code> → P.155: <code>standard</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/title engine</code> → P.155: <code>standard</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

`/tcb/standard` (style, no value)

This is an abbreviation for setting `skin=standard`.

\skinExampleSet{standard}

This is my content. More content.
This is my content. More content.
My title This is my content. More content.
My title This is my content. More content.
My title This is my content. More content.
This is the standard jigsaw skin from the core package. It differs from the skin `standard` by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 222.

Environment and engines for the skin “standard jigsaw”

- `/tcb/graphical environment`\(^{\text{P.154}}\): `pgfpicture`
- `/tcb/frame engine`\(^{\text{P.154}}\): `standardjigsaw`
- `/tcb/interior titled engine`\(^{\text{P.154}}\): `standard`
- `/tcb/interior engine`\(^{\text{P.155}}\): `standard`
- `/tcb/segmentation engine`\(^{\text{P.155}}\): `standard`
- `/tcb/title engine`\(^{\text{P.155}}\): `standard`

This is an abbreviation for setting `skin=standard jigsaw`.

```latex
\skinExampleSet{standard jigsaw,
    opacityframe=0.5,opacityback=0.5,opacitybacktitle=0.5,
}
```

This is my content. More content.

My title

This is my content. More content.

My title

This is my content. More content.
11.2 Skin Family “enhanced”

If you like the standard appearance of a \texttt{tcolorbox} but you want to have some “enhanced” features, the \texttt{enhanced} skin is what you are looking for.

\texttt{/tcb/skin=enhanced}\ (skin)

This skin translates the drawing commands of the core package into \texttt{tikz} path commands. Therefore, it allows all \texttt{tikz} high level options for these paths and has more flexibility compared to the \texttt{standard} skin. You pay for this with some prolonged compilation time. The \texttt{tikz} path options can be given with the option keys \texttt{/tcb/frame style} - P.168, \texttt{/tcb/interior style} - P.169, \texttt{/tcb/segmentation style} - P.171, and \texttt{/tcb/title style} - P.171.

Environment and engines for the skin “enhanced”

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{/tcb/graphical environment}
\item \texttt{/tcb/frame engine}
\item \texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine}
\item \texttt{/tcb/interior engine}
\item \texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine}
\item \texttt{/tcb/title engine}
\end{itemize}

\texttt{/tcb/enhanced}\ (style, no value)

This is an abbreviation for setting \texttt{skin=enhanced}.

\begin{tcbexample}[enhanced] \begin{tcbitemize}
\item My title
\item This is my content.
\item \hspace{1.5cm} More content.
\end{tcbitemize} \end{tcbexample}
Nice box in rainbow colors
With the "enhanced" skin, it is quite easy to produce fancy looking effects.
Note that this is still a tcolorbox.

A listing box with shadow and some specials
Of course, skins can be used for listings also.
\begin{equation}
\int_{1}^{2} \frac{1}{x} \, dx = \ln(2).
\end{equation}
For unbreakable boxes, this is identical to using \texttt{/tcb/enhanced} \textsuperscript{P.230}. But, for breakable boxes, the \textit{break sequence} is identical to the \texttt{standard} \textsuperscript{P.228} skin, see Section 19.8 from page 414.

This style relies on the skin \texttt{enhanced} \textsuperscript{P.230}. All drawing operations are hidden and all margins are set to 0pt. See \texttt{/tcb/blanker} \textsuperscript{P.265} for switching off the drawing engines.

\begin{tcolorbox}[blank,watermark text=A blank box]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}

Sometimes, a line is only a line. With \texttt{\textbackslash tcb\texttt{\textbackslash blower}}\textsuperscript{P.12} you separate the box content into two functional units. \texttt{\textbackslash tcb\texttt{\textbackslash line}} draws only a line which looks like the segmentation line between upper and lower part. Furthermore, you can use \texttt{\textbackslash tcb\texttt{\textbackslash line}} more than just once. \texttt{\textbackslash tcb\texttt{\textbackslash line}} always uses the path drawing engine. Therefore, the \texttt{\textbackslash tcb\texttt{\textbackslash segmentation style}}\textsuperscript{P.171} can be applied.

\begin{tcolorbox}[colupper=red!50!black,collower=green!50!black]
\lipsum[1]
\texttt{\textbackslash tcb\texttt{\textbackslash line}}
\lipsum[2]
\texttt{\textbackslash tcb\texttt{\textbackslash blower}}
\lipsum[3]
\texttt{\textbackslash tcb\texttt{\textbackslash line}}
\lipsum[4]
\end{tcolorbox}


\texttt{\textbackslash tcb\texttt{\textbackslash line}*}

Equivalent to \texttt{\textbackslash tcb\texttt{\textbackslash line}}, but in a breakable box, \texttt{\textbackslash tcb\texttt{\textbackslash line}*} is removed if at a page/box break. Also, it is removed at the end of a box.
This is a flavor of enhanced\textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.230}} which is used as a first part in a break sequence for enhanced\textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.230}}. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

Environment and engines for the skin “enhancedfirst”

\begin{itemize}
  \item [/tcb/graphical environment\textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.154}}: tikzpicture
  \item [/tcb/frame engine\textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.154}}: pathfirst
  \item [/tcb/interior titled engine\textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.154}}: pathfirst
  \item [/tcb/interior engine\textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.155}}: pathfirst
  \item [/tcb/segmentation engine\textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.155}}: path
  \item [/tcb/title engine\textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.155}}: pathfirst
\end{itemize}

\begin{tcbexample}[\texttt{skin=enhancedfirst}]
This is my content.  
This is my content.  
My content.  
My content.  
More content.  
More content.  

My title  
This is my content.  
This is my content.  
My content.  
My content.  
More content.  
More content.
\end{tcbexample}

This is a flavor of enhanced\textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.230}} which is used as a middle part in a break sequence for enhanced\textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.230}}. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

Environment and engines for the skin “enhancedmiddle”

\begin{itemize}
  \item [/tcb/graphical environment\textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.154}}: tikzpicture
  \item [/tcb/frame engine\textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.154}}: pathmiddle
  \item [/tcb/interior titled engine\textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.154}}: pathmiddle
  \item [/tcb/interior engine\textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.155}}: pathmiddle
  \item [/tcb/segmentation engine\textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.155}}: path
  \item [/tcb/title engine\textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.155}}: pathmiddle
\end{itemize}

\begin{tcbexample}[\texttt{skin=enhancedmiddle}]
This is my content.  
This is my content.  
My content.  
My content.  
More content.  
More content.  

My title  
This is my content.  
This is my content.  
My content.  
My content.  
More content.  
More content.
\end{tcbexample}
This is a flavor of enhanced which is used as a last part in a break sequence for enhanced. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

Environment and engines for the skin “enhancedlast”

/tcb/graphical environment: tikzpicture
/tcb/frame engine: pathlast
/tcb/interior titled engine: pathlast
/tcb/interior engine: pathlast
/tcb/segmentation engine: path
/tcb/title engine: pathlast

\skinExampleSet{skin=enhancedlast}
This is the jigsaw variant of skin enhanced \(^{P.230}\). It differs by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 222.

### Environment and engines for the skin “enhanced jigsaw”

- /tcb/graphical environment \(^{P.154}\): tikzpicture
- /tcb/frame engine \(^{P.154}\): pathjigsaw
- /tcb/interior titled engine \(^{P.154}\): path
- /tcb/interior engine \(^{P.155}\): path
- /tcb/segmentation engine \(^{P.155}\): path
- /tcb/title engine \(^{P.155}\): path

This is an abbreviation for setting skin=enhanced jigsaw.

```latex
\skinExampleSet{enhanced jigsaw, 
  opacityframe=0.5,opacityback=0.5,opacitybacktitle=0.5, 
}
```

For unbreakable boxes, this is identical to using /tcb/enhanced jigsaw. But, for breakable boxes, the break sequence is identical to the standard jigsaw \(^{P.229}\) skin, see Section 19.8 from page 414.
This is the jigsaw variant of skin `enhancedfirst`\textsuperscript{P.234}. It differs by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 222.

### Environment and engines for the skin “enhancedfirst jigsaw”

- `/tcb/graphical environment`\textsuperscript{P.154}: `tikzpicture`
- `/tcb/frame engine`\textsuperscript{P.154}: `pathfirstjigsaw`
- `/tcb/interior titled engine`\textsuperscript{P.154}: `pathfirst`
- `/tcb/interior engine`\textsuperscript{P.155}: `pathfirst`
- `/tcb/segmentation engine`\textsuperscript{P.155}: `path`
- `/tcb/title engine`\textsuperscript{P.155}: `pathfirst`

```latex
\skinExampleSet{skin=enhancedfirst jigsaw, opacityframe=0.5,opacityback=0.5,opacitybacktitle=0.5,}
```

This is my content. This is my content. My content. More content.

My title

This is my content. This is my content. My content. More content.

My title

This is my content. This is my content. My content. More content.

My title

More content.
This is the jigsaw variant of skin enhancedmiddle\textsuperscript{P.234}. It differs by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 222.

Environment and engines for the skin “enhancedmiddle jigsaw”

\begin{itemize}
\item /tcb/graphical environment\textsuperscript{P.154}: tikzpicture
\item /tcb/frame engine\textsuperscript{P.154}: pathmiddlejigsaw
\item /tcb/interior titled engine\textsuperscript{P.154}: pathmiddle
\item /tcb/interior engine\textsuperscript{P.155}: pathmiddle
\item /tcb/segmentation engine\textsuperscript{P.155}: path
\item /tcb/title engine\textsuperscript{P.155}: pathmiddle
\end{itemize}

This styles relies on the skin enhancedmiddle jigsaw. It is intended to be used as an optical marker like a highlighter pen.

\begin{tcolorbox}[marker]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}

This example demonstrates the creation of several text marker environments based on \texttt{enhancedmiddle} \cite{p.234}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[textmarker/.style={
  skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw, breakable, parbox=false, boxrule=0mm, leftrule=5mm, rightrule=5mm, boxsep=0mm, arc=0mm, left=3mm, right=3mm, top=1mm, bottom=1mm, toptitle=1mm, bottomtitle=1mm, oversize}]
\begin{yellow}
\lipsum[1-3]
\end{yellow}
\begin{orange}
\lipsum[4]
\end{orange}
\begin{red}
\lipsum[5]
\end{red}
\begin{green}
\lipsum[6]
\end{green}
\begin{blue}
\lipsum[7]
\end{blue}
\begin{rainbow}
\lipsum[8]
\end{rainbow}
\end{tcolorbox}


Nulla malesuada porttitor diam. Donec felis erat, congue non, volutpat at, tincidunt tristique,


This is the jigsaw variant of skin `enhancedlast`\textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.235}}. It differs by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 222.

Environment and engines for the skin “`enhancedlast`”

\begin{itemize}
    \item `/tcb/graphical environment`\textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.154}}: tikzpicture
    \item `/tcb/frame engine`\textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.154}}: pathlastjigsaw
    \item `/tcb/interior titled engine`\textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.154}}: pathlast
    \item `/tcb/interior engine`\textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.155}}: pathlast
    \item `/tcb/segmentation engine`\textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.155}}: path
    \item `/tcb/title engine`\textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.155}}: pathlast
\end{itemize}
11.3 Skin Family “bicolor”

This skin is quite similar to the standard \textsuperscript{P.228} and enhanced \textsuperscript{P.230} skin. But instead of a segmentation line, the optional lower part of the box is filled with a different color or drawn with a different style.

Environment and engines for the skin “bicolor”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>/tcb/graphical environment</th>
<th>\texttt{tikzpicture}</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/frame engine</td>
<td>\texttt{path}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior titled engine</td>
<td>\texttt{special}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior engine</td>
<td>\texttt{special}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/segmentation engine</td>
<td>\texttt{special}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/title engine</td>
<td>\texttt{path}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The most basic usage of this skin is to set the background color of the lower part by \texttt{/tcb/colbacklower} \textsuperscript{P.244} and all other options like for the standard \textsuperscript{P.228} skin.

\begin{tcolorbox}[skin=bicolor,title=The title,\protect\vspace{0pt}colframe=FireBrick!75!black,colback=Salmon!50!white,colbacklower=Salmon] \vspace{0pt} The upper part. \protect\vspace{0pt} \texttt{tcblower} \vspace{0pt} The lower part. \end{tcolorbox}

- The more advanced usage of this skin is to apply the \texttt{/tcb/frame style} \textsuperscript{P.168} and the \texttt{/tcb/interior style} \textsuperscript{P.169} like for the enhanced \textsuperscript{P.230} skin. Also, the \texttt{/tcb/segmentation style} \textsuperscript{P.171} can be used, but it is applied to the whole lower part.

\begin{tcolorbox}[skin=bicolor,title=The title,\protect\vspace{0pt}frame style={top color=FireBrick,\protect\vspace{0pt}bottom color=FireBrick!15!white\protect\vspace{0pt}draw=black},\protect\vspace{0pt}interior style={left color=Salmon\protect\vspace{0pt}right color=Salmon!50\protect\vspace{0pt}white},\protect\vspace{0pt}segmentation style={right color=Salmon\protect\vspace{0pt}left color=Salmon!50\protect\vspace{0pt}white}] \vspace{0pt} The upper part. \protect\vspace{0pt} \texttt{tcblower} \vspace{0pt} The lower part. \end{tcolorbox}
This is an abbreviation for setting \texttt{skin=bicolor}.

\begin{verbatim}
\skinExampleSet{bicolor, colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen, }
\end{verbatim}
The following options `/tcb/colbacklower` and `/tcb/opacitybacklower` are executed before `/tcb/segmentation style` \textsuperscript{P.171}, i.e. `/tcb/segmentation style` \textsuperscript{P.171} overrules them.

\begin{tcblisting}{title={Snapshot of the staging area},
gitexample={The option `-a` automatically stages all tracked and modified files before the commit.\par
This can be combined with the message option `-m` as seen in the third line.}}
\begin{verbatim}
git commit
 git commit -a
 git commit -am 'changes to my example'
\end{verbatim}
\end{tcblisting}

The option `-a` automatically stages all tracked and modified files before the commit. This can be combined with the message option `-m` as seen in the third line.

\begin{tcolorbox}[bicolor, 
frame style={preaction={fill=blue!50!black},
    pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=blue!50!gray},
fonttitle=\bfseries, overlaplower=0mm,
colback=blue!10, colbacklower=white, opacitybacklower=0.65,
title={Example for a semilucent lower part}]
This is the upper part.
\end{tcolorbox}

And that is the lower part.
The backgrounds of the lower parts for the skin families “bicolor”, “tile”, and “beamer” are drawn differently than the backgrounds of the upper parts. If the distance between these backgrounds of upper and lower parts is 0pt, some previewers show the frame color as thin line between upper and lower part. To avoid this glitch, the lower part is drawn with an overlap of \langle length \rangle over the upper part.

This value can be adapted for special applications. For example, semilucent lower parts better use 0pt, see \texttt{/tcb/opacitybacklower} \texttt{\textasciitilde P.244}. Also see \texttt{/tcboverlaplower} for using a larger value.

\texttt{\textbackslash tcboverlaplower}

Macro which contains the length value set by \texttt{/tcb/overlaplower}. May be used for fine positioning at the segmentation between upper and lower part and should be seen read-only.
This is a flavor of `bicolor` which is used as a first part in a break sequence for `bicolor`. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

**Environment and engines for the skin “bicolorfirst”**

- `/tcb/graphical environment`: `tikzpicture`
- `/tcb/frame engine`: `pathfirst`
- `/tcb/interior titled engine`: `special`
- `/tcb/interior engine`: `special`
- `/tcb/segmentation engine`: `special`
- `/tcb/title engine`: `pathfirst`

\skinExampleSet{skin=bicolorfirst, colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen, }
This is a flavor of \texttt{bicolor}$^\text{P.242}$ which is used as a \textit{middle} part in a break sequence for \texttt{bicolor}$^\text{P.242}$. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
\textbf{Environment and engines for the skin “bicolormiddle”} & \\
\hline
/tcb/graphical environment$^\text{P.154}$ & \texttt{tikzpicture} \\
/tcb/frame engine$^\text{P.154}$ & \texttt{pathmiddle} \\
/tcb/interior titled engine$^\text{P.154}$ & \texttt{special} \\
/tcb/interior engine$^\text{P.155}$ & \texttt{special} \\
/tcb/segmentation engine$^\text{P.155}$ & \texttt{special} \\
/tcb/title engine$^\text{P.155}$ & \texttt{pathmiddle} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}

\begin{verbatim}
\skillExampleSet{skin=bicolormiddle, colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen, }
\end{verbatim}

This is my content.

This is my content.

My content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

This is my content.

My title

More content.

My content.

More content.
This is a flavor of \textit{bicolor}$_{\text{P.242}}$ which is used as a \textit{last} part in a break sequence for \textit{bicolor}$_{\text{P.242}}$. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

### Environment and engines for the skin “bicolor\textsubscript{last}”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environment/Engine</th>
<th>Engine/Engine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/tcb\textbackslash graphical environment\textsuperscript{P.154}</td>
<td>\texttt{tikzpicture}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb\textbackslash frame engine\textsuperscript{P.154}</td>
<td>\texttt{pathlast}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb\textbackslash interior titled engine\textsuperscript{P.154}</td>
<td>\texttt{special}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb\textbackslash interior engine\textsuperscript{P.155}</td>
<td>\texttt{special}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb\textbackslash segmentation engine\textsuperscript{P.155}</td>
<td>\texttt{special}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb\textbackslash title engine\textsuperscript{P.155}</td>
<td>\texttt{pathlast}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```latex
\skinExampleSet{skin=bicolorlast,  
colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen,  
}
```

This is my content.

This is my content.

More content.

My content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

This is my content.

More content.

My content.

More content.
This is the jigsaw variant of skin `bicolor`\(^{P.242}\). It differs by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 222.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environment and engines for the skin “bicolor jigsaw”</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/graphical environment (\rightarrow) P.154: tikzpicture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/frame engine (\rightarrow) P.154: pathjigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior titled engine (\rightarrow) P.154: special</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior engine (\rightarrow) P.155: special</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/segmentation engine (\rightarrow) P.155: special</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/title engine (\rightarrow) P.155: path</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This is an abbreviation for setting `skin=enhanced_jigsaw`.

\(\texttt{\verb|\skinExampleSet|}(\texttt{biclor_jigsaw},
\texttt{colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen},
\texttt{opacityframe=0.5,opacityback=0.5,opacitybacktitle=0.5,}
\texttt{opacitybacklower=0.5},
\texttt{)}

This is my content.
More content.
My content.  More content.

My title
This is my content.
This is my content.
My content.  More content.

My title
This is my content.
More content.

My title
This is my content.
My content.  More content.

My title
This is my content.
More content.

My title
This is my content.
My content.  More content.

My title
This is my content.
More content.
This is the jigsaw variant of skin bicolorfirst\textsuperscript{P.246}. It differs by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 222.

Environment and engines for the skin “bicolorfirst jigsaw”

\begin{tabular}{|l|l|}
\hline
/tcb/graphical environment\textsuperscript{P.154}: & tikzpicture \\
/tcb/frame engine\textsuperscript{P.154}: & pathfirstjigsaw \\
/tcb/interior titled engine\textsuperscript{P.154}: & special \\
/tcb/interior engine\textsuperscript{P.155}: & special \\
/tcb/segmentation engine\textsuperscript{P.155}: & special \\
/tcb/title engine\textsuperscript{P.155}: & pathfirst \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
This is the jigsaw variant of skin \texttt{bicolormiddle}\texttt{jigsaw}. It differs by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 222.

Environment and engines for the skin “bicolormiddle jigsaw”

\begin{itemize}
\item /tcb/graphical environment\textsuperscript{P.154}: \texttt{tikzpicture}
\item /tcb/frame engine\textsuperscript{P.154}: \texttt{pathmiddlejigsaw}
\item /tcb/interior titled engine\textsuperscript{P.154}: \texttt{special}
\item /tcb/interior engine\textsuperscript{P.155}: \texttt{special}
\item /tcb/segmentation engine\textsuperscript{P.155}: \texttt{special}
\item /tcb/title engine\textsuperscript{P.155}: \texttt{pathmiddle}
\end{itemize}
This is the jigsaw variant of skin \texttt{bicolorlast}\textsuperscript{P.248}. It differs by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 222.

Environment and engines for the skin “bicolorlast jigsaw”

\begin{verbatim}
/\texttt{tcb/graphical environment}\textsuperscript{P.154}: \texttt{tikzpicture}
/\texttt{tcb/frame engine}\textsuperscript{P.154}: \texttt{pathlastjigsaw}
/\texttt{tcb/interior titled engine}\textsuperscript{P.154}: \texttt{special}
/\texttt{tcb/interior engine}\textsuperscript{P.155}: \texttt{special}
/\texttt{tcb/segmentation engine}\textsuperscript{P.155}: \texttt{special}
/\texttt{tcb/title engine}\textsuperscript{P.155}: \texttt{pathlast}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\texttt{\textbackslash skinExampleSet\{}\texttt{skin=\texttt{bicolorlast jigsaw},}
\texttt{colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen,}
\texttt{opacityframe=0.5,opacityback=0.5,opacitybacktitle=0.5,}
\texttt{opacitybacklower=0.5,}
\texttt{\}}
\end{verbatim}

This is my content.

\begin{tabular}{|c|c|c|}
\hline
This is my content. & My content. & More content.
\hline
This is my content. & My content. & More content.
\hline
My title & My title & My title
\hline
This is my content. & This is my content. & More content.
\hline
\end{tabular}
11.4 Skin Family “tile”

This skin is a variant of skin bicolor P.242. Especially, the optional lower part of the box is colored by /tcb/colbacklower P.244. The main difference to bicolor P.242 is that tile has no frame.

Environment and engines for the skin “tile”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/graphical environment</td>
<td>tikzpicture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/frame engine</td>
<td>empty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior titled engine</td>
<td>special</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior engine</td>
<td>special</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/segmentation engine</td>
<td>special</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/title engine</td>
<td>path</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This skin applies skin=tile and in addition changes the geometry and some style options.

```
\skinExampleSet{tile,  
  colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen,  
}
```

This is my content.  
This is my content.  
My title  
This is my content.  
More content.  
My content.  
More content.  

My title  
This is my content.  
This is my content.  
My title  
My content.  
More content.
This is a flavor of \textit{tile} \cite{P.253} which is used as a \textit{first} part in a break sequence for \textit{tile} \cite{P.253}. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

\begin{tabular}{|c|}
\hline
\textbf{Environment and engines for the skin “tilefirst”} \\
\hline
\texttt{/tcb/graphical environment} \cite{P.154}: \texttt{tikzpicture} \\
\texttt{/tcb/frame engine} \cite{P.154}: \texttt{empty} \\
\texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine} \cite{P.154}: \texttt{special} \\
\texttt{/tcb/interior engine} \cite{P.155}: \texttt{special} \\
\texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine} \cite{P.155}: \texttt{special} \\
\texttt{/tcb/title engine} \cite{P.155}: \texttt{pathfirst} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}

\begin{verbatim}
\skinExampleSet{skin=tilefirst,  
colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen,  
boxrule=0pt,  
}
\end{verbatim}
This is a flavor of \textit{tile} which is used as a \textit{middle} part in a break sequence for \textit{tile}. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

\begin{table}[h]
\centering
\begin{tabular}{|l|l|}
\hline
\textbf{Environment and engines for the skin “tilemiddle”} & \\
\hline
\textit{/tcb/graphical environment} & \textit{tikzpicture} \\
\textit{/tcb/frame engine} & \textit{empty} \\
\textit{/tcb/interior titled engine} & \textit{special} \\
\textit{/tcb/interior engine} & \textit{special} \\
\textit{/tcb/segmentation engine} & \textit{special} \\
\textit{/tcb/title engine} & \textit{pathmiddle} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{table}

\begin{lstlisting}[language=latex]
\skinExampleSet{skin=tilemiddle, colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen, boxrule=0pt, }
\end{lstlisting}

This is my content. This is my content. My content. More content.

This is my content. My title

This is my content. My title

My title

This is my content. My title

This is my content. My title

More content. More content.

255
This is a flavor of \textit{tile} which is used as a \textit{last} part in a break sequence for \textit{tile}. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

**Environment and engines for the skin “tilelast”**

- /tcb/graphical environment: \texttt{tikzpicture}
- /tcb/frame engine: \texttt{empty}
- /tcb/interior titled engine: \texttt{special}
- /tcb/interior engine: \texttt{special}
- /tcb/segmentation engine: \texttt{special}
- /tcb/title engine: \texttt{pathlast}

\begin{verbatim}
\color{LimeGreen!75!LightGreen}
\skinExampleSet{skin=tilelast, colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen, boxrule=0pt, }
\end{verbatim}

This is my content. This is my content. My content. More content.

This is my content. This is my content. My content. More content.

This is my content. This is my content. My content. More content.
11.5 Skin Family “beamer”

This skin resembles boxes known from the \texttt{beamer} class and therefore is called “beamer”. It uses the normal colors from the core package but shades them a little bit.

Environment and engines for the skin “beamer”

\begin{tcolorbox}[beamer,colback=Salmon!50!white,colframe=FireBrick!75!black,adjusted title=A colored box with the \enquote{beamer} skin]
This box looks like a box provided by the \texttt{beamer} class.
\end{tcolorbox}

This key applies \texttt{skin=beamer} and in addition changes the geometry and some style options.
This is a flavor of \texttt{beamer} which is used as a first part in a break sequence for \texttt{beamer}. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

\begin{verbatim}
\skinExampleSet{beamer,title filled=false,skin=beamerfirst}
\end{verbatim}

This is my content. More content. My title

Environment and engines for the skin “beamerfirst”

\begin{verbatim}
/tcb/graphical environment: \texttt{tikzpicture}
/tcb/frame engine: \texttt{pathfirst}
/tcb/interior titled engine: \texttt{special}
/tcb/interior engine: \texttt{special}
/tcb/segmentation engine: \texttt{special}
/tcb/title engine: \texttt{pathfirst}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\skinExampleSet{beamer,title filled=false,skin=beamermiddle}
\end{verbatim}

This is my content. More content. My title

This is a flavor of \texttt{beamer} which is used as a middle part in a break sequence for \texttt{beamer}. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

\begin{verbatim}
/tcb/graphical environment: \texttt{tikzpicture}
/tcb/frame engine: \texttt{pathmiddle}
/tcb/interior titled engine: \texttt{special}
/tcb/interior engine: \texttt{special}
/tcb/segmentation engine: \texttt{special}
/tcb/title engine: \texttt{pathmiddle}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\skinExampleSet{beamer,title filled=false,skin=beamermiddle}
\end{verbatim}

This is my content. More content. My title

259
This is a flavor of \texttt{beamer} which is used as a \textit{last} part in a break sequence for \texttt{beamer}. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

\begin{table}[h]
\centering
\begin{tabular}{|l|l|}
\hline
\texttt{/tcb/graphical\ environment} & \texttt{tikzpicture} \\
\texttt{/tcb/frame\ engine} & \texttt{pathlast} \\
\texttt{/tcb/interior\ titled\ engine} & \texttt{special} \\
\texttt{/tcb/interior\ engine} & \texttt{special} \\
\texttt{/tcb/segmentation\ engine} & \texttt{special} \\
\texttt{/tcb/title\ engine} & \texttt{pathlast} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\caption{Environment and engines for the skin “beamerlast”}
\end{table}

\verb|\skinExampleSet{beamer,title filled=false,skin=beamerlast}|
11.6 Skin Family “widget”

\tcb/skin=widget

This skin uses the normal colors from the core package but shades them a little bit. The appearance of the skin can be controlled by \tcb/frame style→P.168, \tcb/interior style→P.169, and \tcb/segmentation style→P.171, if needed.

### Environment and engines for the skin “widget”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine Type</th>
<th>Style</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\tcb/graphical environment</td>
<td>\texttt{tikzpicture}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\tcb/frame engine</td>
<td>\texttt{path}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\tcb/interior titled engine</td>
<td>\texttt{path}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\tcb/segmentation engine</td>
<td>\texttt{special}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\tcb/title engine</td>
<td>\texttt{special}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This key applies \texttt{skin=widget} and in addition changes the geometry and some style options.

\begin{tcolorbox}[widget,colback=Salmon!50!white,colframe=FireBrick!75!black, adjusted title=A colored box with the \enquote{widget} skin] This is my content. \end{tcolorbox}

A colored box with the “widget” skin

This is my content.
This is a flavor of widget \( ^{\text{P.261}} \) which is used as a first part in a break sequence for widget \( ^{\text{P.261}} \). Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

### Environment and engines for the skin “widgetfirst”

\[
\begin{align*}
/\text{tcb/graphical environment} & ^{\text{P.154}}: \text{tikzpicture} \\
/\text{tcb/frame engine} & ^{\text{P.154}}: \text{pathfirst} \\
/\text{tcb/interior titled engine} & ^{\text{P.154}}: \text{pathfirst} \\
/\text{tcb/interior engine} & ^{\text{P.155}}: \text{pathfirst} \\
/\text{tcb/segmentation engine} & ^{\text{P.155}}: \text{special} \\
/\text{tcb/title engine} & ^{\text{P.155}}: \text{special}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\text{\textbackslash skinExampleSet\{widget,skin=widgetfirst\}}
\]

This is my content.

This is my content.

My content. More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

More content.

More content.

More content.

More content.

More content.

### /tcb/skin=widgetmiddle

This is a flavor of widget \( ^{\text{P.261}} \) which is used as a middle part in a break sequence for widget \( ^{\text{P.261}} \). Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

### Environment and engines for the skin “widgetmiddle”

\[
\begin{align*}
/\text{tcb/graphical environment} & ^{\text{P.154}}: \text{tikzpicture} \\
/\text{tcb/frame engine} & ^{\text{P.154}}: \text{pathmiddle} \\
/\text{tcb/interior titled engine} & ^{\text{P.154}}: \text{pathmiddle} \\
/\text{tcb/interior engine} & ^{\text{P.155}}: \text{pathmiddle} \\
/\text{tcb/segmentation engine} & ^{\text{P.155}}: \text{special} \\
/\text{tcb/title engine} & ^{\text{P.155}}: \text{special}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\text{\textbackslash skinExampleSet\{widget,skin=widgetmiddle\}}
\]

This is my content.

This is my content.

My content. More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

More content.

More content.

More content.

More content.

More content.
This is a flavor of \texttt{widget} \footnote{P.261} which is used as a last part in a break sequence for \texttt{widget} \footnote{P.261}. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

\begin{table}[h]
\centering
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
Environment and engines for the skin “\texttt{widgetlast}”  \\
\hline
\texttt{/tcb/graphical environment} \texttt{\footnote{P.154}} & \texttt{tikzpicture}  \\
\texttt{/tcb/frame engine} \texttt{\footnote{P.154}} & \texttt{pathlast}  \\
\texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine} \texttt{\footnote{P.154}} & \texttt{pathlast}  \\
\texttt{/tcb/interior engine} \texttt{\footnote{P.155}} & \texttt{pathlast}  \\
\texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine} \texttt{\footnote{P.155}} & \texttt{special}  \\
\texttt{/tcb/title engine} \texttt{\footnote{P.155}} & \texttt{special}  \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{table}

\begin{figure}[h]
\centering
\begin{tikzpicture}
\node[draw] {This is my content.};
\node[draw] at (1,0) {This is my content.};
\node[draw] at (2,0) {My content.};
\node[draw] at (2,-1) {More content.};
\node[draw] at (1.5,-1) {More content.};
\node[draw] at (3,-1) {More content.};
\node[draw] at (3,-2) {More content.};
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{figure}

\begin{exampleset}{widget,skin=widgetlast}
\begin{minipage}{0.3\textwidth}
\begin{itemize}
\item This is my content.
\item More content.
\end{itemize}
\end{minipage}\hspace{1cm}
\begin{minipage}{0.3\textwidth}
\begin{itemize}
\item This is my content.
\item More content.
\end{itemize}
\end{minipage}\hspace{1cm}
\begin{minipage}{0.3\textwidth}
\begin{itemize}
\item My title
\item This is my content.
\item My content.
\item More content.
\end{itemize}
\end{minipage}\hspace{1cm}
\begin{minipage}{0.3\textwidth}
\begin{itemize}
\item My title
\item This is my content.
\item My content.
\item More content.
\end{itemize}
\end{minipage}
\end{exampleset}
11.7 Skin Family “empty”

\texttt{/tcb/skin=empty} \hspace{1cm} (skin)

This skin sets all engines to \texttt{empty}, i.e. nothing is drawn at all. Therefore, this skin is a good starting point to create a complete new style by yourself.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{/tcb/graphical environment} \hspace{.5cm} \texttt{\texttt{tikzpicture}}
  \item \texttt{/tcb/frame engine} \hspace{.5cm} \texttt{\texttt{empty}}
  \item \texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine} \hspace{.5cm} \texttt{\texttt{empty}}
  \item \texttt{/tcb/interior engine} \hspace{.5cm} \texttt{\texttt{empty}}
  \item \texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine} \hspace{.5cm} \texttt{\texttt{empty}}
  \item \texttt{/tcb/title engine} \hspace{.5cm} \texttt{\texttt{empty}}
\end{itemize}

Note that the text colors stay unchanged when a skin is applied. Since the standard title color is white, the title of a box with skin \texttt{empty} becomes invisible, if not set to another color by \texttt{/tcb/coltitle} \hspace{.5cm} \texttt{\texttt{\texttt{\texttt{P.33}}}}.

\texttt{/tcb/empty} \hspace{1cm} (style, no value)

This is an abbreviation for setting \texttt{skin=empty}.

\begin{verbatim}
\skinExampleSet{empty, coltitle=Navy,borderline={2pt}{0pt}{black!10!white}, }
\end{verbatim}

This is my content. More content.

This is my content. More content.

My content. More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

My content. More content.

My title

This is my content.

My content. More content.
This style relies on the skin `empty`\textsuperscript{P.264}. All engines are set to empty and all margins are set to Opt. In contrast to `tcb/blank`\textsuperscript{P.232}, the graphical paths are not constructed with exception of the geometry nodes.

\begin{tcolorbox}[blanker,watermark text=A blank box]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}


\begin{tabular}{|c|c|c|}
\hline
A & B & C \\
\hline
\end{tabular}

A & B & C


This style extends \texttt{/tcb/blanker}\textsuperscript{P.265}. All engines are set to empty and all margins are set to 0pt. In contrast to \texttt{/tcb/blanker}\textsuperscript{P.265}, also title, shadow, underlay, overlay, finish and borderline are removed.

\begin{tcbitemize}
\end{tcbitemize}
This is a flavor of empty\textsuperscript{P.264} which is used as a first part in a break sequence for empty\textsuperscript{P.264}. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

Environment and engines for the skin “emptyfirst”

\begin{tabular}{|l|}
\hline
/tcb/graphical environment\textsuperscript{P.154}: & \texttt{tikzpicture} \\
/tcb/frame engine\textsuperscript{P.154}: & \texttt{empty} \\
/tcb/interior titled engine\textsuperscript{P.154}: & \texttt{empty} \\
/tcb/interior engine\textsuperscript{P.155}: & \texttt{empty} \\
/tcb/segmentation engine\textsuperscript{P.155}: & \texttt{empty} \\
/tcb/title engine\textsuperscript{P.155}: & \texttt{empty} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}

\skinExampleSet{skin=emptyfirst, 
  coltitle=Navy,borderline={2pt}{0pt}{black!10!white},
}

This is my content.
This is my content.
My content. More content.
More content.
My title
This is my content.
My title
This is my content.
My title
This is my content.
My title
This is my content.
This is a flavor of empty which is used as a middle part in a break sequence for empty. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

Environment and engines for the skin “emptymiddle”

```
\skinExampleSet{skin=emptymiddle,
  coltitle=Navy,borderline={2pt}{0pt}{black!10!white},
}
```

This is my content.

This is my content.

My content. More content.

My title

This is my content.

This is my content.

More content.

My title

My content. More content.
This is a flavor of \texttt{empty} \textsuperscript{P.264} which is used as a \textit{last} part in a break sequence for \texttt{empty} \textsuperscript{P.264}. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

\begin{frame}
\begin{Verbatim}
\texttt{\skinExampleSet{skin=emptylast,}
\hspace{1cm}\texttt{coltitle=Navy,borderline={2pt}{0pt}{black!10!white},}
\texttt{}}
\end{Verbatim}
\end{frame}

% # Environment and engines for the skin “emptylast”

\begin{tikzpicture}
\begin{tabularx}{\textwidth}{|X|}
\hline
\texttt{/tcb/graphical environment} & \texttt{tikzpicture} \\
\texttt{/tcb/frame engine} & \texttt{empty} \\
\texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine} & \texttt{empty} \\
\texttt{/tcb/interior engine} & \texttt{empty} \\
\texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine} & \texttt{empty} \\
\texttt{/tcb/title engine} & \texttt{empty} \\
\hline
\end{tabularx}
\end{tikzpicture}
This example demonstrates a breakable customized box. Here, we define an environment \texttt{freebox}. The first application of \texttt{freebox} produces an unbroken \texttt{tcolorbox}. The box is drawn by the code given by \texttt{/tcb/frame code}→P.157 and \texttt{/tcb/interior code}→P.158. The second application of \texttt{freebox} is broken into several parts which are drawn by the codes given by \texttt{/tcb/skin first is subskin of}→P.160, \texttt{/tcb/skin middle is subskin of}→P.160, and \texttt{/tcb/skin last is subskin of}→P.160.

\begin{verbatim}
\% Preamble:
\%\usepackage{tikz,lipsum}
\%\tcbuselibrary{skins,breakable}
\tikzset{coltria/.style={fill=red!15!white}}
\newtcolorbox\{freebox\}[1][\]{empty,
  breakable,height fixed for=first and middle,
  leftrule=5mm,left=2mm,
  frame style={fill,top color=red!75!black,bottom color=red!75!black,middle color=red},
  colback=yellow!50!white,
  watermark color=red!50!yellow!75!white,
  watermark text on=unbroken is unbroken box,
  watermark text on=first is first part,
  watermark text on=middle is middle part,
  watermark text on=last is last part,
  \% code for unbroken boxes:
  frame code={\path[tcb fill frame] (frame.south west)--(frame.north west)
    --([xshift=-5mm]frame.north east)--([yshift=-5mm]frame.north east)
    --([yshift=5mm]frame.south east)--([xshift=-5mm]frame.south east)
    --cycle; },
  interior code={\path[tcb fill interior] (interior.south west)--(interior.north west)
    --([xshift=-4.8mm]interior.north east)--([yshift=-4.8mm]interior.north east)
    --([yshift=4.8mm]interior.south east)--([xshift=-4.8mm]interior.south east)
    --cycle; },
  \% code for the first part of a break sequence:
  skin first is subskin of={emptyfirst}{
    frame code={\path[tcb fill frame] (frame.south west)--(frame.north west)
      --([xshift=-5mm]frame.north east)--([yshift=-5mm]frame.north east)
      --([yshift=5mm]frame.south east)--([xshift=-5mm]frame.south east)
      --cycle;
    \path[coltria] ([xshift=2.5mm,yshift=1mm]frame.south west) -- +(120:2mm)
      -- +(60:2mm) -- cycle; },
    interior code={\path[tcb fill interior] (interior.south west)--(interior.north west)
      --([xshift=-4.8mm]interior.north east)--([yshift=-4.8mm]interior.north east)
      --([yshift=4.8mm]interior.south east)--([xshift=-4.8mm]interior.south east)
      --cycle; },
  },
  \% code for the middle part of a break sequence:
  skin middle is subskin of={emptymiddle}{
    frame code={\path[tcb fill frame] (frame.south west)--(frame.north west)
      --([xshift=-5mm]frame.north east)--([yshift=-5mm]frame.north east)
      --cycle;
    \path[coltria] ([xshift=2.5mm,yshift=-1mm]frame.north west) -- +(120:2mm)
      -- +(300:2mm) -- cycle;
    \path[coltria] ([xshift=2.5mm,yshift=1mm]frame.south west) -- +(120:2mm)
      -- +(60:2mm) -- cycle; },
    interior code={\path[tcb fill interior] (interior.south west)--(interior.north west)
      --([xshift=-4.8mm]interior.north east)--(interior.south east)
      --cycle; },
  },
  \% code for the last part of a break sequence:
  skin last is subskin of={emptylast}{
    frame code={\path[tcb fill frame] (frame.south west)--(frame.north west)
      --([xshift=-5mm]frame.north east)--([yshift=-5mm]frame.north east)
      --cycle;
    \path[coltria] ([xshift=2.5mm,yshift=-1mm]frame.north west) -- +(120:2mm)
      -- +(300:2mm) -- cycle;
  }
\end{verbatim}

270


11.8 Skin “spartan”

\texttt{/tcb/skin=spartan} (skin)

This skin is quite . . . spartan. It supports no rounded corners, no overlays, no shadows, no
borderlines, and no finishes. The only exception are underlays. One cannot do very fancy
things with this skin, but it compiles very fast. Therefore, the \texttt{spartan} skin is used for the
draft mode, see Section 10.12 on page 224. Nevertheless, it can be used as a normal skin.

\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
Environment and engines for the skin “spartan” & \\
\hline
/tcb/graphical environment$\rightarrow$P.154: & \texttt{tikzpicture} \\
/tcb/frame engine$\rightarrow$P.154: & \texttt{spartan} \\
/tcb/interior titled engine$\rightarrow$P.154: & \texttt{spartan} \\
/tcb/interior engine$\rightarrow$P.155: & \texttt{spartan} \\
/tcb/segmentation engine$\rightarrow$P.155: & \texttt{spartan} \\
/tcb/title engine$\rightarrow$P.155: & \texttt{spartan} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}

\texttt{/tcb/spartan} (style, no value)

This is an abbreviation for setting \texttt{skin=spartan}.

\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
\texttt{\skinExampleSet{spartan}} & \\
\hline
This is my content. & This is my content. \\
This is my content. & My content. \\
More content. & More content. \\
\hline
My title & My title \\
This is my content. & This is my content. \\
My title & My content. \\
More content. & More content. \\
\hline
\end{tabular}

274
11.9 Skin “draft”

This skin is intended to be used while drafting new geometric settings for a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

**Environment and engines for the skin “draft”**

- \texttt{/tcb/graphical environment} \textsuperscript{P.154}: \texttt{tikzpicture}
- \texttt{/tcb/frame engine} \textsuperscript{P.154}: \texttt{special}
- \texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine} \textsuperscript{P.154}: \texttt{special}
- \texttt{/tcb/interior engine} \textsuperscript{P.155}: \texttt{special}
- \texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine} \textsuperscript{P.155}: \texttt{path}
- \texttt{/tcb/title engine} \textsuperscript{P.155}: \texttt{path}

This is an abbreviation for setting \texttt{skin=draft}.

This is my content.

My content. More content.

My title

My content. More content.

My title


11.10 Skin Family “freelance”

This skin family “freelance” is deprecated with \texttt{tcolorbox} 3.00. It is no longer needed, because \texttt{/tcb/frame code} → P.157, \texttt{/tcb/interior code} → P.158, \texttt{/tcb/interior titled code} → P.157, and \texttt{/tcb/title code} → P.159 can be applied to every skin now. In this sense, everything has become \texttt{freelance} now.

For users of \texttt{/tcb/freelance}: Old code should continue to work. There may be exceptions for breakable freelance boxes under certain circumstances. For new code, use \texttt{/tcb/empty} → P.264 or \texttt{/tcb/enhanced} → P.230 where you would have used \texttt{/tcb/freelance} before.

\texttt{/tcb/skin=freelance} (skin)

This skin gives full freedom for the appearance of the \texttt{tcolorbox}. All drawing engines are set to type \texttt{freelance}; they use the \texttt{tikz} package and compute the \texttt{/tcb/geometry nodes} → P.156.

\texttt{/tcb/ipographical environment} \texttt{\textbackslash{} interpreted} \texttt{/tcb/frame engine} \texttt{\textbackslash{} interpreted} \texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine} \texttt{\textbackslash{} interpreted} \texttt{/tcb/interior engine} \texttt{\textbackslash{} interpreted} \texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine} \texttt{\textbackslash{} interpreted} \texttt{/tcb/title engine} \texttt{\textbackslash{} interpreted}

\texttt{/tcb/freelance} (style, no value)

This is an abbreviation for setting \texttt{skin=freelance}.

\texttt{/tcb/skin=freelancefirst} (skin)

This skin equals \texttt{freelance} with exception of the break sequence, see Section 19.8 on page 414.

\texttt{/tcb/skin=freelancemiddle} (skin)

This skin equals \texttt{freelance} with exception of the break sequence, see Section 19.8 on page 414.

\texttt{/tcb/skin=freelancelast} (skin)

This skin equals \texttt{freelance} with exception of the break sequence, see Section 19.8 on page 414.

\texttt{/tcb/extend freelance=\texttt{(options)}} (no default, initially empty)

The \texttt{(options)} are added to the skin definition of \texttt{freelance}.

\texttt{/tcb/extend freelancefirst=\texttt{(options)}} (no default, initially empty)

The \texttt{(options)} are added to the skin definition of \texttt{freelancefirst} which is used as first part of the break sequence of \texttt{freelance}. See \texttt{/tcb/skin first is subskin of} → P.160 for a substitute of this key.

\texttt{/tcb/extend freelancemiddle=\texttt{(options)}} (no default, initially empty)

The \texttt{(options)} are added to the skin definition of \texttt{freelancemiddle} which is used as middle part of the break sequence of \texttt{freelance}. See \texttt{/tcb/skin middle is subskin of} → P.160 for a substitute of this key.

\texttt{/tcb/extend freelancelast=\texttt{(options)}} (no default, initially empty)

The \texttt{(options)} are added to the skin definition of \texttt{freelancelast} which is used as last part of the break sequence of \texttt{freelance}. See \texttt{/tcb/skin last is subskin of} → P.160 for a substitute of this key.
12 Inclusion of Boxed Image Files

The \texttt{skins} library adds some commands to conveniently include boxed image files. For the following macros and options, the \texttt{skins} library has to be loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbuselibrary{skins}
\end{verbatim}

See Section 10 on page 168 for the documentation of all other options of the \texttt{skins} library.

12.1 Macros

\texttt{\tcbincludegraphics[(options)]{(file name)}}

In principle, this macro includes an image file denoted by \texttt{(file name)} using the standard \texttt{\includegraphics} and puts it into a \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{P.12}. The \texttt{(options)} are \texttt{tcolorbox} keys to set up the colored box. Use \texttt{/tcb/graphics options} \textsuperscript{P.281} to specify options for the underlying \texttt{\includegraphics}. Some \texttt{tcolorbox} option keys are automatically set, namely \texttt{/tcb/enhanced} \textsuperscript{P.230} and options to center the image inside the box.

The sizing of the included image is done depending on the following:

- If a \texttt{/tcb/width} \textsuperscript{P.39} is specified, but no fixed \texttt{/tcb/height} \textsuperscript{P.58}, the image is sized to fill the inner width of the box. The height of the box adapts to the image.
- If a fixed \texttt{/tcb/height} \textsuperscript{P.58} is specified, the image is sized to fill the fixed inner area of the box.
- If the \texttt{/tcb/capture} \textsuperscript{P.105} mode \texttt{/tcb/hbox} \textsuperscript{P.105} is specified, the image is sized according to given \texttt{\includegraphics} options only. The box adapts to the image.

\begin{verbatim}
% \tcbuselibrary{raster}
\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=3,raster force size=false,size=fbox, colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!20!black, fonttitle=\bfseries,center title,drop fuzzy shadow]
\tcbincludegraphics[title=Normal]{goldshade.png}
\tcbincludegraphics[title=Fixed height,height=3cm]{goldshade.png}
\tcbincludegraphics[title=hbox mode,hbox,graphics options={width=3cm}]{goldshade.png}
\end{tcbraster}
\end{verbatim}
The auxiliary macro \texttt{\textbackslash imagename} may be used inside \texttt{\textbackslash tcbincludegraphics} \textsuperscript{P.278} to display the name of the file. \texttt{\textbackslash imagename} is already partially detokenized and is allowed to contain special characters like the underscore. Note that an appropriate font is required to display such characters.

\begin{verbatim}
\% \tcbsuselibrary{raster}
\begin{tcbraster}[size=fbox,  
colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!20!black,  
fonttitle=bseries\textbackslash ttfamily,center title,drop fuzzy shadow]
\tcbincludegraphics[title=\texttt{\textbackslash imagename}]{goldshade.png}
\tcbincludegraphics[finish={  
  \node[fill=white,fill opacity=0.5,text opacity=1]  
  at (frame.center) {bseries\textbackslash ttfamily\texttt{\textbackslash imagename}};},]{blueshade.png}
\end{tcbraster}
\end{verbatim}
This is a generalized version of \texttt{tcbincludegraphics}\textsuperscript{P.278} which allows to include a complete PDF file denoted by \texttt{(file name)}. Every page is boxed into an own \texttt{tcolorbox}\textsuperscript{P.12} customized by the given \texttt{(options)}. It is reasonable to put such a series of boxes inside a \texttt{tcbreader}\textsuperscript{P.306} for alignment.

Use /tcb/graphics \texttt{pages}\textsuperscript{P.281} to use a selection of pages instead of using the whole file.

The auxiliary macro \texttt{imagepage} may be used inside \texttt{tcbincludepdf} to display the current page number.

\begin{tcbreader}[raster columns=3,colframe=blue,colback=white, colbacktitle=blue!50!white,fonttitle=\texttt{small bfseries ttfamily}, left=0pt,right=0pt,top=0pt,bottom=0pt,boxsep=0pt,boxrule=0.6pt, toptitle=1mm,bottomtitle=1mm,drop lifted shadow,center title, graphics pages={1,...,6},title={\texttt{tcolorbox-example.pdf}}] \texttt{tcbincludepdf}\texttt{tcolorbox-example.pdf}\end{tcbreader}

% \texttt{tcbuselibrary(raster)}
\begin{tcbreader}[raster columns=3,colframe=blue,colback=white, colbacktitle=blue!50!white,fonttitle=\texttt{small bfseries ttfamily}, left=0pt,right=0pt,top=0pt,bottom=0pt,boxsep=0pt,boxrule=0.6pt, toptitle=1mm,bottomtitle=1mm,drop lifted shadow,center title, graphics pages={1,...,6},title={\texttt{tcolorbox-example.pdf}}] \texttt{tcbincludepdf}\texttt{tcolorbox-example.pdf}\end{tcbreader}
12.2 Option Keys

/tcb/graphics options \texttt{= (options)}

(no default, initially empty)

Used for \texttt{\tcbincludegraphics \textasciitilde P.278 and \tcbincludepdf \textasciitilde P.280} to specify \texttt{\includegraphics (options)}.

\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=3,size=fbox,raster equal height,
colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!20!black,drop fuzzy shadow]
\tcbincludegraphics{goldshade.png}
\newcommand{\myangle}{angle=20}\%
\tcbincludegraphics[graphics options=\myangle]{goldshade.png}
\tcbincludegraphics[graphics options={viewport=0cm 0cm 8cm 4cm,clip}]{goldshade.png}
\end{tcbraster}

/tcb/graphics directory \texttt{= (directory)}

(no default, initially empty)

Used for \texttt{\tcbincludegraphics \textasciitilde P.278 and \tcbincludepdf \textasciitilde P.280} to specify a file system \texttt{(directory)} where the image files are located.

\begin{tcbunit}{
\tcbset{
    graphics directory=.,
    graphics directory={examples},
    graphics directory={../../pictures},
}
\}

! The \texttt{\graphicspath} macro from the \texttt{graphics} package is superior to this option.
\texttt{/tcb/graphics directory} may be used especially for \texttt{\tcbincludepdf \textasciitilde P.280}.

/tcb/graphics pages \texttt{= (selection)}

(no default, initially 1, \ldots, \texttt{\pdfpages})

Used for \texttt{\tcbincludepdf \textasciitilde P.280} to specify a \texttt{(selection)} of pages to be included. The largest page number is accessible by \texttt{\pdfpages}. The \texttt{(selection)} has to be given using the \texttt{\foreach} syntax of Ti\textit{k}Z.

\begin{tcbunit}{
\tcbset{
    graphics pages=(1,3,7),
    graphics pages=(1,\ldots,10),
    graphics pages=(1,3,\ldots,18),
    graphics pages={100,\ldots,\pdfpages},
}
}
Use \texttt{\textbackslash_tcbincludegraphics} \texttt{\textbarpage{278}} and \texttt{\textbackslash_tcbincludepdf} \texttt{\textbarpage{280}} to guarantee a certain \textit{orientation} of the included image. After all other options for the image are processed, the result is possibly rotated to be in landscape or portrait mode.

Feasible values for \textit{orientation} are:

- \texttt{as-is}: no rotation of the processed image.
- \texttt{landscape}: the processed image is possibly rotated by 90 degrees to ensure that the final width is not smaller than the final height.
- \texttt{landscape*}: the processed image is possibly rotated by -90 degrees to ensure that the final width is not smaller than the final height.
- \texttt{portrait}: the processed image is possibly rotated by 90 degrees to ensure that the final height is not smaller than the final width.
- \texttt{portrait*}: the processed image is possibly rotated by -90 degrees to ensure that the final height is not smaller than the final width.

% \texttt{\textbackslash tcbuselibrary{raster}}
\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=6,size=fbox,raster equal height, colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!20!black,drop fuzzy shadow]
\texttt{\textbackslash_tcbincludegraphics}{Basilica_5.png}
\texttt{\textbackslash_tcbincludegraphics}[graphics orientation=landscape]{Basilica_5.png}
\texttt{\textbackslash_tcbincludegraphics}[graphics orientation=portrait]{Basilica_5.png}
\texttt{\textbackslash_tcbincludegraphics}[graphics orientation=portrait*]{Basilica_5.png}
\texttt{\textbackslash_tcbincludegraphics}[graphics options={viewport=0cm 0cm 2cm 3cm,clip}]{goldshade.png}
\texttt{\textbackslash_tcbincludegraphics}[graphics options={viewport=0cm 0cm 2cm 3cm,clip}, graphics orientation=landscape]{goldshade.png}
\end{tcbraster}
13  TikZ Auxiliary Macros

The \texttt{skins} library adds some auxiliary options to the vast option set of TikZ [24]. These options can be used in any \texttt{tikzpicture}. For the following options, the \texttt{skins} library has to be loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\begin{tikzpicture}
\draw[thick,rounded corners=8pt]
(0,0) -- (0,2) -- (1,3.25) -- (2,2) -- (2,0)
-- (0,2) -- (2,2) -- (0,0) -- (2,0);
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\draw[thick,rounded corners=8pt,xshift=2.5cm]
(0,0) -- (0,2) -- (1,3.25) -- (2,2) -- (2,0)
-- (0,2) -- (2,2) -- (0,0) -- (2,0);
\end{tikzpicture}

See Section 10 on page 168 for the documentation of all other options of the \texttt{skins} library.

Up to version 5.1.1 (2022/06/24) of \texttt{tcolorbox}, TikZ image and picture fill extensions were documented here. These extensions are now separate TikZ libraries and part of the \texttt{tikzfill} package where they are documented now.

13.1  Straightening of the Arcs

This patch is considered as an experimental feature. It changes some of the original TikZ code. This change may break with future updates of TikZ.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\draw[thick,rounded corners=8pt]
(0,0) -- (0,2) -- (1,3.25) -- (2,2) -- (2,0)
-- (0,2) -- (2,2) -- (0,0) -- (2,0);
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\draw[thick,rounded corners=8pt,xshift=2.5cm]
(0,0) -- (0,2) -- (1,3.25) -- (2,2) -- (2,0)
-- (0,2) -- (2,2) -- (0,0) -- (2,0);
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\draw[thick,rounded corners=8pt,xshift=2.5cm]
(0,0) -- (0,2) -- (1,3.25) -- (2,2) -- (2,0)
-- (0,2) -- (2,2) -- (0,0) -- (2,0);
\end{tikzpicture}

N 2014-05-05 \texttt{tcbpatcharcangular}

The TikZ package provides a nice \texttt{rounded corners} option to replace all corners by little arcs. \texttt{tcbpatcharcangular} is a patch which straightens the arcs. To say it more prosaic, the little arcs are replaced by little straight lines.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\draw[thick,rounded corners=8pt]
(0,0) -- (0,2) -- (1,3.25) -- (2,2) -- (2,0)
-- (0,2) -- (2,2) -- (0,0) -- (2,0);
\end{tikzpicture}

N 2014-05-05 \texttt{tcbpatcharcround}

This macro reverts \texttt{tcbpatcharcangular}, i.e., the patch from \texttt{tcbpatcharcangular} is replaced by the original code.
13.2 Extracting Node Dimensions

The following auxiliary macros are defined by the \texttt{skins} library. They allow to determine the width and height of an arbitrary \LaTeX\ node. To be more specific, they determine the east-to-west and the north-to-south dimensions which may be not the maximal dimensions for a non-rectangular node. Note that the following dimensions are measured exactly including the line width of the border line. If a new rectangle or node with the same dimensions and a border is to be drawn, this border width has to be substracted.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\node[align=center,draw=red,fill=yellow] (A) {This is my\example node};
\tcbsetmacrotowidthofnode\mywidth{A}
\tcbsetmacrotoheightofnode\myheight{A}
\path[fill=blue!25!white] % rectangle without border
  ([xshift=2mm]A.south east) rectangle node{Copy} +\mywidth,\myheight; 
\node[draw=blue,fill=blue!25!white, % standard border width 0.4pt
  minimum width=\mywidth-0.4pt, % minus width of border
  minimum height=\myheight-0.4pt % minus height of border
] at ([xshift=5cm]A) {Copy 2};
\end{tikzpicture}

13.3 Hyper Nodes

The following auxiliary macro is defined by the \texttt{skins} library.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\node[align=center,draw=red,fill=red!5] (mybutton) {Click me to jump to Section~\ref*{sec:tikzimagefilling}};
\tcbhypernode{\hyperref[sec:tikzimagefilling]}{mybutton}
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\node[align=center,draw=red,fill=red!5] (mybutton) {Click me to jump to Section 13};
\tcbhypernode{\hyperref[sec:tikzimagefilling]}{mybutton}
\end{tikzpicture}
14 Beamer Support

The `skins` library adds some supporting options for the `beamer` package [25]. For the following options, the `skins` library has to be loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\tcbuselibrary{skins}

See Section 10 on page 168 for the documentation of all other options of the `skins` library.

\texttt{/tcb/only=<\langle overlay specification \rangle>\{\langle options \rangle\}} (style, no default, initially unset)

Sets the given \texttt{tcolorbox} \texttt{(options)} in dependency of a \texttt{beamer} \texttt{(overlay specification)}. Note that this needs the \texttt{beamer} class [25]. The \texttt{(options)} will only be used on the specified \texttt{beamer} frames.

\begin{document}
\begin{frame}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title,fonttitle=\bfseries, enhanced,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10,colbacktitle=red, sidebyside,righthand width=3cm, lowerbox=invisible,lower separated=false, drop lifted shadow, only=<1>{colbacktitle=yellow,coltitle=red!50!black,colframe=red, only=<3>{colback=yellow!50,watermark text={Attention!}}, only=<3->{lowerbox=visible} ]
This is a test.
\begin{itemize}[<+->]
\item One
\item Two
\item \alert<3>{Three}
\item Four
\end{itemize}
\tcblower
\begin{equation*}
\int\limits_{1}^{x} \frac{1}{t}~dt = \ln(x).
\end{equation*}
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{frame}
\end{document}
\documentclass{beamer}
\usepackage[most]{tcolorbox}
\begin{document}
\begin{frame}[fragile]
\begin{tcblisting}{beamer,colback=blue!5,colframe=blue!20!gray,coltitle=yellow,
title=Example,
only=<1>{lowerbox=invisible},only=<2>{}
\begin{Verbatim}
This is an \textbf{example listing}
\end{Verbatim}
\end{tcblisting}
\end{frame}
\end{document}

\textbf{Example}
This is an \textbf{example listing}
\textbf{Example}
This is an \textbf{example listing}
This is an example listing

The option /tcb/only \textsuperscript{P.265} belonged to the base package before version 4.20.

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{/tcb\textbackslash hide}=<\{overlay specification\}> \hfill (style, no default, initially unset)
\begin{itemize}
\item Sets the /tcb/beamer hidden style in dependency of a beamer \{overlay specification\}. \tcb/beamer hidden can be redefined for customization.
\end{itemize}
\item \texttt{/tcb\textbackslash beamer hidden} \hfill (style, no options, initially nirvana)
\begin{itemize}
\item This style is not intended to be used directly, but in concealed way by applying /tcb\textbackslash hide. The style can be redefined.
\end{itemize}
\end{itemize}

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{
  beamer hidden/.style={invisble,interior hidden,colframe=blue!20!gray!15},
}
\end{verbatim}
/tcb/alert=<\langle overlay specification\rangle> (style, no default, initially unset)

Sets the /tcb/beamer alerted style in dependency of a \texttt{beamer \langle overlay specification\rangle}. /tcb/beamer alerted can be redefined for customization.

/tcb/beamer alerted (style, no options, initially \texttt{fuzzy halo})

This style is not intended to be used directly, but in concealed way by applying /tcb/alert. The style can be redefined.

\begin{tcbitemize}
\t\t\begin{tcbitem}
\t\t\[title=One,alert=<1>\]
\t\t\text{First Statement}
\t\t\end{tcbitem}
\t\t\begin{tcbitem}
\t\t\[title=Two,hide=<-1>,alert=<2]\]
\t\t\text{Second Statement}
\t\t\end{tcbitem}
\t\t\begin{tcbitem}
\t\t\[title=Three,hide=<-2>,alert=<3]\]
\t\t\text{Test}
\t\t\end{tcbitem}
\t\t\begin{tcbitem}
\t\t\[title=Four,hide=<-3>,alert=<4]\]
\t\t\begin{equation*}
\int_{1}^{x} \frac{1}{t} \, dt = \ln(x).
\end{equation*}
\t\t\end{tcbitem}
\t\t\begin{tcbitem}
\t\t\[title=Five,hide=<-4>,alert=<5]\]
\t\t\includegraphics[width=1cm]{goldshade.png}
\t\t\end{tcbitem}
\t\t\begin{tcbitem}
\t\t\[title=Six,hide=<-5>,alert=<6]\]
\t\t\text{Test}
\t\t\end{tcbitem}
\end{tcbitemize}

The following examples use \texttt{tcbitemize} \textsuperscript{\textit{P. 307}} from \textit{raster} for convenient use of a list of boxes which are uncovered one by one.
\documentclass{beamer}
\usepackage[most]{tcolorbox}
\begin{document}
\begin{frame}
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height=rows, enhanced, colback=blue!5, colframe=blue!20!gray, coltitle=yellow, beamer hidden/.style={invisible, interior hidden, colframe=blue!20!gray!15}, beamer alerted/.style={colframe=red!50!gray}, ]
\tcbitem [title=One, alert=<1>]
First Statement
\tcbitem [title=Two, hide=<-1>, alert=<2>]
Second Statement
\tcbitem [title=Three, hide=<-2>, alert=<3>]
Test
\tcbitem [title=Four, hide=<-3>, alert=<4>]
\begin{equation*}
\int_1^x \frac{1}{t} \, dt = \ln(x).
\end{equation*}
\tcbitem [title=Five, hide=<-4>, alert=<5>]
\includegraphics[width=1cm]{goldshade.png}
\tcbitem [title=Six, hide=<-5>, alert=<6>]
Test
\end{tcbitemize}
\end{frame}
\end{document}
\documentclass{beamer}
\usepackage[most]{tcolorbox}
\begin{document}
\begin{frame}
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height=rows,
beamer,colback=blue!5,colframe=blue!20!gray,coltitle=yellow,beamer]
\tcbitem[title=One,alert=<1>]
First Statement
\tcbitem[title=Two,hide=<1>,alert=<2>]
Second Statement
\tcbitem[title=Three,hide=<2>,alert=<3>]
\begin{equation}
\int_{1}^{x} \frac{1}{t} \, dt = \ln(x).
\end{equation}
\tcbitem[title=Four]
Test
\tcbitem[title=Five]
Six
\tcbitem[title=Six]
Test
\end{tcbitemize}
\end{frame}
\end{document}
\begin{equation*}
\int\limits_{1}^{x} \frac{1}{t} \, dt = \ln(x).
\end{equation*}
The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\tcbuselibrary{vignette}

This also loads the skins library, see Section 10 on page 168, and the fadings library of tikz [24].

15.1 Vignette Drawing

\tcbvignette{⟨options⟩}

In this context, a vignette is a four part rectangular frame. It is constructed as several Ti\kZ paths and, therefore, can only be used inside a tikzpicture environment or inside tcolorbox \textsuperscript{P.12} options.

The ⟨options⟩ control position, size and style settings of the vignette. Theses options have the common key path /tcb/vig/ and are described in the following.

The next examples show direct \tcbvignette usage without a tcolorbox \textsuperscript{P.12}.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tcbvignette{}
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\node[draw,fill=blue!15!white] (A) {Test};
\tcbvignette{outside node=A,raised color=blue}
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\node[draw,fill=blue!15!white] (A) {Another Test};
\tcbvignette{size=3mm,outside node=A,
north style=red,east style=yellow,
south style=blue,west style=green}
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\node[inner sep=3mm,fill=red!75] (A) {Test};
\tcbvignette{over node=A,fade in}
\end{tikzpicture}

\tcbvignette can be used directly inside appropriate options keys for tcolorbox \textsuperscript{P.12}. Note that options like /tcb/underlay \textsuperscript{P.216} need /tcb/enhanced \textsuperscript{P.230} or similar settings.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,size=small,sharp corners,
colback=green!10,colframe=green!50!black,
boxrule=1mm,titlerule=0mm,
title=My title,center title,fonttitle=bfseries,
underlay=\tcbvignette{size=1mm,inside node=frame,
raised color=green!50!black}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
mostly, convenient short cuts like /tcb/underlay vignette→p.299 can be used to add a vignette to a tcolorbox→p.12. here, \tcbvignette is used internally.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,size=small,sharp corners, colback=green!10,colframe=green!50!black, boxrule=1mm,titlerule=0mm, title=My title,center title,fonttitle=bfseries, underlay vignette] This is a tcolorbox. \end{tcolorbox}

15.2 Generic Geometry Settings

N 2016-04-22 /tcb/vig/xmin=(length)  (no default, initially 0pt)
Sets the lower horizontal limit of a \tcbvignette→p.291.

N 2016-04-22 /tcb/vig/xmax=(length)  (no default, initially 1cm)
Sets the upper horizontal limit of a \tcbvignette→p.291.

N 2016-04-22 /tcb/vig/ymin=(length)  (no default, initially 0pt)
Sets the lower vertical limit of a \tcbvignette→p.291.

N 2016-04-22 /tcb/vig/ymax=(length)  (no default, initially 1cm)
Sets the upper vertical limit of a \tcbvignette→p.291.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill [black!20] (0,0) rectangle (3,2);
\path [pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=black!30]
(0,0) rectangle (3,2);
\tcbvignette{xmin=1cm,xmax=2.5cm,ymin=0.5cm,ymax=1.75cm}
\end{tikzpicture}

N 2016-04-22 /tcb/vig/lower left corner=(coordinates)  (style, initially 0,0)
Sets the lower left corner of a \tcbvignette→p.291. This style sets /tcb/vig/xmin and /tcb/vig/ymin.

N 2016-04-22 /tcb/vig/upper right corner=(coordinates)  (style, initially 1,1)
Sets the upper right corner of a \tcbvignette→p.291. This style sets /tcb/vig/xmax and /tcb/vig/ymax.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill [black!20] (0,0) rectangle (3,2);
\path [pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=black!30]
(0,0) rectangle (3,2);
\tcbvignette{lower left corner={1,0.5},
              upper right corner={2.5,1.75}}
\end{tikzpicture}

N 2016-04-22 /tcb/vig/inside node=(name)  (style, initially unset)
Placed the \tcbvignette→p.291 inside the node with the given ⟨name⟩. The outer limits of the vignette are adapted to the node geometry.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\node[minimum width=2cm,minimum height=1cm] (A) {Node A};
\tcbvignette{inside node=A}
\draw[very thick] (A.south west) rectangle (A.north east);
\end{tikzpicture}
\texttt{/tcb/vig/outside node=\textit{name}} \hspace{5cm} \text{(style, initially unset)}

Places the \texttt{\tcbvignette} \textsuperscript{P.291} outside the node with the given \textit{name}. The inner limits of the \texttt{vignette} are adapted to the node geometry.

\begin{tikzpicture}
  \node[minimum width=2cm,minimum height=1cm] (A) {Node A};
  \tcbvignette[outside node=A]
  \draw[very thick] (A.south west) rectangle (A.north east);
\end{tikzpicture}

\texttt{/tcb/vig/over node=\textit{name}} \hspace{5cm} \text{(style, initially unset)}

Places the \texttt{\tcbvignette} \textsuperscript{P.291} over the node with the given \textit{name}. The outer limits of the \texttt{vignette} are adapted to the node geometry, but are shifted to the outside by \texttt{/tcb/vig/over node offset}.

\begin{tikzpicture}
  \node[minimum width=2cm,minimum height=1cm] (A) {Node A};
  \tcbvignette[over node=A]
  \draw[very thick] (A.south west) rectangle (A.north east);
\end{tikzpicture}

\texttt{/tcb/vig/over node offset=\textit{length}} \hspace{5cm} \text{(no default, initially 0.1mm)}

Determines the shift value for \texttt{/tcb/vig/over node}. Note that \texttt{/tcb/vig/over node offset} has to be set before \texttt{/tcb/vig/over node} is used.

\texttt{/tcb/vig/north size=\textit{length}} \hspace{5cm} \text{(no default, initially 2mm)}

Sets the thickness of the north \texttt{vignette} part.

\begin{tikzpicture}
  \tcbvignette[north size=4mm]
\end{tikzpicture}

\texttt{/tcb/vig/south size=\textit{length}} \hspace{5cm} \text{(no default, initially 2mm)}

Sets the thickness of the south \texttt{vignette} part.

\begin{tikzpicture}
  \tcbvignette[south size=4mm]
\end{tikzpicture}

\texttt{/tcb/vig/east size=\textit{length}} \hspace{5cm} \text{(no default, initially 2mm)}

Sets the thickness of the east \texttt{vignette} part.

\begin{tikzpicture}
  \tcbvignette[east size=4mm]
\end{tikzpicture}

\texttt{/tcb/vig/west size=\textit{length}} \hspace{5cm} \text{(no default, initially 2mm)}

Sets the thickness of the west \texttt{vignette} part.

\begin{tikzpicture}
  \tcbvignette[west size=4mm]
\end{tikzpicture}
15.3 Generic Color and Style Settings

Sets TikZ \{style\} options for the north \textit{vignette} part.

Sets TikZ \{style\} options for the south \textit{vignette} part.

Sets TikZ \{style\} options for the east \textit{vignette} part.
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tcbvignette{west style={preaction={fill=black!20},
    pattern=checkerboard,
    pattern color=black!30}}
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tcbvignette{scope={transparency group,opacity=0.25}}
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tcbvignette{raised color=blue}
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tcbvignette{lowered color=green!75!black}
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tcbvignette{color from=red to blue!50}
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tcbvignette{base color=red!75!white}
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tcbvignette{color from=red to blue!50}
\end{tikzpicture}
Especially, if shadings or fadings are used, the drawn vignette graphs are displayed sometimes not as perfect as expected. Glitches and imperfections are very dependent on the previewer software. The \texttt{/tcb/vig/draw method} intends to give a choice of alternative drawing methods.

- \texttt{direct}: The vignette parts are drawn/filled by using a single Ti\textit{k}Z graph. This is the preferred (and default) method for solid color graphs.
- \texttt{clipped}: The vignette parts are drawn somewhat oversized and are clipped to the intended region. In combination with shadings and fadings this seems to give a better/different optical result (depends on the previewer).

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tcbvignette[color from=red to yellow]
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tcbvignette[color from=red to yellow,draw method=clipped]
\end{tikzpicture}

! This option is a stopgap and may be changed or preferably removed in future.

15.4 Generic Fading Settings

The \texttt{fadings} library of Ti\textit{k}Z \cite{24} is loaded automatically by the \texttt{vignette} library. Amongst others, the fadings \texttt{west}, \texttt{east}, \texttt{north}, and \texttt{south} are defined inside the \texttt{fadings} library.

The \texttt{vignette} library adds some more fadings called \texttt{semi west}, \texttt{semi east}, \texttt{semi north}, and \texttt{semi south}. These fadings are much \textit{weaker} than the normal fadings.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill [black!20] (0,0) rectangle (1,1);
\path [pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=black!30](0,0) rectangle (1,1);
\fill [path fading=semi west,blue] (0,0) rectangle (1,1);
\end{tikzpicture}

Comparison of the Fadings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>west</th>
<th>east</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>north</td>
<td>south</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>semi west</td>
<td>semi east</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>semi north</td>
<td>semi south</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill [black!20] (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\path [pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=black!30]
(-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\tcbvignette{fade in=blue}
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill [black!20] (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\path [pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=black!30]
(-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\tcbvignette{fade out=blue}
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill [black!20] (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\path [pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=black!30]
(-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\tcbvignette{semi fade in=blue}
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill [black!20] (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\path [pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=black!30]
(-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\tcbvignette{semi fade out=blue}
\end{tikzpicture}
It is possible to assign different fadings for each side of the vignette, if needed. Therefore, the fadings have to be applied individually with the four style options /tcb/vig/north style \textsuperscript{P.294}, /tcb/vig/south style \textsuperscript{P.294}, /tcb/vig/east style \textsuperscript{P.294}, and /tcb/vig/west style \textsuperscript{P.295}.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill [black!20] (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\path [pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=black!30] (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\tcbvignette{
    north style={blue,path fading=south},
    east style ={blue,path fading=semi west},
    south style={blue,path fading=semi north},
    west style ={blue,path fading=east}
}
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill [black!20] (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\path [pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=black!30] (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\tcbvignette{
    north style={blue,path fading=west},
    east style ={blue,path fading=south},
    south style={red,path fading=east},
    west style ={red,path fading=north}
}
\end{tikzpicture}
15.5 Vignette as Underlay

\tcb/underlay vignette = \{(options)\} \hspace{1cm} \text{(style, no default)}

This puts a \texttt{\tcbvignette} \textsuperscript{\textcopyright}P.\textsuperscript{291} with the given \texttt{\langle options\rangle} as \texttt{\tcb/underlay} \textsuperscript{\textcopyright}P.\textsuperscript{216} to a \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{\textcopyright}P.\textsuperscript{12}. The dimensions of the \textit{vignette} are matched to the dimensions of the \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{\textcopyright}P.\textsuperscript{12}. For example, \texttt{\tcb/leftrule} \textsuperscript{\textcopyright}P.\textsuperscript{40} is used as \texttt{\tcb/vig/west size} \textsuperscript{\textcopyright}P.\textsuperscript{293}. Also, \texttt{\tcb/colframe} \textsuperscript{\textcopyright}P.\textsuperscript{32} is used as \texttt{\tcb/vig/raised color} \textsuperscript{\textcopyright}P.\textsuperscript{295}.

For a \texttt{\tcb/breakable} \textsuperscript{\textcopyright}P.\textsuperscript{400} \texttt{tcolorbox}, the \textit{vignette} is also been broken. Alternatively, \texttt{\tcbvignette} \textsuperscript{\textcopyright}P.\textsuperscript{291} could be used directly inside an \texttt{\tcb/underlay} \textsuperscript{\textcopyright}P.\textsuperscript{216} with appropriate settings.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,size=small,sharp corners,  
    colback=green!10,colframe=green!50!black,  
    boxrule=2mm,tilterule=0mm,  
    title=My title,center title,fonttitle=\bfseries,  
    underlay vignette]  
This is a tcolorbox. \end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,size=small,arc=0pt,  
    colback=blue!10,colframe=blue,boxrule=2mm,  
    underlay vignette={size=1.5mm}]  
This is a tcolorbox. \end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,size=small,sharp corners,  
    colframe=red,interior hidden,boxrule=2mm,  
    colupper=white,center upper,fontupper=\bfseries,  
    underlay vignette]  
This is a tcolorbox. \end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,size=small,sharp corners,  
    colback=red!50!yellow,frame hidden,boxrule=2mm,  
    underlay vignette={color from=red!50!yellow to white,  
    draw method=clipped,size=2.1mm}]  
This is a tcolorbox. \end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{\tcb}[enhanced,sharp corners,colback=red!10,colframe=red] \{Test\}

\texttt{\tcb}[enhanced,sharp corners,colback=red!10,colframe=red,  
    underlay vignette] \{Test\}
This is a special style derived from \texttt{/tcb/underlay vignette} \footnote{P.~299}, where the frame color is shaded to create a soft raised frame impression.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,sharp corners,  
colback=green!10,  
colframe=green!50!black,  
size=small,boxrule=2mm,titlerule=0mm,  
title=My title,center title,fonttitle=\textbf,  
underlay raised shading vignette]  
This is a tcolorbox.  
\end{tcolorbox}

This style gives a similar effect as \texttt{/tcb/underlay raised shading vignette}, but a path fading is used here. Different optical impression are very previewer-dependent.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,sharp corners,  
colback=green!10,  
colframe=green!50!black,  
size=small,boxrule=2mm,titlerule=0mm,  
title=My title,center title,fonttitle=\textbf,  
underlay raised fading vignette]  
This is a tcolorbox.  
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a special style derived from \texttt{/tcb/underlay vignette} \footnote{P.~299}, where the frame color is shaded into the interior color.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,sharp corners,frame hidden,  
colback=green!10,  
colframe=green!50!black,  
size=small,boxrule=2mm,titlerule=0mm,  
underlay shade in vignette]  
This is a tcolorbox.  
\end{tcolorbox}
15.6 Vignette as Finish

\tcb/finish vignette = \{(options)\} \hspace{1cm} (style, no default)
This puts a \texttt{\textbackslash tcbvignette} → P.291 with the given \langle options\rangle as \texttt{\textbackslash tcb/finish} → P.218 to a \texttt{tcolorbox} → P.12. The default style settings create a raised frame impression by drawing black and white color parts with reduced opacity.

\begin{tcolorbox}[\texttt{\textbackslash enhanced, size=small, colback=green!10, colframe=green!50!black, boxrule=0.5mm, titlerule=0mm, title=My title, center title, fonttitle=\texttt{\textbackslash bfseries}, finish vignette=\{(size=1mm)\}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{\textbackslash tcbincludegraphics}[\texttt{\textbackslash blankest, width=3cm, finish vignette=\{(size=3mm)\}]{pink_marble.png}

\textbf{N 2016-04-22}
\texttt{\textbackslash tcb/finish raised fading vignette = \{(options)\}} \hspace{1cm} (style, no default)
This puts a \texttt{\textbackslash tcbvignette} → P.291 with the given \langle options\rangle as \texttt{\textbackslash tcb/finish} → P.218 to a \texttt{tcolorbox} → P.12. The default style settings create a soft raised frame impression by drawing fading black and white color parts.

\begin{tcolorbox}[\texttt{\textbackslash enhanced, size=small, colback=green!10, colframe=green!50!black, boxrule=0.5mm, titlerule=0mm, title=My title, center title, fonttitle=\texttt{\textbackslash bfseries}, finish raised fading vignette=\{(size=1mm)\}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{\textbackslash tcbincludegraphics}[\texttt{\textbackslash blankest, width=3cm, finish raised fading vignette=\{(size=3mm)\}]{pink_marble.png}
This puts a `\tcbvignette{}` with the given \textit{options} as `\tcb/finish` to a `tcolorbox`. The default style settings fade the box into white from inside to outside. Note that `\tcb/vig/over node` is used here. `\tcb/vig/over node offset` can be adapted to overlap the box more or less. The fade color can be set using `\tcb/vig/base color`.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,size=small, colback=green!10,colframe=green!50!black, boxrule=0.5mm,titlerule=0mm, title=My title,center title,fonttitle=\bfseries, finish fading vignette={size=2mm}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=blue!50!black,size=small, title=Example]
\tcbincludegraphics[blankest,width=3cm, finish fading vignette={base color=blue!50!black,size=3mm, over node offset=0.2mm}]{pink_marble.png}
\end{tcolorbox}
16.1 Concept of Rasters

A raster is used to align several colored boxes in a regular way. It can be seen as a far related counterpart to the matrix construct of TiKZ, but it differs in many aspects.

In principle, tcolorboxes are arranged in rows and columns when put inside a \texttt{tcbraster} environment. The boxes are fluently added to the raster like adding text to a paragraph. Especially, line/row breaks are done automatically and one cannot end a line/row ahead of schedule. Further, a raster is not restricted to a single page but may break into an arbitrary series of pages.
 Nine Boxes.
A raster arranges enclosed boxes in a regular way, mainly into rows and columns. The \texttt{(options)} are used to control the raster parameters and to set the properties for the enclosed boxes.

- The \texttt{raster} is only allowed to contain a series of \texttt{tcolorbox} environments or derived constructs. With some small restrictions, boxes created with \texttt{tcboxfit} can also be added. Boxes created with \texttt{tcbox} are not reasonable here, but may be used to a certain degree.
- Do not add anything else between the boxes inside the raster with exception of whitespace. Especially, do not use \texttt{\textbackslash \textbackslash} or \texttt{\textbackslash par} to end a row; row breaks are done automatically.
- The boxes inside a raster are numbered automatically. \texttt{\thetcbrasternum} may be used inside a box to access this number. The \LaTeX\ counter \texttt{tcbrastercolumn} holds the current column, the counter \texttt{tcbrasterrow} holds the current row, and the counter \texttt{tcbrasternum} holds the current box number.

\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=3, raster equal height,\tcbrasternum=\the\tcbrastercolumn,\the\tcbrasterrow, title={Box \thetcbrasternum}]
\begin{tcolorbox}First box\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Second box\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}This is a box\with a second line\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Another box\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}A box again\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}

\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=2, raster equal height=rows,\tcbrasternum=\the\tcbrastercolumn,\the\tcbrasterrow, title={Box \thetcbrasternum}]
\begin{tcolorbox}First box\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Second box\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}This is a box\with a second line\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Another box\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}A box again\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}
This is a special case of a `tcbraster`\textsuperscript{P.306} with the given \textit{(options)}.\footnote{P.306}

- Here, the enclosed boxes are created using \texttt{\textbackslash tcbitem}.
- There has to be at least one \texttt{\textbackslash tcbitem}.
- One cannot use anything else than \texttt{\textbackslash tcbitem} to add something to the \textit{raster}.

This leads to a very compact syntax.

\begin{tcbitemize}
\[raster\ columns=2, raster\ equal\ height=rows, 
size=small, colframe=red!50!black, colback=red!10!white, colbacktitle=red!50!white, 
title={Box \# \texttt{\textbackslash thetcbasternum}}] 
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbitem} First box 
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbitem} Second box 
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbitem} This is a box with a second line 
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbitem[colback=yellow, colbacktitle=yellow!50!black]} Another box 
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbitem} A box again
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
Box \# 1 & Box \# 2 \\
First box & Second box \\
\hline
Box \# 3 & Box \# 4 \\
This is a box with a second line & Another box \\
\hline
Box \# 5 & \\
A box again & \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

\texttt{tcbitemize} has more restrictions than \texttt{tcbraster}\textsuperscript{P.306}. Especially, the \texttt{/tcb/capture}\textsuperscript{P.105} mode has to be \texttt{minipage}. For example, \texttt{/tcb/fit}\textsuperscript{P.454} cannot be used safely. If \texttt{/tcb/fit}\textsuperscript{P.454} should be used, turn over to \texttt{tcbraster}\textsuperscript{P.306}.

\begin{tcbitemize}[\texttt{(options)}] 
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
\texttt{tcbitem}[\texttt{(options)}] \\
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbitem} & \texttt{\textbackslash tcbitem} \\
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbitem[\texttt{(options)}]} & \\
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbitem[\texttt{(options)}]} & \\
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbitem[\texttt{(options)}]} & \\
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
\texttt{tcbitemize} & \texttt{tcbitemize} \\
\texttt{used inside \texttt{tcbitemize} to create a new \texttt{tcolorbox}\textsuperscript{P.12} with the given \texttt{(options)}.} & \\
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbitemize} & \\
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbitemize} & \\
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbitemize} & \\
\end{tabular}
\end{center}
This is a convenience environment which combines a `tcolorbox` with an embedded `tcbraster`. The \( \langle \text{box options} \rangle \) are given to the outer \textit{tcolorbox}, while the \( \langle \text{raster options} \rangle \) are given to the embedded \textit{tcbraster}. This environment is especially useful for rasters inside rasters.

\begin{tcboxedraster}[raster columns=3, raster equal height,\[ raster options\] size=small, colframe=red!50!black, colback=red!10!white, colbacktitle=red!50!white, title={Box \# \texttt{\texttt{tcbrasternum}}}]{colback=yellow!10,fonttitle=\textbf\texttt{title=Boxed Raster}}
\begin{tcolorbox}First box\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Second box\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}This is a box with a second line\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Another box\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}A box again\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcboxedraster}

\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=2, raster equal height,\[ raster every box/.style={size=small, colframe=red!50!black, colback=red!10!white, valign=center, halign=center}]\]
\begin{tcolorbox}One\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Two\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcboxedraster}{blankest} \begin{tcolorbox}Three\end{tcolorbox} \begin{tcolorbox}Four\end{tcolorbox} \begin{tcolorbox}Five\end{tcolorbox} \begin{tcolorbox}Six\end{tcolorbox} \end{tcboxedraster}
\begin{tcolorbox}Seven\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}

\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=2, raster equal height,\[ raster options\] size=small, colframe=red!50!black, colback=red!10!white, valign=center, halign=center]}
\begin{tcolorbox}One\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Two\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Three\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Four\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Five\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Six\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Seven\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}
This is a convenience environment which combines a `tcolorbox`\textsuperscript{P.12} with an embedded `tcbitemize`\textsuperscript{P.307}. The \textit{box options} are given to the outer `tcolorbox`\textsuperscript{P.12}, while the \textit{raster options} are given to the embedded `tcbitemize`\textsuperscript{P.307}. This environment is especially useful for rasters inside rasters.

\begin{tcboxeditemize}[(raster options)]{⟨box options⟩}
\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=3, raster equal height, size=small, colframe=red!50!black, colback=red!10!white, colbacktitle=red!50!white,, title={Box \# \texttt{\thetcbrasternum}}]
{colback=yellow!10, fonttitle=\bfseries, title=Boxed Itemize}
\tcbitem First box
\tcbitem Second box
\tcbitem This is a box\ with a second line
\tcbitem Another box
\tcbitem A box again
\end{tcbraster}
\end{tcboxeditemize}
16.3 Option Keys of the Library

/tcb/raster columns=⟨number⟩ (no default, initially 2)

Sets the ⟨number⟩ of columns for a raster.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=3, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
\tcitem One
\tcitem Two
\tcitem Three
\tcitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=4, size=small,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white]
\tcitem One
\tcitem Two
\tcitem Three
\tcitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}

/tcb/raster rows=⟨number⟩ (no default, initially 2)

Sets the ⟨number⟩ of rows for a raster. Note that this is only relevant in connection with setting /tcb/raster height → P.312 to a value greater than 0pt. Then, it defines the number of rows per given height.

/tcb/raster width=⟨length⟩ (no default, initially \linewidth)

Sets the total raster width to the given ⟨length⟩. /tcb/raster left skip → P.313 and /tcb/raster right skip → P.313 are part of the total width. Note that both skip values are not changed by this option.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster width=\linewidth/2, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
\tcitem One
\tcitem Two
\tcitem Three
\tcitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}
/tcb/raster width flush left = \langle length \rangle 

Sets the total \texttt{/tcb/raster width} \texttt{P.310} to \texttt{\linewidth} and adapts \texttt{/tcb/raster left skip} \texttt{P.313} and \texttt{/tcb/raster right skip} \texttt{P.313} to place the raster on the left hand side with a visual width of the given \langle length \rangle.

\begin{tcbitemize}
  \tcbitem \texttt{raster width flush left=}\texttt{\linewidth/2, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white} \\
  \tcbitem One \\
  \tcbitem Two \\
  \tcbitem Three \\
  \tcbitem Four \\
\end{tcbitemize}

Note that the results of \texttt{/tcb/raster width} \texttt{P.310} and \texttt{/tcb/raster width flush left} look identical, but differ on technical side since the later always fills the available \texttt{\linewidth}.

/tcb/raster width center = \langle length \rangle 

Sets the total \texttt{/tcb/raster width} \texttt{P.310} to \texttt{\linewidth} and adapts \texttt{/tcb/raster left skip} \texttt{P.313} and \texttt{/tcb/raster right skip} \texttt{P.313} to center the raster with a visual width of the given \langle length \rangle.

\begin{tcbitemize}
  \tcbitem \texttt{raster width center=}\texttt{\linewidth/2, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white} \\
  \tcbitem One \\
  \tcbitem Two \\
  \tcbitem Three \\
  \tcbitem Four \\
\end{tcbitemize}

/tcb/raster width flush right = \langle length \rangle 

Sets the total \texttt{/tcb/raster width} \texttt{P.310} to \texttt{\linewidth} and adapts \texttt{/tcb/raster left skip} \texttt{P.313} and \texttt{/tcb/raster right skip} \texttt{P.313} to place the raster on the right hand side with a visual width of the given \langle length \rangle.

\begin{tcbitemize}
  \tcbitem \texttt{raster width flush right=}\texttt{\linewidth/2, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white} \\
  \tcbitem One \\
  \tcbitem Two \\
  \tcbitem Three \\
  \tcbitem Four \\
\end{tcbitemize}
/tcb/raster height=(length)  (no default, initially 0pt)

Sets the raster height per /tcb/raster rows\textsuperscript{P.310} to the given \langle length\rangle. This forces an appropriate height for the enclosed boxes. /tcb/raster before skip and /tcb/raster after skip are not part of this calculation. If the \langle length\rangle is set to 0pt, this feature is deactivated.

\begin{tcbitemize}[
  raster height=4cm, raster rows=2, size=small, colframe=red!50!black, colback=red!10!white]
  \tcbitem One
  \tcbitem Two
  \tcbitem[enhanced, finish={\draw[blue,very thick,\rightarrow] (frame.south) -- node[right,pos=.75]{4cm} +(0,4); }]
    Three
  \tcbitem Four
  \tcbitem Five
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}[
  raster equal skip=4mm, size=small, colframe=red!50!black, colback=red!10!white]
  \tcbitem One
  \tcbitem Two
  \tcbitem Three
  \tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}

/tcb/raster before skip=(glue)  (no default, initially 2mm)

Space of the given \langle glue\rangle is inserted vertically before the raster. This space is discardable.

\begin{tcbitemize}[
  raster equal skip=4mm, size=small, colframe=red!50!black, colback=red!10!white]
  \tcbitem One
  \tcbitem Two
  \tcbitem Three
  \tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}

/tcb/raster after skip=(glue)  (no default, initially 2mm)

Space of the given \langle glue\rangle is inserted vertically after the raster. This space is discardable.

/tcb/raster equal skip=(length)  (style, no default)

Shortcut to set /tcb/raster before skip, /tcb/raster after skip, /tcb/raster column skip\textsuperscript{P.313}, and /tcb/raster row skip\textsuperscript{P.313} to the same \langle length\rangle value.
/tcb/raster left skip=(length) \hspace{3em} \text{(no default, initially 0pt)}

Space of the given \textit{length} is inserted horizontally left of the \textit{raster}.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster left skip=2cm, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
\tcbitem One
\tcbitem Two
\tcbitem Three
\tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
One & Two \\
\hline
Three & Four \\
\hline
\end{tabular}

/tcb/raster right skip=(length) \hspace{3em} \text{(no default, initially 0pt)}

Space of the given \textit{length} is inserted horizontally right of the \textit{raster}.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster right skip=2cm, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
\tcbitem One
\tcbitem Two
\tcbitem Three
\tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
One & Two \\
\hline
Three & Four \\
\hline
\end{tabular}

/tcb/raster column skip=(length) \hspace{3em} \text{(no default, initially 2mm)}

Space of the given \textit{length} is inserted horizontally between the columns.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster column skip=2cm, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
\tcbitem One
\tcbitem Two
\tcbitem Three
\tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
One & Two \\
\hline
Three & Four \\
\hline
\end{tabular}

/tcb/raster row skip=(length) \hspace{3em} \text{(no default, initially 2mm)}

Space of the given \textit{length} is inserted vertically between the rows.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster row skip=0pt, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
\tcbitem One
\tcbitem Two
\tcbitem Three
\tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
One & Two \\
\hline
Three & Four \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
/tcb/raster halign=⟨alignment⟩ (no default, initially left)

Defines the horizontal alignment for the boxes of the rows of a raster, if these rows are not completely filled (mainly: the last one).

Feasible values for ⟨alignment⟩ are:
- left: align to the left side,
- center: align to the center,
- right: align to the right side.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster halign=center,
  size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
  \tcitem One
  \tcitem Two
  \tcitem Three
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster valign=top, raster columns=3,
  size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
  \tcitem One
  \tcitem Two
  \tcitem Three
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster valign=center, raster columns=3,
  size=small,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white]
  \tcitem One
  \tcitem Two
  \tcitem Three
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster valign=bottom, raster columns=3,
  size=small,colframe=green!50!black,colback=green!10!white]
  \tcitem One
  \tcitem Two
  \tcitem Three
\end{tcbitemize}

/tcb/raster valign=⟨alignment⟩ (no default, initially center)

Defines the vertical alignment for the boxes of a row, if the boxes do not have equal height. This sets the /tcb/box align \textsuperscript{P.91} option.

Feasible values for ⟨alignment⟩ are:
- top: align to the top side,
- center: align to the center,
- bottom: align to the bottom side.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster valign=top, raster columns=3,
  size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
  \tcitem \Huge One
  \tcitem \Large Two
  \tcitem Three
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster valign=center, raster columns=3,
  size=small,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white]
  \tcitem \Huge One
  \tcitem \Large Two
  \tcitem Three
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster valign=bottom, raster columns=3,
  size=small,colframe=green!50!black,colback=green!10!white]
  \tcitem \Huge One
  \tcitem \Large Two
  \tcitem Three
\end{tcbitemize}
/tcb/raster equal height=(type) (default \texttt{all}, initially \texttt{none})

Puts the enclosed boxes into a common /tcb/equal height group \(^{\text{P.66}}\). The \langle id\rangle of the equal height group is chosen automatically, but it may be set manually by /tcb/raster equal height group. Also see /tcb/minimum for current equal height group \(^{\text{P.67}}\).

Feasible values for \langle type\rangle are:
- \texttt{none}: no equal height setting,
- \texttt{rows}: all boxes in a row are set to equal height,
- \texttt{all}: all boxes in the raster are set to equal height.

Note that you have to compile twice to see changes.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height=rows, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
\item One
\item \Huge Two
\item Three
\item Four
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}
\item One
\item \Huge Two
\item Three
\item Four
\end{tcbitemize}

/tcb/raster equal height group=(id) (no default)

Overwrites the automatically chosen id with the given \langle id\rangle. If this is used to share a common height between the raster and another raster or box, the /tcb/raster equal height option should be set to \texttt{all}.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height=raster-manual-id]
\item One
\item \Huge Two
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}
\item One
\item \Huge Two
\end{tcbitemize}
Enforces the raster size computations onto the enclosed boxes. If set to `false`, individual settings can be used (for the better or worse).

```
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster force size=false, raster halign=center,
    size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
  \tcbitem One
  \tcbitem Two
  \tcbitem[add to width=-3cm] Three
  \tcbitem[add to width=-3cm] Four
  \tcbitem[add to width=-3cm] Five
  \tcbitem[add to width=3cm] Six
\end{tcbitemize}
```

Sets all raster settings back to their default values. Note that `/tcb/reset` does not execute this option. Style settings like `/tcb/raster odd column` etc. are not touched by `/tcb/raster reset`.

### 16.4 Adding Styles for Specific Boxes

The following styles can be defined to address certain boxes inside a `raster`. Note that such style definitions are not removed by `/tcb/reset` or `/tcb/raster reset`. The style definitions are used in the order given below.

#### /tcb/raster every box
This style is used for every box.

#### /tcb/raster odd column
This style is used for every box in an odd column.

```
\begin{tcbitemize}[size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white,\ 
    raster odd column/.style={colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white}]
  \tcbitem One
  \tcbitem Two
  \tcbitem Three
  \tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}
```

#### /tcb/raster even column
This style is used for every box in an even column.

#### /tcb/raster column n
This style is used for every box in the n-th column. n has to be replaced by a number.

#### /tcb/raster odd row
This style is used for every box in an odd row.
This style is used for every box in an even row.

This style is used for every box in the $m$-th row. $m$ has to be replaced by a number.

\begin{tcbitemize}[size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white, raster row 2/.style={colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white}]
  \tcitem One
  \tcitem Two
  \tcitem Three
  \tcitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}

This style is used for every box with an odd number.

This style is used for every box with an even number.

\begin{tcbitemize}[size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white, raster even number/.style={colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white}]
  \tcitem One
  \tcitem Two
  \tcitem Three
  \tcitem Four
  \tcitem Five
  \tcitem Six
\end{tcbitemize}

This style is used for the box in the $m$-th row and $n$-th column. $m$ and $n$ have to be replaced by numbers.

This style is used for the box with number $n$. $n$ has to be replaced by a number.

\begin{tcbitemize}[size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white, raster number 4/.style={colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white}]
  \tcitem One
  \tcitem Two
  \tcitem Three
  \tcitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}
16.5 Combining Columns or Rows

The option \texttt{/tcb/raster multicolumn=\langle number \rangle} (no default, initially unset) This option has to be set inside the option list of a \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{P.12} inside a \texttt{tcbraster} \textsuperscript{P.306} or inside \texttt{\tcbititem} \textsuperscript{P.307} inside \texttt{tcbititemize} \textsuperscript{P.307}. It merges the given \langle number \rangle of boxes into one single box on the same line. The resulting box gets the \texttt{\thetcbrasternum} of the first box. If there are not enough boxes available on the current line, this option is ignored and a warning is given.

\begin{tcbitemize}
\raster equal height=rows,raster columns=3,
title=\thetcbrasternum,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white
\tcbititem[colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white,raster multicolumn=1]
multicolumn=1
\tcbititem
\tcbititem
\tcbititem[colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white,raster multicolumn=2]
multicolumn=2
\tcbititem
\tcbititem[colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white,raster multicolumn=3]
multicolumn=3
\tcbititem
\tcbititem[colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white,raster multicolumn=2]
multicolumn=2
\end{tcbitemize}

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multicolumn=1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multicolumn=2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multicolumn=3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multicolumn=2</td>
<td>multicolumn=2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

318
This option has to be set inside the option list of a \texttt{tcolorbox} \rightarrow \textit{P. 12} inside a \texttt{tcbraster} \rightarrow \textit{P. 306} or inside \texttt{\textbackslash tcbitem} \rightarrow \textit{P. 307} inside \texttt{tcbitemize} \rightarrow \textit{P. 307}. This option not really merges boxes, but simply sizes the current box to fit the space of \langle number \rangle rows.

\texttt{/tcb/raster multirow=\langle number \rangle} (no default, initially unset)

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster rows=3,raster columns=3,raster height=6cm, raster every box/.style={colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white}]
  \tcbitem
  \tcbitem
  \tcbitem
  \tcbitem[colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white,raster multirow=2]
  \tcbitem[raster multicolumn=2,raster multirow=2,blankest]
  \begin{tcbitemize}[raster rows=2,raster columns=2,raster height=\texttt{tcbtextheight}]
    \tcbitem
    \tcbitem
    \tcbitem
    \tcbitem
  \end{tcbitemize}
\end{tcbitemize}

\texttt{/tcb/raster multirow} needs \texttt{/tcb/raster height} \rightarrow \textit{P. 312} to be set. How to achieve a similar result for boxes without fixed \texttt{/tcb/raster height} \rightarrow \textit{P. 312} is shown afterwards.

\begin{Verbatim}
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster rows=3,raster columns=3,raster height=6cm, raster every box/.style={colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white}]
  \tcbitem
  \tcbitem
  \tcbitem
  \tcbitem[colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white,raster multirow=2]
  \tcbitem[raster multicolumn=2,raster multirow=2,blankest]
  \begin{tcbitemize}[raster rows=2,raster columns=2,raster height=\texttt{tcbtextheight}]
    \tcbitem
    \tcbitem
    \tcbitem
    \tcbitem
  \end{tcbitemize}
\end{tcbitemize}
\end{Verbatim}
For rasters without fixed \texttt{/tcb/raster height} \textsuperscript{P.312}, \texttt{/tcb/raster multirow} \textsuperscript{P.319} cannot be used. Note that \texttt{\textbackslash tcb\textbackslash textheight} \textsuperscript{P.167} also cannot be used like in the previous example. But, with combination of \texttt{/tcb/raster equal height} \textsuperscript{P.315} and \texttt{/tcb/space to} \textsuperscript{P.64}, a similar effect can be created:

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=3,raster equal height=rows, raster every box/.style={colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white}]
\tcbitem
\tcbitem
\tcbitem[colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white]
\lipsum[2]
\tcbitem[raster multicolumn=2,blankest,space to=\myspace]
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=2]
\tcbitem
\tcbitem\[height=\myspace\]
\end{tcbitemize}
\end{tcbitemize}


\begin{tcbitemize}
\tcbitem
\tcbitem
\tcbitem[height=\myspace]
\end{tcbitemize}
16.6 Rasters inside Rasters

A raster inside a raster cannot be used directly, because a raster can only contain a tcolorbox or something derived from a tcolorbox. So, a raster can be put inside a tcolorbox inside a raster.

Some examples for such constructions can be found at tcboxedraster \textsuperscript{P.308}, /tcb/raster multicolumn \textsuperscript{P.318}, /tcb/raster multirow \textsuperscript{P.319}.

16.6.1 Raster Setup

The intermediating tcolorbox \textsuperscript{P.12} can be made invisible by using /tcb/blankest \textsuperscript{P.266}.

\begin{tcbraster}[raster equal height=rows, raster every box/.style={colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white}]
\begin{tcolorbox}[blankest]
\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=1]
\begin{tcolorbox}One\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Two\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}raster+tcolorbox+raster\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}

\begin{tcbraster}[raster equal height=rows, raster every box/.style={colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white}]
\begin{tcboxedraster}[raster columns=1]{blankest}
\begin{tcolorbox}One\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Two\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcboxedraster}
\begin{tcolorbox}raster+tcboxedraster\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height=rows, raster every box/.style={colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white}]
\tcbitem[blankest]
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=1]
\tcbitem One
\tcbitem Two
\end{tcbitemize}
\tcbitem{tcbitemize+tcbitem+tcbitemize}
\end{tcbitemize}
16.6.2 Placing Spaces

If the heights of boxes inside staggered rasters should be matched, the space has to be distributed accordingly.

- For fixed height boxes/rasters using `/tcb/raster height`\(^*\)P.312, the height of boxes is available by `\tcbtextheight`\(^*\)P.167. This can be used to size deeper layered boxes/rasters.

- For boxes/rasters layed out using `/tcb/raster equal height`\(^*\)P.315, space can be distributed by `/tcb/space to`\(^*\)P.64. It can take several compilations until all spaces are distributed correctly.

\begin{tcbitemize}
[raster rows=2,raster height=6cm,
raster every box/.style={colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white}]
\tcbitem[blankest]
\begin{tcbitemize}
[raster columns=1,raster rows=2,raster height=\tcbtextheight]
\tcbitem One
\tcbitem Two
\end{tcbitemize}
\tcbitem This is a fixed height box.
\tcbitem Three
\tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}

One

Two

This is a fixed height box.

Three

Four
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=4,raster rows=4,raster height=0.8\linewidth,  rasterevery box/.style={size=small,beamer,  colframe=blue!75!yellow,colback=red!75!yellow!20,  center title,title=Box}]
  \textbf{One}
  \textbf{Two}
  \textbf{Three}
  \textbf{Four}
  \begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=1,raster rows=2,raster height=\tcbtextheight]
    \textbf{Twelve}
    \textbf{Eleven}
  \end{tcbitemize}
\end{tcbitemize}

This is an example with fixed height boxes.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=1,raster rows=2,raster height=\tcbtextheight]
  \textbf{Five}
  \textbf{Six}
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}
  \textbf{Ten}
  \textbf{Nine}
  \textbf{Eight}
  \textbf{Seven}
\end{tcbitemize}
One

This box will adapt its height.


This is a flexible height box.

One

This box will adapt its height.
17 Libraries \texttt{listings}, \texttt{listingsutf8}, and \texttt{minted}

17.1 Loading the Libraries

In contrast to other \texttt{tcolorbox} libraries, the libraries \texttt{listings}, \texttt{listingsutf8}, and \texttt{minted} are concurrent in the sense that they all do the same thing, i.e. displaying listings with or without typesetting the listing in \LaTeX parallel. The difference is the underlying \LaTeX package which does the core job for displaying a listing. So, typically, you need just one of these libraries. If you do not have a clue which one of them you should use and you are using \texttt{pdflatex}, you should take \texttt{listingsutf8}. If you are using \texttt{xelatex} or \texttt{lualatex}, you should take \texttt{listings} as \texttt{xelatex} and \texttt{lualatex} are not compatible with \texttt{listingsutf8}.

The order in which the libraries are included influences the default settings and the \texttt{/tcb/reset} behavior. The settings of a later loaded library overwrite the settings of a previous loaded library. A library is never loaded twice.

17.1.1 Loading \texttt{listings}

This library uses the package \texttt{listings} to typeset listings. It is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbuselibrary{listings}
\end{verbatim}

This also loads the package \texttt{listings}.

The \texttt{/tcb/listing engine} is set to \texttt{listings} by the library. To reactivate this setting, if overwritten by other libraries, use

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{listing engine=listings}
\end{verbatim}

17.1.2 Loading \texttt{listingsutf8}

This library is not needed (and troublesome) when using Xe\LaTeX or Lua\LaTeX. Therefore, loading this library is automatically replaced by loading \texttt{listings} only, if pdf\LaTeX is not used.

To extend \texttt{listings} for UTF-8 encoded sources, you can use the support from the package \texttt{listingsutf8} by loading the library variant \texttt{listingsutf8}.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbuselibrary{listingsutf8}
\tcbset{listing utf8=latin1} % optional; 'latin1' is the default.
\end{verbatim}

This also loads the library \texttt{listings} and the packages \texttt{listings} and \texttt{listingsutf8}.

The \texttt{/tcb/listing engine} is set to \texttt{listings} by the library. To reactivate this setting, if overwritten by other libraries, use

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{listing engine=listings}
\end{verbatim}
17.1.3 Loading \texttt{minted}

This library uses the package \texttt{minted} [14] to typeset listings. It is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\begin{minted}{listing}{
123
}

This also loads the package \texttt{minted} [14].

The \texttt{minted} package uses the external tool \texttt{Pygments} [16] to apply syntax highlighting. It has to be installed and set up, before the library can be used, see [14] and [16]. The \texttt{tcolorbox} \texttt{\textsuperscript{P.12}} library \texttt{\textsuperscript{P.12}} does not work, if the package \texttt{minted} [14] does not work.

The /tcb/listing engine \texttt{\textsuperscript{P.341}} is set to \texttt{minted} by the library. To reactivate this setting, if overwritten by other libraries, use

\begin{minted}{listing}{
123
}

17.2 Common Macros of the Libraries

\begin{minted}{(options)}{(environment content)}
\end{minted}

Creates a colored box based on a \texttt{tcolorbox} \texttt{\textsuperscript{P.12}}. Controlled by the given \texttt{(options)}, the environment content is typeset normally and/or as a listing. Furthermore, the \texttt{(options)} control appearance and functions of the \texttt{tcolorbox} \texttt{\textsuperscript{P.12}}. By default, the listing is interpreted as a \LaTeX\ listing.

\begin{minted}{(colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black)}{(colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black)}
This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code and in compiled form.
\end{minted}

This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code and in compiled form.

This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code and in compiled form.
This is source code in another language (XML)

```xml
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<project name="Package tcolorbox" default="documentation" basedir="."/>
<description>
  Apache Ant build file (http://ant.apache.org/)
</description>
</project>
```

This is source code in another language (XML)

```xml
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<project name="Package tcolorbox" default="documentation" basedir="."/>
<description>
  Apache Ant build file (http://ant.apache.org/)
</description>
</project>
```

This box is as wide as needed (listing only !!)

```latex
\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill[red] (0,0) rectangle (1,1);
\end{tikzpicture}
```
\begin{tcboutputlisting}
\end{tcboutputlisting}

Saves the environment content to a file which is named by the key value of \texttt{/tcb/listing file} \(^{P.341}\). Later, this file can be loaded by \texttt{tcbinputlisting} or \texttt{tcbuselistingtext} or \texttt{tcbuselistinglisting}.

\begin{tcboutputlisting}
This \texttt{textbf{text}} is written to a standardized file for later usage.
\end{tcboutputlisting}

\texttt{tcbinputlisting}\{\texttt{(options)}\}

Creates a colored boxed based on a \texttt{tcolorbox} \(^{P.12}\). The text content is read from a file named by the key value of \texttt{/tcb/listing file} \(^{P.341}\). Apart from that, the function is equal to that of \texttt{tcblisting} \(^{P.327}\).

\begin{tcbinputlisting}\{\texttt{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,text only}\}
\end{tcbinputlisting}
\begin{tcbinputlisting}\{\texttt{colback=green!5,colframe=green!75!black,listing only}\}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill[\texttt{red}] (0,0) rectangle (1,1);
\end{tikzpicture}

\texttt{tcbuselistingtext}

Loads text from a file named by the key value of \texttt{/tcb/listing file} \(^{P.341}\).

\begin{tcbuselistingtext}
\end{tcbuselistingtext}

\texttt{tcbuselistinglisting}

Typesets text as listing from a file named by the key value of \texttt{/tcb/listing file} \(^{P.341}\).

\begin{tcbuselistinglisting}
\end{tcbuselistinglisting}

\texttt{tcbusetemplisting}

Typesets text as listing from a temporary file which was written by \texttt{tcbwritetemp} \(^{P.144}\).
17.3 Producing \texttt{tcblisting} Environments

If a new sort of \texttt{tcblisting} environments should be created with one optional argument only, one is highly recommended to use \texttt{\textbackslash DeclareTCListing} or \texttt{\textbackslash NewTCListing} instead of \texttt{\textbackslash newtcblisting} to avoid content scanning problems.

\texttt{\textbackslash newtcblisting}[\langle \textit{init options} \rangle]\{\langle \textit{name} \rangle\}\{\langle \textit{number} \rangle\}\{\langle \textit{default} \rangle\}\{\langle \textit{options} \rangle\}

Creates a new environment \langle \textit{name} \rangle based on \texttt{tcblisting}. Basically, \texttt{\textbackslash newtcblisting} operates like \texttt{\textbackslash newenvironment}. This means, the new environment \langle \textit{name} \rangle optionally takes \langle \textit{number} \rangle arguments, where \langle \textit{default} \rangle is the default value for the optional first argument. The \langle \textit{options} \rangle are given to the underlying \texttt{tcblisting}. Note that \texttt{/tcb/savedelimiter} is set to the given \langle \textit{name} \rangle automatically. The \langle \textit{init options} \rangle allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 124.

\begin{verbatim}
\newtcblisting{mybox}{\%
  colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{mybox}
  This is my \LaTeX\ box.
\end{mybox}
\end{verbatim}

This is my \LaTeX\ box.

\begin{verbatim}
\newtcblisting{mybox}[1]{\%
  colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,
  fonttitle=\bfseries,
  title={#1}}
\begin{mybox}{Listing Box}
  This is my \LaTeX\ box.
\end{mybox}
\end{verbatim}

Listing Box

This is my \LaTeX\ box.

\begin{verbatim}
\newtcblisting{mybox}[2][]{\%
  colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,
  fonttitle=\bfseries,
  title={#2},#1}
\begin{mybox}{[listing only]}
  \{Listing Box\}
  This is my \LaTeX\ box.
\end{mybox}
\end{verbatim}

Listing Box

This is my \LaTeX\ box.

\begin{verbatim}
\newtcblisting{mybox}[listing side text]{\%
  colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,
  fonttitle=\bfseries,
  title={#2},#1}
\begin{mybox}{[listing side text]}
  \{Listing Box\}
  This is my \LaTeX\ box.
\end{mybox}
\end{verbatim}

Listing Box

This is my \LaTeX\ box.

This is my \LaTeX\ box.
Definition in the preamble:

\newtcblisting{auto counter}{mycbox}[1]{%
colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
title=Listing \thetcbcounter: #1}

\begin{mycbox}{Listing Box}
This is my \LaTeX\ box.
\end{mycbox}

\renewtcblisting[\{init options\}]{\{name\}}{\{number\}}{\{default\}}{\{options\}}

Operates like \newtcblisting \textsuperscript{P.330}, but based on \renewenvironment instead of \newenvironment. An existing environment is redefined.
\NewTCBListing\[\begin{init options}\{\langle name\rangle\}\{\langle specification\rangle\}\{\langle options\rangle\}\end{init options}\]

Creates a new environment \langle name\rangle based on \texttt{tcblisting}\textsuperscript{P.327}.

Basically, \texttt{\NewTCBListing} operates like \texttt{\NewDocumentEnvironment}. This means, the new environment \langle name\rangle is constructed with the given argument \langle specification\rangle. An error is issued if \langle name\rangle has already been defined. The \langle options\rangle are given to the underlying \texttt{tcblisting}\textsuperscript{P.327}.

Note that \texttt{/tcb/savedelimiter}\textsuperscript{P.31} is set to the given \langle name\rangle automatically.

The \langle init options\rangle allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 124.

\begin{example}
\begin{verbatim}
\NewTCBListing{mybox}{ s O{} m }{%
colback=red!5!white,
colframe=red!75!black,
fonttitle=\bfseries,
IfBooleanTF={#1}%
\{listing side text\}
\{text side listing\},
title={#3},#2}
\begin{mybox}{Listing Box}
This is my \LaTeX\ box.
\end{mybox}
\bigskip
\begin{mybox}{Listing Box}
This is my \LaTeX\ box.\end{mybox} \bigskip
\end{verbatim}
\end{example}

\RenewTCBListing\[\begin{init options}\{\langle name\rangle\}\{\langle specification\rangle\}\{\langle options\rangle\}\end{init options}\]

Operates like \texttt{\NewTCBListing}, but based on \texttt{\RenewDocumentEnvironment} instead of \texttt{\NewDocumentEnvironment}. An existing environment is redefined.

\ProvideTCBListing\[\begin{init options}\{\langle name\rangle\}\{\langle specification\rangle\}\{\langle options\rangle\}\end{init options}\]

Operates like \texttt{\NewTCBListing}, but based on \texttt{\ProvideDocumentEnvironment} instead of \texttt{\NewDocumentEnvironment}. The environment \langle name\rangle is only created if it is not already defined.

\DeclareTCBListing\[\begin{init options}\{\langle name\rangle\}\{\langle specification\rangle\}\{\langle options\rangle\}\end{init options}\]

Operates like \texttt{\NewTCBListing}, but based on \texttt{\DeclareDocumentEnvironment} instead of \texttt{\NewDocumentEnvironment}. The new environment is always created, irrespective of an already existing environment with the same name.

332
With date of 2018-05-12, the \texttt{xparse} [15] package changed the argument collection process (now part of the \LaTeX kernel). Spaces are ignored which leads to a serious change for listing environments ending with an optional argument like \texttt{O{}}. The former behavior of respecting spaces can be preserved by adding a «!». Note that the following code uses \texttt{!O{}} now.

- For older \texttt{xparse} versions, the following code is correct when using \texttt{O{}}.
- For \texttt{xparse} of 2018-05-12, only the first two examples of the following code using \texttt{O{}} are really «good» – all others do not work.
- For \texttt{xparse} of 2018-05-12 and later, the following code is correct when using \texttt{!O{}}.

\begin{verbatim}
\DeclareTCLBListing{mybox}{ !O{} }{listing only,#1}
\begin{mybox}[colframe=red]
good
\end{mybox}

\begin{mybox}[colframe=red] \good \end{mybox}

\begin{mybox}
\good
\end{mybox}

\begin{mybox} \good \end{mybox}

\begin{mybox} \bad! \end{mybox}

\begin{mybox} \good \end{mybox}

\begin{mybox} \bad! \end{mybox}
\end{verbatim}
### 17.4 Producing \texttt{tcbinputlisting} Commands

\texttt{\textbackslash newtcbinputlisting\(\{\langle \text{init options}\rangle\}\{\langle \text{name}\rangle\}\{(\langle \text{number}\rangle)\}\{(\langle \text{default}\rangle)\}\{(\langle \text{options}\rangle)\}\)}

Creates a new macro \(\langle \text{name}\rangle\) based on \texttt{tcbinputlisting} \footnote{P.329}. Basically, \texttt{\textbackslash newtcbinputlisting} operates like \texttt{\newcommand}. The new macro \(\langle \text{name}\rangle\) optionally takes \(\langle \text{number}\rangle\) arguments, where \(\langle \text{default}\rangle\) is the default value for the optional first argument. The \(\langle \text{options}\rangle\) are given to the underlying \texttt{tcbinputlisting} \footnote{P.329}. The \(\langle \text{init options}\rangle\) allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 124.

\begin{verbatim}
\newtcbinputlisting[use counter from=mycbox]{\mylisting}[2][]{%
   listing file={#2},
   title=Listing (\thetcbcounter) of \texttt{#2},
   colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
   listing only,breakable,#1}
\mylisting[before upper={\textit{This is the included file content:}}]
   {\jobname.tcbtemp}
\end{verbatim}

Listing (2) of tcolorbox.tcbtemp

This is the included file content:

\begin{verbatim}
\newtcbinputlisting[use counter from=mycbox]{\mylisting}[2][]{%
   listing file={#2},
   title=Listing (\thetcbcounter) of \texttt{#2},
   colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
   listing only,breakable,#1}
\mylisting[before upper={\textit{This is the included file content:}}]
   {\jobname.tcbtemp}
\end{verbatim}

Listing (3) of tcolorbox.tcbtemp

This is the included file content:

\begin{verbatim}
\newtcbinputlisting[use counter from=mycbox]{\mylisting}[2][]{%
   listing engine=minted,minted language=latex,minted style=colorful,
   listing file={#2},
   title=Listing (\thetcbcounter) of \texttt{#2},
   colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
   listing only,breakable,#1}
\mylisting[before upper={\textit{This is the included file content:}}]
   {\jobname.tcbtemp}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\textbackslash renewtcbinputlisting\(\{\langle \text{init options}\rangle\}\{\langle \text{name}\rangle\}\{(\langle \text{number}\rangle)\}\{(\langle \text{default}\rangle)\}\{(\langle \text{options}\rangle)\}\)}

Operates like \texttt{\textbackslash newtcbinputlisting}, but based on \texttt{\renewcommand} instead of \texttt{\newcommand}. An existing macro is redefined.
\NewTCBInputListing\{\langle init options\rangle\}\{\langle name\rangle\}\{\langle specification\rangle\}\{\langle options\rangle\}

Creates a new command \langle name\rangle based on \texttt{tcbinputlisting}→P.329. Basically, \NewTCBInputListing operates like \texttt{NewDocumentCommand}. This means, the new command \langle name\rangle is constructed with the given argument \langle specification\rangle. An error is issued if \langle name\rangle has already been defined. The \langle options\rangle are given to the underlying \texttt{tcbinputlisting}→P.329.

The \langle init options\rangle allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 124.

\RenewTCBInputListing\{\langle init options\rangle\}\{\langle name\rangle\}\{\langle specification\rangle\}\{\langle options\rangle\}

Operates like \NewTCBInputListing, but based on \texttt{RenewDocumentCommand} instead of \texttt{NewDocumentCommand}. An existing command is redefined.

\ProvideTCBInputListing\{\langle init options\rangle\}\{\langle name\rangle\}\{\langle specification\rangle\}\{\langle options\rangle\}

Operates like \NewTCBInputListing, but based on \texttt{ProvideDocumentCommand} instead of \texttt{NewDocumentCommand}. The command \langle name\rangle is only created if it is not already defined.

\DeclareTCBInputListing\{\langle init options\rangle\}\{\langle name\rangle\}\{\langle specification\rangle\}\{\langle options\rangle\}

Operates like \NewTCBInputListing, but based on \texttt{DeclareDocumentCommand} instead of \texttt{NewDocumentCommand}. The new command is always created, irrespective of an already existing command with the same name.
17.5 Option Keys of the \textbf{listings} Library

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{/tcb/listing options}=(key list) 
  \textit{(no default, initially style=tcblatex)}
  \begin{itemize}
  \item Sets the options from the package \texttt{listings} \cite{7} which are used during typesetting of the listing. For \LaTeX\ listings, there is a predefined \texttt{listings} style named \texttt{tcblatex} which can be used.
  \end{itemize}
\end{itemize}

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!25,left=6mm, listing options={style=tcblatex,numbers=left,numberstyle={\tiny\color{red!75!black}}}}
This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code and in compiled form. Additionally, we use line numbers here.
\end{tcblisting}

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{/tcb/no listing options} 
  \textit{(no value, initially unset)}
  \begin{itemize}
  \item Abbreviation for \texttt{listing options={}}. This removes all options for the \texttt{listings} package. This includes the \texttt{tcblisting} \textit{→} \texttt{P.327} standard style \texttt{tcblatex} and the encoding presets. Use this option, if you want to set the \texttt{listings} options outside of \texttt{tcblisting} \textit{→} \texttt{P.327}, e.g. globally in the preamble.
  \end{itemize}
\end{itemize}

\begin{tcblisting}{no listing options}
All \textit{listings} options removed.
\end{tcblisting}

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{/tcb/listing style}=(style) 
  \textit{(no default, initially tcblatex)}
  \begin{itemize}
  \item Abbreviation for \texttt{listing options={style=...}}. This key sets a \texttt{(style)} for the \texttt{listings} package, see \cite{7}. For \LaTeX\, there is a predefined style named \texttt{tcblatex}.
  \end{itemize}
\end{itemize}

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black, listing style=tcblatex}
Here, we use the predefined style.
\end{tcblisting}
/tcb/listing inputencoding=(encoding) (no default, initially \inputencodingname)

Sets the input encoding value for the predefined listing style tcblatex and
tcbdocumentation from the library \documentclass. The initial value is derived
from the package inputenc if used.

/tcb/listing remove caption=true|false (default true, initially true)

If set to true, some part of the caption building code of the listings package is silenced to
prevent some unwanted interaction with the hyperref package resulting in additional vertical
space. If set to false, the listings package code is kept unchanged. Note that listings
outside tcblisting \p.327 and tcbinputlisting \p.329 are always processed normally.
Typically, a user is not expected to use this key at all.

/tcb/every listing line=(text) (no default, initially unset/empty)

Inserts some \langle text \rangle to the begin of every line of a listing. Note that this a hack of the
listings package code. This may become unusable or superfluous in the future.

\begin{commandshell}
ls -al
\end{commandshell}

\begin{commandshell}
root $> ls -al
root $> cd /usr/lib
\end{commandshell}

See further options in Section 17.8 on page 341.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{commandshell}
ls -al
\end{commandshell}
\begin{commandshell}
root $> ls -al
root $> cd /usr/lib
\end{commandshell}
\end{tcolorbox}

For an combined example of using \lstinline inside a tcolorbox \p.12, see
\DeclareTotalTCBox \p.22.
17.6 Option Keys of the \texttt{listingsutf8} Library

The \texttt{listingsutf8} library is not needed (and troublesome) when using XeLaTeX or LuaLaTeX. Therefore, loading this library is automatically replaced by loading \texttt{listings} only, if pdfLaTeX is not used.

The \texttt{listingsutf8} library is an extension of the \texttt{listings} library, so all options from Section 17.5 on page 336 are applicable.

\texttt{/tcb/listing utf8=⟨one-byte-encoding⟩} (style, no default, initially \texttt{latin1})

Abbreviation for using \texttt{/tcb/listing inputencoding \rightarrow P.337} together with UTF-8 support from the package \texttt{listingsutf8} [11]. This option is available only for the library variant \texttt{listingsutf8}. The \langle one-byte-encoding \rangle is one of the applicable encodings from [11], e.g. \texttt{latin1} which is the default.

Be aware that this means restriction to this specific \langle one-byte-encoding \rangle: e.g. \texttt{latin1} comprises umlauts and other accented characters, but not the Euro sign. If you want to use the \texttt{listings} package and «real» UTF-8 source code, then do not use \texttt{listingsutf8} but \texttt{listings} with \texttt{/tcb/listing inputencoding \rightarrow P.337=\texttt{utf8} and} with specific manual hacks for specific UTF-8-encoded characters.

See further options in Section 17.8 on page 341.
17.7 Option Keys of the \minted Library

\mintedlanguage{programming language} (no default, initially \texttt{latex})

Sets a \textit{programming language} known to \texttt{Pygments} [16].

\begin{tcblisting}{listing engine=minted,minted style=trac,minted language=java,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing only}
public class HelloWorld {
    // A "Hello World" in Java
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        System.out.println("Hello World!");
    }
}
\end{tcblisting}

\mintedlanguage{java,minted style=colorful,minted options={fontsize=\small,breaklines,autogobble,linenos,numbersep=3mm},colback=blue!5!white,colframe=blue!75!black,listing only,left=5mm,enhanced,overlay={\begin{tcbclipinterior}\fill[red!20!blue!20!white] (frame.south west) rectangle ([xshift=5mm]frame.north west);\end{tcbclipinterior}}}
Sets the options from the package `minted` [14] which are used during typesetting of the listing, if `/tcb/minted options` → P.339 are not used. The intended use is inside the preamble to change the default behavior. Note that setting `/tcb/default minted options` also resets `/tcb/minted options` → P.339. Since `minted` [14] v2.6 set `stripnl=false`, adding `stripnl` could be helpful to remove leading and trailing blank lines.

```latex
% inside the preamble
\tcbset{
  default minted options={tabsize=4,fontsize=\normalsize},
}
```

### `/tcb/minted style` (no default, initially unset)

Sets a `{style}` known to `Pygments` [16]. This is independent from `/tcb/minted options` → P.339. Note that styles are always applied globally; all following examples will be set in the given `{style}` until a new style is set. Also note that setting `\usemintedstyle{⟨style⟩}` only once per document is more economic, if all styles in a document are the same. For examples of different styles, see `/tcb/minted language` → P.339 and `/tcb/minted options` → P.339.

See further options in Section 17.8 on the following page.
17.8 Common Option Keys of all Libraries

For the \(<\text{options}\)> in \{tcb\text{listing}\} \text{P.327} respectively \{tcbin\text{put}\text{listing}\} \text{P.329} the following \text{pgf} keys can be applied. The key tree path \{tcb\} is not to be used inside these macros.

\text{/tcb/listing engine}=(\text{engine}) (no default)

Sets the \(<\text{engine}\)> which typesets the listings. Feasible values are

- \text{listings}, if library \includegraphics{listings} or \includegraphics{listingsutf8} is loaded.
- \text{minted}, if library \includegraphics{minted} is loaded.

\text{/tcb/listing file}=(\text{file name}) (no default, initially \jobname\text{.listing})

Sets the \(<\text{file name}\)> of the file which is used to save listings.

\text{/tcb/listing and text} (no value, initially set)

Typesets the environment content as listing in the upper part and as compiled text in the lower part.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing and text}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

\text{/tcb/text and listing} (no value)

Typesets the environment content as compiled text in the upper part and as listing in the lower part.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,text and listing}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

\text{/tcb/listing only} (no value)

Typesets the environment content as listing.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing only}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.
/tcb/text only

Typesets the environment content as compiled text.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,text only}
This is a LaTeX example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a LaTeX example.

/tcb/comment=(text)

Records a comment with \texttt{(text)} as content. The comment is displayed e.g. in conjunction with /tcb/listing and \texttt{\textit{comment \rightarrow P.345}} and /tcb/comment and \texttt{\textit{listing \rightarrow P.345}}.

\begin{tcblisting}{comment={This comment is really only a comment},
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

N 2014-11-17

/tcb/comment only

Typesets the environment content with the comment text.

\begin{tcblisting}{comment only,
  comment={This is a comment.},
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a comment.

/tcb/image comment=\{\texttt{\langle options\rangle}\}{\langle filename\rangle}

(style, no default, initially unset)

Uses an image denoted by \texttt{\langle filename\rangle} as \textit{comment} for the listing. The image is included by the standard \texttt{\texttt{\textbackslash includegraphics}} macro with given \texttt{\langle options\rangle}.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing side comment,
  image comment=\{width=2.5cm\}{example-image-a.pdf},center lower}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\texttt{/tcb/tcbimage \texttt{comment}=\texttt{\langle filename \rangle}} \quad \text{(style, no default, initially unset)}

Uses an image denoted by \texttt{\langle filename \rangle} as \textit{comment} for the listing. The image is included by the \texttt{\tcbincludegraphics} \p{P.278} macro. The inclusion can be customized by \texttt{/tcb/comment style} \p{P.345}.

\begin{itemize}
\item The library \texttt{\tcbuselibrary{skins}} is needed to apply this option.
\end{itemize}

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5\!white,colframe=red!75\!black,listing side comment,\righthand width=3cm,lower separated=false,\tcbimage comment={example-image-a.pdf},\comment style={size=fbox,colframe=blue,colback=blue!50,sharp corners,drop fuzzy shadow}}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

\begin{itemize}
\item This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{itemize}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing and comment, 
% \tcbuselibrary{skins,raster}
    righthand width=3cm,lower separated=false,middle=1mm,
    pdf comment={tcolorbox-example.pdf},
    comment style={raster columns=3,graphics pages={1,2,3},
    colframe=blue,drop fuzzy shadow}}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

\begin{align*}
\sum_{i=1}^{n} i &= \frac{n(n+1)}{2}.
\end{align*}
\tcbpdfextension{\texttt{extension}} (no default, initially pdf)

Sets the PDF file name extension for /tcb/pdf comment \textsuperscript{P.344} to \texttt{extension}. Note that \texttt{extension} always overwrites any actual extension given inside /tcb/pdf comment \textsuperscript{P.344}.

\texttt{/tcb\-comment\ style=\texttt{options}} (no default, initially empty)

Sets the \texttt{options} for /tcb/tcbimage comment \textsuperscript{P.343} and /tcb/pdf comment \textsuperscript{P.344}. These are \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{P.12} options to customize the colored box drawn around the image(s), also image options encapsulated by /tcb\texttt{/graphics options} \textsuperscript{P.281}, and \texttt{tcbraster} \textsuperscript{P.306} options for /tcb/pdf comment \textsuperscript{P.344}.

\texttt{/tcb\-listing\ and\ comment} (no value)

Typesets the environment content as listing in the upper part and a given comment in the lower part.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,\texttt{listing\ and\ comment},\texttt{comment=}\texttt{This\ is\ my\ comment.\ It\ may\ contain\ line\ breaks.}\par
It\ can\ even\ use\ the\ environment\ content
\texttt{\textbackslash lq\texttt{ignorespaces}\texttt{tcbuselistingtext}\unskip\frqq}}
This\ is\ a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is \LaTeX\ example.

This is my comment. It may contain line breaks.
It can even use the environment content «This is a \LaTeX\ example.»

\texttt{/tcb\-comment\ and\ listing} (no value)

Typesets a given comment in the upper part and the environment content as listing in the lower part.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,\texttt{comment\ and\ listing},\texttt{comment=}\texttt{This\ is\ my\ comment.}}
This\ is\ a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is my comment.

This is a \LaTeX\ example.
/tcb/listing side text (style, no value)

Typesets the environment content side by side as listing in the left (upper) part and as compiled text in the right (lower) part. This is a shortcut for setting /tcb/listing and /tcb/text → P.341 and /tcb/sidebyside → P.134.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing side text}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.  
This is a L\LaTeX\ example.

!! Note that sidebyside=false has to be added, if the setting of /tcb/listing side text is to be annihilated.

/tcb/text side listing (style, no value)

Typesets the environment content side by side as compiled text in the left (upper) part and as listing in the right (lower) part. This is a shortcut for setting /tcb/text and listing → P.341 and /tcb/sidebyside → P.134.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,text side listing}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a L\LaTeX\ example.  
This is a \LaTeX\ example.

/tcb/listing outside text (no value)

Typesets the environment content side by side as listing in a tcolorbox → P.12 and as compiled text outside the box in the right part of the page. Nevertheless, the outside text is treated as lower part of the tcolorbox → P.12 and can be formatted with all lower part options. The space partitioning is done with the side by side options from Section 6 on page 134.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing outside text}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.  
This is a L\LaTeX\ example.

346
/tcb/text outside listing

Typesets the environment content side by side as listing in a \texttt{tcolorbox}\footnote{P.12} and as compiled text outside the box in the left part of the page. Nevertheless, the outside text is treated as \textit{lower} part of the \texttt{tcolorbox}\footnote{P.12} and can be formatted with all lower part options. The space partitioning is done with the side by side options from Section 6 on page 134.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,text outside listing}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \TeX\ example.

/tcb/listing side comment

Typesets the environment content side by side as listing in the left (upper) part and a given comment in the right (lower) part. This is a shortcut for setting /tcb/listing and comment\footnote{P.345} and /tcb/sidebyside\footnote{P.134}.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listingside comment, 
  righthand width=1.5cm,image comment={width=1.5cm}{example-image-a.pdf}}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

A

/tcb/comment side listing

Typesets the environment content side by side with a given comment in the left (upper) part and as listing in the right (lower) part. This is a shortcut for setting /tcb/comment and listing\footnote{P.345} and /tcb/sidebyside\footnote{P.134}.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,comment side listing, 
  lefthand width=1.5cm,image comment={width=1.5cm}{example-image-a.pdf}}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

A

This is a \LaTeX\ example.
Typesets the environment content side by side as listing in a `tcolorbox` and a given comment outside the box in the right part of the page. Nevertheless, the outside text is treated as *lower* part of the `tcolorbox` and can be formatted with all lower part options. The space partitioning is done with the side by side options from Section 6 on page 134.

```latex
\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing outside comment, righthand width=1.5cm,image comment={width=1.5cm}{example-image-a.pdf}}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}
```

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

Typesets the environment content side by side as listing in a `tcolorbox` and a given comment outside the box in the left part of the page. Nevertheless, the outside text is treated as *lower* part of the `tcolorbox` and can be formatted with all lower part options. The space partitioning is done with the side by side options from Section 6 on page 134.

```latex
\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,comment outside listing, lefthand width=1.5cm,image comment={width=1.5cm}{example-image-a.pdf}}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}
```

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

Typesets the environment content as listing in a `tcolorbox` and as compiled text outside and below the box. The outside text is treated as *lower* part of the `tcolorbox` and can be formatted with all lower part options. The distance between box and text is controlled by `/tcb/middle`.

```latex
\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing above text}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}
```

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

Widely equal to `/tcb/listing above text`, but the outside text is not formatted with the lower part options. Also, it is not put into a minipage and it may span several pages. The distance between box and text is controlled by `/tcb/after`.

```latex
\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing above* text}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}
```

This is a \LaTeX\ example.
/tcb/text above listing
Typesets the environment content as listing in a \textcolorbox{} and as compiled text outside and above the box. The outside text is treated as lower part of the \textcolorbox{} and can be formatted with all lower part options. The distance between box and text is controlled by /tcb/middle .

\begin{tcblisting}
\textcolor{red!5!white}{colframe=red!75!black,text above listing}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

/tcb/text above* listing
Widely equal to /tcb/text above listing, but the outside text is not formatted with the lower part options. Also, it is not put into a minipage and it may span several pages. The distance between box and text is controlled by /tcb/after .

\begin{tcblisting}
\textcolor{red!5!white}{colframe=red!75!black,listing above comment, center lower,image comment={width=3cm}{example-image-a.pdf}}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

/tcb/listing above comment
Typesets the environment content as listing in a \textcolorbox{} and a given comment outside and below the box. The outside text is treated as lower part of the \textcolorbox{} and can be formatted with all lower part options. The distance between box and comment is controlled by /tcb/middle .

\begin{tcblisting}
\textcolor{red!5!white}{colframe=red!75!black,listing above comment, center lower,}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

/tcb/listing above* comment
Widely equal to /tcb/listing above comment, but the outside comment is not formatted with the lower part options. Also, it is not put into a minipage and it may span several pages. The distance between box and comment is controlled by /tcb/after .
/tcb/comment above listing

Typesets the environment content as listing in a \texttt{tcolorbox}^P.12 and a given comment outside and above the box. The outside text is treated as \textit{lower} part of the \texttt{tcolorbox}^P.12 and can be formatted with all lower part options. The distance between box and comment is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/middle}^P.48.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,comment above listing,center lower,image comment={width=3cm}{example-image-a.pdf}}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

\texttt{/tcb/comment above* listing}

Widely equal to /tcb/comment above listing, but the outside comment is not formatted with the lower part options. Also, it is not put into a minipage and it may span several pages. The distance between box and comment is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/before}^P.86.
17.9 Option Keys for Processing and Full Document Examples

A complete \LaTeX{} document including \texttt{\documentclass, \begin{document} and \end{document}} cannot be processed directly by \texttt{tcolorbox}. It always has to be compiled separately. There are two methods supported by the package to process and display such a full document example:

- Prepare and compile the example document independent from your main document. The source file and the resulting PDF file can be included into the main document afterwards. This is the most economic way since the example document can be left untouched after the example is complete.

- The other possibility is to compile the example on the fly while the main document is compiled. This way has some charm, because the example can be edited inside the main document. But be aware that the compilation of the example is issued on every run of the main document. Also, there are fewer degrees of freedom how the example is compiled.

For both methods, the resulting example PDF file can be included as a \texttt{/tcb/pdf comment}. The following example shows how to apply the first method. There already is a file \texttt{tcolorbox-example.tex} and a PDF file \texttt{tcolorbox-example.pdf}. Both of them are input partly by the following:

```latex
% \tcbuselibrary{breakable,skins,raster}
\tcbinputlisting{
  enhanced jigsaw,breakable,pad at break*=2mm,height fixed for=first and middle,
  lower separated=false,
  leftlower=Opt,rightlower=Opt,middle=Opt,
  colframe=red!50!black,colback=yellow!10!white,
  listing and comment,
  listing file={tcolorbox-example},
  listing options=
    {style=tcblatex,texcsstyle=\color{red!70!black},firstline=20,lastline=85},
  after upper={\par\bigskip\texttt{\ldots}\par},
  pdf comment,
  comment style={drop lifted shadow,graphics pages={1,...,4}},
}
% arara: pdflatex: { }
% arara: pdflatex: { synctex: yes }
%
\documentclass{article}
\usepackage{tikz,lipsum,lmodern}
\usepackage[most]{tcolorbox}
\begin{document}
%----------------------------------------------------------
\section{Colored boxes}
\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
  My box.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=blue!5!white, colframe=blue!75!black,title=My title]
  My box with my title.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

351
1 Colored boxes

My box.

My title.

My box with my title.

Upper part of my box.

Lower part of my box.

4 Watermarks

I'm invisible until you find me.

5 Boxes in boxes

Breakable boxes

3 Theorems

3.2 Theorem (Summation of Numbers): For all natural number \( n \) it holds:

\[
\sum_{i=1}^{n} i = \frac{n(n + 1)}{2}.
\]

2 watermarks

This is a \LaTeX\ example:

\[
\sum_{i=1}^{n} i = \frac{n(n + 1)}{2}.
\]
/tcb/no process

Removes all processing commands if set before.

/tcb/process code (code)

(no default, initially empty)

Adds \texttt{(code)} which is executed during \texttt{\textbackslash tcbinputlisting}\textsuperscript{P.329} and \texttt{tcblisting}\textsuperscript{P.327}. At the time of executing the given \texttt{(code)}, the listing is already written to \texttt{/tcb/listing file}\textsuperscript{P.341}, but the colored box is not constructed yet. Its intended use is to process the listing somehow before displaying. The processing result can be used inside a \texttt{/tcb/comment}\textsuperscript{P.342}. Several \texttt{/tcb/process code} options can be given which are processed in the given order. Typically, \texttt{(code)} is added by using the following styles \texttt{/tcb/run system command}, \texttt{/tcb/run pdflatex}, etc.

To use the further options, the compiler has to be called with the \texttt{-shell-escape} permission to authorize potentially dangerous system calls. Be warned that this is a security risk. Anyway, it’s more economic to compile examples independent from the main document and to include them as shown in the previous pages.

/tcb/run system command (system command)

(style, no default, initially unset)

Runs a \texttt{(system command)}, if the document is compiled with the \texttt{-shell-escape} permission. The current listing file can be accessed as \texttt{\jobname\textbackslash filename@area\filename@base\filename@ext}. This \texttt{(system command)} is added to \texttt{/tcb/process code}.

/tcb/compilable listing

(style, no default)

Sets \texttt{/tcb/listing file}\textsuperscript{P.341} to \texttt{\jobname\textbackslash listing-\langle counter\rangle}.

The default \texttt{/tcb/listing file}\textsuperscript{P.341} setting cannot be used to compile a listing, since the base name equals the \texttt{\jobname} and the included PDF files should be unique. Therefore, to use \texttt{/tcb/run pdflatex} etc., the \texttt{/tcb/listing file}\textsuperscript{P.341} has to be set to a unique value. One may use \texttt{/tcb/compilable listing} for this purpose.

/tcb/run pdflatex (arguments)

(style, no default, initially unset)

Issues a \texttt{pdflatex} compilation of the listing with the given \texttt{(arguments)}.

- The main document has to be compiled with the \texttt{-shell-escape} permission.
- The \texttt{/tcb/listing file}\textsuperscript{P.341} has to be unique for the listing.
- If the listing has to be compiled twice, add \texttt{run pdflatex} two times to the option list.
\begin{alertblock}{Integral}
\begin{equation}
\int_1^x \frac{1}{t} \, dt = \ln(x).
\end{equation}
\end{alertblock}
\begin{frame}{Beamer example}
\begin{block}{Hello World}
\begin{itemize}[<+->]
  \item One
  \item Two
\end{itemize}
\end{block}
\begin{alertblock}{Integral}
\begin{equation}
\int_1^x \frac{1}{t} \, dt = \ln(x).
\end{equation}
\end{alertblock}
\end{frame}
\end{document}
PSTricks with pdflatex

\documentclass{article}
\usepackage{pstricks,multido}
\begin{document}
\psset{unit=3} \multido{\nHue=0.01+0.01}{100}{{
\definecolor{MyColor}{hsb}{\nHue,1,1}
\pscircle*[linewidth=0.01,linecolor=MyColor]{\nHue}}}
\end{document}
For most applications, you will like to add \texttt{/tcb/freeze pdf} as option, since the included \texttt{pdf} file is only refreshed, if the source for this file has changed.

\begin{verbatim}
N 2016-07-14 /tcb/freeze file={⟨file⟩} (no default, initially unset)
   Observes some ⟨file⟩, usually the final file produced by \texttt{/tcb/process code}, \texttt{/tcb/run system command}, \texttt{/tcb/run pdflatex}, etc. If the MD5 checksum of the current \texttt{/tcb/listing file} is unchanged and ⟨file⟩ exists, the processing is skipped and the ⟨file⟩ is kept (frozen). Typically, the style \texttt{/tcb/freeze pdf} can be used for convenience.

N 2016-07-14 /tcb/freeze none (no default, initially set)
   Freeze no file and always execute the given process commands.

N 2016-07-14 /tcb/freeze extension={(text)} (style, no default)
   Calls \texttt{/tcb/freeze file} with the current \texttt{/tcb/listing file} stripped with its extension plus ⟨text⟩ as new extension.

...  
listing file=myfile.tex,
freeze extension=-modified.pdf,  % -> myfile-modified.pdf  is observed
...

N 2016-07-14 /tcb/freeze pdf (no value)
   Calls \texttt{/tcb/freeze file} with the current \texttt{/tcb/listing file} stripped with its extension plus .pdf as new extension.

N 2016-07-14 /tcb/freeze png (no value)
   Calls \texttt{/tcb/freeze file} with the current \texttt{/tcb/listing file} stripped with its extension plus .png as new extension. See the examples for \texttt{/tcb/run pdflatex} and \texttt{/tcb/run ps2pdf}.

N 2016-07-14 /tcb/freeze jpg (no value)
   Calls \texttt{/tcb/freeze file} with the current \texttt{/tcb/listing file} stripped with its extension plus .jpg as new extension.
\end{verbatim}
17.10 Creation of \LaTeX\ Tutorials

The following source code gives a guideline for the creation of \LaTeX\ tutorials. In the next section, a framework for \LaTeX\ exercises is described. All examples shall be numbered optionally.

Firstly, some additional \texttt{tcb} keys are defined for the appearance. For the examples, three environments \texttt{texexp}, \texttt{texexptitled}, and \texttt{texexptitledspec} are defined with automatic

- \texttt{texexp} is used for untitled examples,
- \texttt{texexptitled} is used for titled examples,
- \texttt{texexptitledspec} is used for titled examples with special treatment.

\textbf{Definition in the preamble:}
\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{
  texexp/.style={colframe=red!50!yellow!50!black, colback=red!50!yellow!5!white, 
    coltitle=red!50!yellow!3!white, 
    fonttitle=\small\sffamily\bfseries, fontupper=\small, fontlower=\small}, 
  example/.style 2 args={texexp, title={Example \thetcbcounter: #1},label={#2}}, 
}
\newtcblisting[texexp]{texexp}[1]{texexp,#1}
\newtcblisting[auto counter,number within=section]{texexptitled}[3][% 
  example={#2}{#3},#1 
]
\newtcolorbox[use counter from=texexptitled]{texexptitledspec}[3][% 
  example={#2}{#3},#1 
]
\begin{tcblisting}{texexp}
This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code 
and in compiled form.
\end{tcblisting}
\begin{texexptitled}{First example with a title line}{firstExample}
Here, we use Example \ref{firstExample} with a title line.
\end{texexptitled}
\begin{example}
\textbf{Example 17.1: First example with a title line}
Here, we use Example \ref{firstExample} with a title line.
\end{example}
\begin{texexp}\}
This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code
and in compiled form.
\end{texexp}

This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code
and in compiled form.

\begin{texexp}{text and listing}\}
This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code
and in compiled form.
\end{texexp}

This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code
and in compiled form.

\begin{texexp}{listing only}\}
This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code only.
\end{texexp}

This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code only.

\begin{texexp}{text only}\}
This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text in compiled form only.
\end{texexp}

This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text in compiled form only.

\begin{texexptitled}{An Example with a Heading}{heading1}\}
This is a \LaTeX\ example with a numbered heading line
which can be referred to.
\end{texexptitled}

Here, we see Example \ref{heading1}.

\begin{example}{An Example with a Heading}
This is a \LaTeX\ example with a numbered heading line
which can be referred to.
\end{example}

Here, we see Example 17.2.
The keys can be used in combination. Here, an example with a heading line and source code only is given. Here, we see Example \ref{heading2}.

Example 17.3: Another Example with a Heading

The keys can be used in combination. Here, an example with a heading line and source code only is given.

Here, we see Example 17.3.

Example 17.4: A floating Example with a Heading

This is another \LaTeX\ example with numbered heading line. But now, the box is a floating object.

The floating box of the last example is seen as Example \ref{heading3} on page \pageref{heading3}.

The floating box of the last example is seen as Example 17.4 on page 360.

Example 17.5: Special application

Some \LaTeX\ source code.

For special cases, the environment \texttt{texexptitledspec} with style \texttt{example} can be used directly. As one can see, the upper and the lower part of the box can be used uncoupled also.

The following series of examples demonstrate the application of \texttt{tcolorbox}``\texttt{P.12} options for diversification.
Example 17.6: How to use options (1):
The basic example

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c] (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}

Example 17.7: How to use options (2):
The text output is centered and the segmentation line has vanished.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c] (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}
Example 17.8: How to use options (3):
Here, the \texttt{tikzpicture} is totally hidden. The \texttt{bicolor} skin highlights the output.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c] (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}

Example 17.9: How to use options (4):
The \texttt{bicolor} skin also works with side by side mode.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c] (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}
Example 17.10: How to use options (5):
Putting our picture outside is just a matter of one word.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c]
 (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}

Example 17.11: How to use options (6):
The picture may also be put above the listing box.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c]
 (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}
Example 17.12: How to use options (7):
Our style is easily transformed into a beamerish one.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c]
 (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}
17.11 Creation of \LaTeX\ Exercises

In the following, a guideline is given for the creation of \LaTeX\ exercises with solutions. These solutions are saved to disk for application at a place of choice. Therefore, all used exercises are logged to a file \jobname\_records for automatic processing. The solution contents themselves are saved to a subdirectory named solutions. Also see Section 8 on page 147.

- Before the first exercise is given, \texttt{tcbstartrecording} \textsuperscript{P.147} has to be called to start recording.

- The solution is given as content of a \texttt{tcboutputlisting} \textsuperscript{P.329} environment. Note, that you can use this content also inside the exercise with \texttt{tcbuselistingtext} \textsuperscript{P.329} in compiled form.

- After the last exercise is given (and before using the solutions), \texttt{tcbstoprecording} \textsuperscript{P.147} has to be called to stop recording.

- The solutions are loaded by \texttt{tcbinputrecords} \textsuperscript{P.147}.

Inside the exercise text, there may be text parts which are needed as \LaTeX\ source code and as compiled text as well. These parts can be saved by \texttt{tcbwritetemp} \textsuperscript{P.144} and used in compiled form by \texttt{tcbusetemp} \textsuperscript{P.144} or as source code by \texttt{tcbusetemplisting} \textsuperscript{P.329}.

At first, we generate some a common style for the exercises and the solutions. Further, since exercises and solutions should be numbered, we force to use a label \langle\textit{marker}\rangle. Automatically, the label \texttt{exe:⟨marker⟩} is used to mark the exercise and the label \texttt{sol:⟨marker⟩} is used to mark the solution.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{texercisestyle/.style={arc=0.5mm, colframe=blue!25!yellow!90!white, colback=blue!25!yellow!5!white, coltitle=blue!25!yellow!40!black, fonttitle=\small\sffamily\bfseries, fontupper=\small, fontlower=\small, listing options={style=tcblatex,texcsstyle=\*color{red!40!black}},}}
\end{verbatim}

With these preparations, the kernel environment \texttt{texercise} for our exercises is created quickly:

\begin{verbatim}
\newtcolorbox[auto counter,number within=section,list inside=exam]{texercise}[2][]{%
texercisestyle, listing file={solutions/texercise\thetcbcounter.tex}, label={exe:#2}, record={\string\processsol{solutions/texercise\thetcbcounter.tex}{#2}}, title={Exercise \thetcbcounter\hfill\mdseries Solution on page \texttt{p\pageref{sol:#2}}}, list text={Exercise with solution on page \texttt{p\pageref{sol:#2}}},#1}
\end{verbatim}
The following examples demonstrate the application.

\begin{tcboutputlisting}
\begin{tabular}{|p{3cm}|p{3cm}|p{3cm}|p{3cm}|}
\hline
\multicolumn{4}{|c|}{\bfseries\itshape Das alte Italien}\\
\hline
\multicolumn{2}{|c|}{\bfseries Antike} & \multicolumn{2}{c|}{\bfseries Mittelalter}\\
\hline
\multicolumn{1}{|c|}{\itshape Republik} & \multicolumn{1}{c|}{\itshape Kaiserreich} & \multicolumn{1}{c|}{\itshape Franken} & \multicolumn{1}{c|}{\itshape Teilstaaten}\\
\hline
In den Zeiten der römischen Republik standen dem Staat jeweils zwei Konsuln vor, deren Machtbefugnisse identisch waren. & Das römische Kaiserreich wurde von einem Alleinherrscher, dem Kaiser, regiert. & In der Völkerwanderungszeit übernahmen dieGoten und später die Franken die Vorherrschaft. & Im späteren Mittelalter regierten Fürsten einen Fleckenteppich von Einzelstaaten.\\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{tcboutputlisting}

Exercise 17.1

Create the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Antike</th>
<th>Mittelalter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Republik</td>
<td>Kaiserreich</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exercise 17.2

Create a new macro \verb+\headingline+ which produces the following output:
\headingline{Very important heading}

Very important heading

Exercise 17.3

Create a new macro \verb+\minitable+ which produces the following output:
\minitable{My heading}{In this tiny tabular, there is only a heading and some text below which has a width of ten centimeters.}

My heading

In this tiny tabular, there is only a heading and some text below which has a width of ten centimeters.
Create a new macro \verb+\synop+ which typesets a synoptic text according to the following example. Base your macro on a tabular which takes the total line width.

\verb+$\synop{Neil Armstrong}$%  
\verb+\textit{That’s one small step for a man, one giant leap for mankind.}$+$%  
\verb+\textit{Das ist ein kleiner Schritt für einen Mann, ein riesiger Sprung für die Menschheit.}$+$

Exercise 17.4

Create a new macro \verb+\synop+ which typesets a synoptic text according to the following example. Base your macro on a tabular which takes the total line width.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Neil Armstrong</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| \textit{That’s one small step for a man, one giant leap for mankind.} | \textit{Das ist ein kleiner Schritt für einen Mann, ein riesiger Sprung für die Menschheit.}  

\verb+$\synop{Neil Armstrong}$%  
\verb+\textit{That’s one small step for a man, one giant leap for mankind.}$+$%  
\verb+\textit{Das ist ein kleiner Schritt für einen Mann, ein riesiger Sprung für die Menschheit.}$+$

Now, we give a list of all exercises with:

\verb+$\tcblistof$%  
\verb+$\subsection{exam}{List of Exercises}$%  
\verb+\label{listofexercises}$+$

17.12 List of Exercises

17.1 Exercise with solution on page 369  
17.2 Exercise with solution on page 369  
17.3 Exercise with solution on page 369  
17.4 Exercise with solution on page 370
17.13 Solutions for the given \textsc{\LaTeX} Exercises

For all solutions, a macro \texttt{\processsol} was written to the file \texttt{\jobname.records}. Now, we need a definition for this macro to use the solutions.

The loading of all solutions is done by:

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbinputrecords
\end{verbatim}

With this, we get:

Solution for Exercise 17.1 on page 366

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tabular}{|p{3cm}|p{3cm}|p{3cm}|p{3cm}|}
\hline
\multicolumn{4}{|c|}{\bfseries\itshape Das alte Italien}\\
\hline
\multicolumn{2}{|c|}{\bfseries\itshape Antike} & \multicolumn{2}{c|}{\bfseries\itshape Mittelalter}\\
\hline
\multicolumn{1}{|c|}{\itshape Republik} & \multicolumn{1}{c|}{\itshape Kaiserreich} & \multicolumn{1}{c|}{\itshape Franken} & \multicolumn{1}{c|}{\itshape Teilstaaten}\\
\hline
In den Zeiten der r"{o}mischen Republik standen dem Staat jeweils zwei Konsuln vor, deren Machtbefugnisse identisch waren. & Das r"{o}mische Kaiserreich wurde von einem Alleinherrscher, dem Kaiser, regiert. & In der V"{o}lkerwanderungszeit "{u}bernahmen die Goten und sp"{a}ter die Franken die Vorherrschaft. & Im sp"{a}teren Mittelalter regierten F"{u}rsten einen Fleckenteppich von Einzelstaaten.\\
\end{tabular}
\end{verbatim}

Solution for Exercise 17.2 on page 367

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand{\headingline}[1]{}
\begin{center}\Large\bfseries #1\end{center}
\end{verbatim}

Solution for Exercise 17.3 on page 367

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand{\minitable}[2]{}
\begin{center}\begin{tabular}{p{10cm}}
\multicolumn{1}{c}{\bfseries#1}\\
#2\\
\end{tabular}\end{center}
\end{verbatim}
\begin{tabular}{|p{\linewidth-\tabcolsep*2-\arrayrulewidth}/2|p{\linewidth-\tabcolsep*2-\arrayrulewidth}/2|}
\hline
\multicolumn{2}{c}{\bfseries #1} \\
\hline
\multicolumn{1}{c|}{\itshape English} & \multicolumn{1}{c}{\itshape German} \\
\hline
#2 & #3 \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\tcbuselibrary{theorems}

This also loads the package amsmath.

Denis Bitouzé, Muzimuzhi, and many others provided very valuable input for this library.

18.1 Macros of the Library

\NewTcbTheorem[(init options)]{⟨name⟩}{⟨display name⟩}{⟨options⟩}{⟨prefix⟩}

\newtcbtheorem[(init options)]{⟨name⟩}{⟨display name⟩}{⟨options⟩}{⟨prefix⟩}

Creates new environments ⟨name⟩ and ⟨name⟩* based on tcolorbox to frame a (mathematical) theorem. The ⟨display name⟩ is used in the title line with a number, e.g. «Theorem 5.1». The ⟨options⟩ are given to the underlying tcolorbox to control the appearance. The ⟨init options⟩ allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 on page 124.

If ⟨name⟩ is chosen as footheorem, the new environments are described by

\begin{footheorem}[(keys)] [⟨short⟩] {⟨title⟩} {⟨marker⟩}
\end{footheorem}

Here, ⟨title⟩ is the title text for the theorem and is also set as /tcb/nameref∗P.112 identifier. Optionally, the ⟨short⟩ title used instead as /tcb/nameref∗P.112 identifier and in lists of theorems. ⟨keys⟩ supplement the ⟨options⟩ and may be used only in rare cases. The theorem is automatically labeled with ⟨prefix⟩⟨separator⟩⟨marker⟩ where ⟨separator⟩ is predefined as “:”, see /tcb/label separator∗P.379.

\begin{footheorem}*[⟨keys⟩] {⟨title⟩}
\end{footheorem}*

This represents an unnumbered variant. Again, ⟨title⟩ is the title text for the theorem and ⟨keys⟩ supplement the ⟨options⟩. This variant is not labeled and not listed in lists of theorems.

\NewTcbTheorem and \newtcbtheorem are identical and both rely on \NewTColorBox∗P.16 based on \NewDocumentCommand.
Definition in the preamble:
\begin{mytheo}{This is my title}{theoexample}
This is the text of the theorem. The counter is automatically assigned and, in this example, prefixed with the section number. This theorem is numbered with \ref{th:theoexample}, it is given on page \pageref{th:theoexample}, and it is titled «This is my title».
\end{mytheo}

My Theorem 18.1: This is my title

This is the text of the theorem. The counter is automatically assigned and, in this example, prefixed with the section number. This theorem is numbered with 18.1, it is given on page 372, and it is titled «This is my title».

My Theorem 18.2: This my very long theorem title with too much words

Here we have a long and a short title. This theorem is numbered with 18.2, it is given on page 372, and it is titled «Concise title».

My Theorem 18.3: This is my title

The label parameter can be left empty without \LaTeX\ error. Or you may use an own label to reference Theorem \ref{myownlabel}.

My Theorem 18.4

The title can also be left empty without problem. Note that the "::" vanished magically.
\begin{mytheo*}{Unnumbered Theorem}
This theorem is not numbered.
\end{mytheo*}

My Theorem: Unnumbered Theorem
This theorem is not numbered.

\begin{mytheo*}{}
This theorem has no number and no title.
\end{mytheo*}

My Theorem
This theorem has no number and no title.

To switch off the \nameref feature permanently, add \nameref/.style={} inside the \langle options \rangle list.

\begin{tcblist}[init options]{
(name)\{display name\}\{options\}\{prefix\}
}
\end{tcblist}

\textbf{\texttt{\textbackslash RenewTcbTheorem}} \langle init options \rangle \langle name \rangle \langle display name \rangle \langle options \rangle \langle prefix \rangle

Operates like \texttt{\textbackslash NewTcbTheorem} \textsuperscript{P.371}, but based on \texttt{\textbackslash RenewDocumentEnvironment} instead of \texttt{\textbackslash NewDocumentEnvironment}. Existing environments are redefined.

\begin{tcblist}[init options]{
(name)\{display name\}\{options\}\{prefix\}
}
\end{tcblist}

\textbf{\texttt{\textbackslash ProvideTcbTheorem}} \langle init options \rangle \langle name \rangle \langle display name \rangle \langle options \rangle \langle prefix \rangle

Operates like \texttt{\textbackslash NewTcbTheorem} \textsuperscript{P.371}, but based on \texttt{\textbackslash ProvideDocumentEnvironment} instead of \texttt{\textbackslash NewDocumentEnvironment}. New environments are only created if they are not already defined.

\begin{tcblist}[init options]{
(name)\{display name\}\{options\}\{prefix\}
}
\end{tcblist}

\textbf{\texttt{\textbackslash DeclareTcbTheorem}} \langle init options \rangle \langle name \rangle \langle display name \rangle \langle options \rangle \langle prefix \rangle

Operates like \texttt{\textbackslash NewTcbTheorem} \textsuperscript{P.371}, but based on \texttt{\textbackslash DeclareDocumentEnvironment} instead of \texttt{\textbackslash NewDocumentEnvironment}. New environments are always created and possibly redefine existing ones.
\texttt{\textbackslash tcboxmath\{\textit{options}\}\{\textit{mathematical box content}\}}

Creates a \texttt{tcolorbox}^{P.12} which is fitted to the width of the given \textit{(mathematical box content)}. This box is intended to be applied as part of a larger formula and may be used as replacement for the \texttt{boxed} macro of \textit{amsmath}.

\begin{equation}
\tcbset{fonttitle=\scriptsize}
\tcboxmath[colback=LightBlue!25!white,colframe=blue]{ a^2 = 16 } \quad \Rightarrow \quad \tcboxmath[colback=Salmon!25!white,colframe=red,title=Implication]{ a = 4 \lor a = -4. }
\end{equation}

\texttt{\textbackslash tcboxhighmath\{\textit{options}\}\{\textit{mathematical box content}\}}

This is a special case of the \texttt{tcboxmath} macro which uses the style \texttt{/tcb/highlight math}^{P.384}. It is intended to provide context sensitive highlighting of formula parts. The color settings via \texttt{/tcb/highlight math style}^{P.384} may be different inside theorems or other colored areas and outside.

\begin{align}
\tcbhighmath{\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n}} &= \infty. \\
\int x^2 \text{d}x &= \frac{1}{3} x^3 + c.
\end{align}

\begin{tcolorbox}\[\texttt{ams align,myformula}\]
\tcbhighmath{\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n}} &= \infty. \\
\int x^2 \text{d}x &= \frac{1}{3} x^3 + c.
\end{tcolorbox}
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbhighmath} can be used in symbiosis with the \texttt{empheq} package which allows to specify own boxing commands to mark multiline formulas.

\begin{empheq}[/box=tcbhighmath]{align}
a &= \sin(z) \\
E &= mc^2 + \int_a^b x \, dx
\end{empheq}

\begin{empheq}[/box=tcbhighmath]{align}
a &= \sin(z) \\
E &= mc^2 + \int_a^b x \, dx
\end{empheq}

Besides \texttt{\textbackslash tcbhighmath}, one can easily define an independent new box based on \texttt{\textbackslash tcbox} which acts like \texttt{\textbackslash tcbhighmath}:

\begin{empheq}[/box=otherbox]{align}
a &= \sin(z) \\
E &= mc^2 + \int_a^b x \, dx
\end{empheq}

\begin{equation}
\begin{empheq}[/box=tcbhighmath]{align}
\tcbhighmath{E} &= mc^2
\end{empheq}
\end{equation}
18.2 Option Keys of the Library

/tcb/separatortext=⟨sign⟩ (no default, initially :)

The given ⟨sign⟩ is used inside the title text of a theorem as separator between display name combined with number and the specific title text. It is omitted, if there is no specific title text.

```latex
\begin{document}
% \usepackage{amssymb}
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}[
{colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
separator sign={\ $\blacktriangleright$}}]{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}
\end{document}
```

Theorem 18.5 ▶ My example

My theorem text.

/tcb/separatortext colon (style, no value, initially set)

Sets /tcb/separatortext to the default colon : sign.

/tcb/separatortext dash (style, no value)

Sets /tcb/separatortext to an en-dash sign.

```latex
\begin{document}
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}[
{colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
separator sign dash}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}
\end{document}
```

Theorem 18.6 – My example

My theorem text.

/tcb/separatortext none (style, no value)

Sets /tcb/separatortext to empty.

```latex
\begin{document}
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}[
{colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
separator sign none}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}
\end{document}
```

Theorem 18.7 My example

My theorem text.
The given \langle left \rangle and \langle right \rangle delimiter signs are used to frame the descriptive title text of a theorem.

\begin{someother}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{someother}

Theorem 18.8: «My example»

My theorem text.

Theorem 18.9: (My example)

My theorem text.

Theorem 18.10: My example

My theorem text.
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}\% \{colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, description delimiters=\{\glqq\}\{\grqq\}, description font=\mdseries\itshape\{theo\} \begin{sometheorem}{My example}\{\} My theorem text. \end{sometheorem}

Theorem 18.11: „My example“

My theorem text.

\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}\% \{colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, description formatter=\formbox, \begin{sometheorem}{My example}\{\} My theorem text. \end{sometheorem}

Theorem 18.12: My example

My theorem text.

\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}\% \{colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, terminator sign=\., \begin{sometheorem}{My example}\{\} My theorem text. \end{sometheorem}

Theorem 18.13: My example.

My theorem text.
Sets `/tcb/terminator sign colon` to the colon : sign.

```
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}
```

Theorem 18.14 – My example:

```
My theorem text.
```

Sets `/tcb/terminator sign dash` to an en-dash sign.

```
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}
```

Theorem 18.15: My example –

```
My theorem text.
```

Sets `/tcb/terminator sign none` to the default empty text.

```
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{myex}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}
```

See Example~\ref{theo*myex}.

Theorem 18.16: My example

```
My theorem text.
```

See Example 18.16.

\textit{N} 2016-04-19

`/tcb/label separator=(separator)`

The given \langle separator \rangle is used for labels created with environments which are defined themselves by `\newtcbtheorem\[P.371\]`. This \langle separator \rangle is put between \langle prefix \rangle (defined by `\newtcbtheorem\[P.371\]`) and \langle marker \rangle (defined by an actual theorem environment).

```
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{myex}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}
```

See Example \ref{theo*myex}.
The given \langle style \rangle is used in connection with labels created with environments which are defined themselves by \newtcbtheorem \textsuperscript{P.371}. This \langle style \rangle uses one argument which is automatically set to the full label marker of the environment, i.e. a text consisting of \langle prefix \rangle (defined by \newtcbtheorem \textsuperscript{P.371}), \langle tcb/label separator \rangle \textsuperscript{P.379}, and \langle marker \rangle (defined by an actual theorem environment).

\begin{tcbtheorem}[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}{colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{myex2}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}

This automated \hyperlink{theo:myex2}{hyper target can be linked to with a hyper link}.

Theorem 18.17: My example

My theorem text.

This automated hyper target can be linked to with a hyper link.

A second usage of /tcb/theorem full label supplement overwrites the first setting.

\begin{tcbtheorem}[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}{colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, theorem label supplement={hypertarget={XYZ-##1}}, theorem full label supplement={code={\marginnote{##1}}}}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{myex3}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}

This automated \hyperlink{XYZ-myex3}{hyper target can be linked to with a hyper link}.

Theorem 18.18: My example

My theorem text.

This automated hyper target can be linked to with a hyper link.
Sets the hanging indent of the theorem title to `auto` or the given `<length>`. For `auto`, the hanging indent matches the display name, number and separator sign of the theorem. If `<length>` is negative, the theorem title is indented positively without hanging indent.

\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}
\begin{sometheorem}{This is a very long and complicated title for a quite short and nearly empty theorem}{myexA1}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}

\begin{sometheorem}[theorem hanging indent=5mm]{This is a very long and complicated title for a quite short and nearly empty theorem}{myexA2}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}

\begin{sometheorem}[theorem hanging indent=0pt]{This is a very long and complicated title for a quite short and nearly empty theorem}{myexA3}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}

\begin{sometheorem}[theorem hanging indent=-5mm]{This is a very long and complicated title for a quite short and nearly empty theorem}{myexA4}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}

Theorem 18.19: This is a very long and complicated title for a quite short and nearly empty theorem

My theorem text.

Theorem 18.20: This is a very long and complicated title for a quite short and nearly empty theorem

My theorem text.

Theorem 18.21: This is a very long and complicated title for a quite short and nearly empty theorem

My theorem text.

Theorem 18.22: This is a very long and complicated title for a quite short and nearly empty theorem

My theorem text.
/tcb/theorem name and number (style, no value, initially set)
Prints theorem name followed by theorem number inside the title.

\begin{sometheorem}{My example} {My theorem text.}
\end{sometheorem}

18.23: My example
My theorem text.

/tcb/theorem number and name (style, no value)
Prints theorem number followed by theorem name inside the title.

\begin{sometheorem}{My example} {My theorem text.}
\end{sometheorem}

18.24 Theorem: My example
My theorem text.

/tcb/theorem name (style, no value)
Prints theorem name without number inside the title.

\begin{sometheorem}{My example} {My theorem text.}
\end{sometheorem}

Theorem: My example
18.25
My theorem text.

/tcb/theorem number (style, no value)
Prints theorem number without name inside the title.

\begin{sometheorem}{My example} {My theorem text.}
\end{sometheorem}

18.26: My example
My theorem text.
This key can be used directly in a \textcolorbox for a more flexible approach to create a theorem type box. The $\langle$display name$\rangle$ is used together with the increased $\langle$counter$\rangle$ value and the $\langle$title$\rangle$ for the title line of the box. Additionally, a $\label$ with the given $\langle$marker$\rangle$ is created.

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=green!10,colframe=green!50!black,arc=4mm, theorem={Test}{texercise}{Direct usage}{myMarker}]
Here, we see the test \ref{myMarker}.
\end{tcolorbox}

Test 1: Direct usage

Here, we see the test 1.

For a common appearance inside the document, the key \texttt{theorem} should not be used directly as in the example above, but as part of a new environment created by hand or using $\texttt{newtcbtheorem}$ \textsuperscript{P.371}. 
/tcb/highlight math

A style which is used for \tcbhighmath \textsuperscript{P.374} and which is predefined as notitle,nophantom,colframe=red, colback=yellow!25!white. It can be changed with the usual \texttt{pgf} techniques or with /tcb/highlight math style.

\begin{align*}
\tcbhighmath
1 + 1 &= 2, \\
\tcbset{highlight math/.append style={left=0mm, right=0mm, top=0mm, bottom=0mm}}
\tcbhighmath
1 + 1 &= 2.
\end{align*}

/tcb/highlight math style=⟨style definition⟩

Changes the definition for /tcb/highlight math to notitle,nophantom plus the given ⟨style definition⟩. See \tcbhighmath \textsuperscript{P.374} for another example.

% \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\tcbset{highlight math style={enhanced,%<-- needed for the 'remember' options
colframe=red, colback=red!10!white, boxsep=0pt}}
\begin{align*}
\tcbhighmath[\text{remember as=fx}]{f(x)}
&= \int\limits_{1}^{x} \frac{1}{t^2} \, dt \\
&= \left[-\frac{1}{t}\right]_{1}^{x} \\
&= -\frac{1}{x} + \frac{1}{1} \\
&= 1 - \frac{1}{x}.
\end{align*}
Sets the upper part to mathematical mode with font \displaystyle.

Sets the lower part to mathematical mode with font \displaystyle.

Sets the upper part and lower part to mathematical mode with font \displaystyle.

The following styles are only tested to work with the original amsmath environments. If e.g. the equation environment is redefined as gather, then /tcb/ams equation should could not be used. Obviously, you are encouraged to use /tcb/ams gather \( \text{P.387} \) in this case.

U 2014-10-30 /tcb/ams equation upper (style, no value)

U 2014-10-30 /tcb/ams equation lower (style, no value)

U 2014-10-30 /tcb/ams equation (style, no value)

U 2014-10-30 /tcb/ams equation* upper (style, no value)

U 2014-10-30 /tcb/ams equation* lower (style, no value)

U 2014-10-30 /tcb/ams equation* (style, no value)
Adds an `amsmath align` environment to the start and end of the upper part.

Adds an `amsmath align` environment to the start and end of the lower part.

Adds an `amsmath align` environment to the start and end of the upper and lower part.

\begin{tcolorbox}[ams align,colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black]
  \[
  \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty. \\
  \int x^2 \, d\!x = \frac{1}{3} x^3 + c.
  
  (16) \quad (17)
  
  \end{tcolorbox}

Adds an `amsmath align*` environment to the start and end of the upper part.

Adds an `amsmath align*` environment to the start and end of the lower part.

Adds an `amsmath align*` environment to the start and end of the upper and lower part.

\begin{tcolorbox}[ams align*,colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black]
  \[
  \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty. \\
  \int x^2 \, d\!x = \frac{1}{3} x^3 + c.
  
  (16) \quad (17)
  
  \end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/ams gather upper (style, no value)

Add an amsmath gather environment to the start and end of the upper part.

/tcb/ams gather lower (style, no value)

Add an amsmath gather environment to the start and end of the lower part.

/tcb/ams gather (style, no value)

Add an amsmath gather environment to the start and end of the upper \textit{and} lower part.

\begin{tcolorbox}[ams gather,colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black]
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty. \\
\int x^2 \, dx = \frac{1}{3} x^3 + c.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/ams gather* upper (style, no value)

Add an amsmath gather* environment to the start and end of the upper part.

/tcb/ams gather* lower (style, no value)

Add an amsmath gather* environment to the start and end of the lower part.

/tcb/ams gather* (style, no value)

Add an amsmath gather* environment to the start and end of the upper \textit{and} lower part.

\begin{tcolorbox}[ams gather*,colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black]
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty. \\
\int x^2 \, dx = \frac{1}{3} x^3 + c.
\end{tcolorbox}
Neutralizes the \abovedisplayskip of a following align or gather environment for the upper part. Note that the text content has to start with such a formula.

Neutralizes the \abovedisplayskip of a following align or gather environment for the lower part. Note that the text content has to start with such a formula.

Neutralizes the \abovedisplayskip of a following align or gather environment for the upper part and lower part. Note that the text content has to start with such a formula.

\begin{tcolorbox}[ams nodisplayskip,colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black]
\begin{gather}
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty.\tag{20}\label{sum}
\int x^2 \, dx = \frac{1}{3} x^3 + c.\tag{21}\label{int}
\end{gather}
And now for something completely different.
\end{tcolorbox}

New colored mathematical environments are easily created using \newtcolorbox→P.15.

\begin{tcolorbox}[mymath]{ams gather*,colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black}
\begin{mymath}
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty.
\int x^2 \, dx = \frac{1}{3} x^3 + c.
\end{mymath}
And now for something completely different.
\end{tcolorbox}

All described options like \tcbset{ams gather upper}→P.387, \tcbset{ams gather lower}→P.387 are (partially) setting (overwriting) the keys \tcbset{before upper}→P.70, \tcbset{after upper}→P.71, \tcbset{before lower}→P.72, \tcbset{after lower}→P.73. Therefore, e.g. \tcbset{ams gather,before upper=\text{Pythagoras:}} produces an invalid result. For this case, you are invited to use \tcbset{ams gather,before upper app=\text{Pythagoras:}}, see /tcb/before upper app→P.464.
\texttt{tcbtheorem style=(name)}
(no default, initially \texttt{standard})

Applies a predefined style \texttt{(name)} to the theorem environment. Some of the feasible \texttt{(name)} values resemble style names from the packages \texttt{theorem} and \texttt{ntheorem} to give convenient access to known patterns.

| The styles alter /tcb/seperator sign \textsuperscript{P.376}, /tcb/description delimiters \textsuperscript{P.377}, /tcb/terminator sign \textsuperscript{P.378}, and more. Therefore, one should apply such keys \textit{after} a theorem style. |

For the following examples, we use:

\begin{tcbitemize}
\item \texttt{standard}: This is the initial value.
\item \texttt{change standard}
\item \texttt{plain}
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}
\item \texttt{standard}
\item \texttt{change standard}
\item \texttt{plain}
\end{tcbitemize}
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Break</th>
<th>Theorem 18.30 (break):</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This is my theorem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$a^2 + b^2 = c^2$.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plain apart</th>
<th>Theorem 18.31 (plain)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This is my theorem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$a^2 + b^2 = c^2$.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Change</th>
<th>18.32 Theorem (change):</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This is my theorem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$a^2 + b^2 = c^2$.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Change break</th>
<th>18.33 Theorem (change break):</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This is my theorem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$a^2 + b^2 = c^2$.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Change apart</th>
<th>18.34 Theorem (change apart)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This is my theorem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$a^2 + b^2 = c^2$.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
This is my theorem. \( a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \)

18.35 Theorem (margin): This is my theorem.
\[ a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \]

18.36 Theorem (margin): This is my theorem.
\[ a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \]

\begin{theorem}[theorem style=margin break,left=10mm]{margin break}{18.37 Theorem (margin break):}
This is my theorem.
\[ a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \]

18.38 Theorem (margin break):
This is my theorem.
\[ a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \]

\begin{theorem}[theorem style=margin apart,left=10mm]{margin apart}{18.39 Theorem (margin apart)}
This is my theorem.
\[ a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \]

18.40 Theorem (margin apart)
This is my theorem.
\[ a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \]
18.3 Examples for Definitions and Theorems

In the following, the application of \texttt{newtcbtheorem}\textsuperscript{P.371} to highlight mathematical definitions, theorems, or the like is demonstrated.

At first, additional \texttt{tcb} keys are created for the appearance of the colored boxes. It is assumed that theorems and corollaries should be identically colored. All following environments are numbered with a common counter, but this can be changed easily. Here, the counter output is supplemented by the subsection number. Further, the \texttt{cleveref} package [6] is used for clever references.

\begin{footnotesize}
\begin{Verbatim}
\usepackage{cleveref}
\tcbset{
defstyle/.style={fonttitle=\bfseries\upshape, fontupper=\slshape, arc=0mm, colback=blue!5!white,colframe=blue!75!black},
      theostyle/.style={fonttitle=\bfseries\upshape, fontupper=\slshape, colback=red!10!white,colframe=red!75!black},
}
\NewTcbTheorem[number within=subsection,crefname={definition}{definitions}]
%   {Definition}{Definition}{defstyle}{def}
\NewTcbTheorem{use counter from=Definition,crefname={theorem}{theorems}]
%   {Theorem}{Theorem}{theostyle}{theo}
\NewTcbTheorem{use counter from=Definition,crefname={corollary}{corollaries}]
%   {Corollary}{Corollary}{theostyle}{cor}
\end{Verbatim}
\end{footnotesize}

By \texttt{newtcbtheorem}\textsuperscript{P.371}, commonly numbered theorem environments are created now. \texttt{defstyle} and \texttt{theostyle} are used for the appearance.

Now, everything is prepared for the following examples.

The following theorem is numbered as \Cref{theo:diffbarstetig} and referenced with the marker \texttt{theo:diffbarstetig}.

\begin{Theorem}{Differenzierbarkeit bedingt Stetigkeit, wobei diese Benennung zu Testzwecken ungewöhnlich lang ist}{diffbarstetig}
\begin{itemize}
\item Eine Funktion $f: I \to \mathbb{R}$ ist in $x_0 \in I$ stetig, wenn $f$ in $x_0$ differenzierbar ist.
\end{itemize}
\end{Theorem}

The following theorem is numbered as Theorem 18.3.1 and referenced with the marker \texttt{theo:diffbarstetig}.

\begin{Theorem}{Differenzierbarkeit bedingt Stetigkeit, wobei diese Benennung zu Testzwecken ungewöhnlich lang ist}{diffbarstetig}
\begin{itemize}
\item Eine Funktion $f: I \to \mathbb{R}$ ist in $x_0 \in I$ stetig, wenn $f$ in $x_0$ differenzierbar ist.
\end{itemize}
\end{Theorem}
The following definition is numbered as \Cref{def:diffbarkeit} and referenced with the marker \texttt{def:diffbarkeit}.

\begin{Definition}{Differenzierbarkeit}{diffbarkeit}
Eine Funktion $f: I \to \mathbb{R}$ auf einem Intervall $I$ heißt in $x_0 \in I$ differenzierbar oder linear approximierbar, wenn der Grenzwert

\begin{equation*}
\lim_{x \to x_0} \frac{f(x)-f(x_0)}{x-x_0} = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(x_0+h)-f(x_0)}{h}
\end{equation*}

existiert. Bei Existenz heißt dieser Grenzwert Ableitung oder Differentialquotient von $f$ in $x_0$ und man schreibt für ihn

\begin{equation*}
f'(x_0) \quad \text{oder} \quad \frac{df}{dx}(x_0).
\end{equation*}

\end{Definition}

The following corollary is numbered as Corollary 18.3.3 and referenced with the marker \texttt{cor:nullstellen}.

\begin{Corollary}{Nullstellenexistenz}{nullstellen}
Ist $f: [a,b] \to \mathbb{R}$ stetig und haben $f(a)$ und $f(b)$ entgegengesetzte Vorzeichen, also $f(a)f(b)<0$, so besitzt $f$ eine Nullstelle $x_0 \in ]a,b[$, also $f(x_0)=0$.
\end{Corollary}

The following definition is numbered as Definition 18.3.2 and referenced with the marker def:diffbarkeit.

\begin{Definition}{Differenzierbarkeit}{diffbarkeit}
Eine Funktion $f: I \to \mathbb{R}$ auf einem Intervall $I$ heißt in $x_0 \in I$ differenzierbar oder linear approximierbar, wenn der Grenzwert

\begin{equation*}
\lim_{x \to x_0} \frac{f(x)-f(x_0)}{x-x_0} = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(x_0+h)-f(x_0)}{h}
\end{equation*}

existiert. Bei Existenz heißt dieser Grenzwert Ableitung oder Differentialquotient von $f$ in $x_0$ und man schreibt für ihn

\begin{equation*}
f'(x_0) \quad \text{oder} \quad \frac{df}{dx}(x_0).
\end{equation*}

\end{Definition}

The following corollary is numbered as \Cref{cor:nullstellen} and referenced with the marker \texttt{cor:nullstellen}.

\begin{Corollary}{Nullstellenexistenz}{nullstellen}
Ist $f: [a,b] \to \mathbb{R}$ stetig und haben $f(a)$ und $f(b)$ entgegengesetzte Vorzeichen, also $f(a)f(b)<0$, so besitzt $f$ eine Nullstelle $x_0 \in ]a,b[$, also $f(x_0)=0$.
\end{Corollary}

Corollary 18.3.3: Nullstellenexistenz

Ist $f: [a,b] \to \mathbb{R}$ stetig und haben $f(a)$ und $f(b)$ entgegengesetzte Vorzeichen, also $f(a)f(b)<0$, so besitzt $f$ eine Nullstelle $x_0 \in ]a,b[$, also $f(x_0)=0$. 

393
Theorem 18.3.4: Hinreichende Bedingung für Wendepunkte

$f$ sei eine auf einem Intervall $[a,b]$ dreimal stetig differenzierbare Funktion. Ist $f''(x_0)=0$ in $x_0 \in [a,b]$ und $f'''(x_0) \neq 0$, so ist $(x_0,f(x_0))$ ein Wendepunkt von $f$.

Theorem 18.3.5 (Mittelwertsatz für $n$ Variable)

Es sei $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $D \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ eine offene Menge und $f \in C^1(D,\mathbb{R})$. Dann gibt es auf jeder Strecke $[x_0,x] \subseteq D$ einen Punkt $\xi \in [x_0,x]$, so dass gilt

$$f(x) - f(x_0) = \langle \text{grad } f(\xi), x-x_0 \rangle$$

Here, \texttt{cleveref} support is used to reference Theorem 18.3.5 on Page 394. This theorem can also be referenced by \texttt{Vref} resulting in Theorem 18.3.5.

Note that \texttt{/tcb/label type=\textit{P.111}} was used in the example above to feed \texttt{cleveref} with the needed name information.
Here, using \texttt{\Vref} resulting in \Vref{theo:meanvaluetheorem} is more interesting\ldots

Here, using \texttt{\Vref} resulting in Theorem 18.3.5 on the preceding page is more interesting...

\begin{YetAnotherTheorem}{Mittelwertsatz für $n$ Variable}{mittelwertsatz_n2}
Es sei $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $D \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ eine offene Menge und $f \in C^1(D, \mathbb{R})$. Dann gibt es auf jeder Strecke $[x_0, x] \subset D$ einen Punkt $\xi \in [x_0, x]$, so dass gilt
\begin{equation*}
f(x) - f(x_0) = \operatorname{grad} f(\xi)^\top (x-x_0)
\end{equation*}
\end{YetAnotherTheorem}

\begin{YetAnotherTheorem}{Mittelwertsatz für $n$ Variable}{mittelwertsatz_n3}
Es sei $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $D \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ eine offene Menge und $f \in C^1(D, \mathbb{R})$. Dann gibt es auf jeder Strecke $[x_0, x] \subset D$ einen Punkt $\xi \in [x_0, x]$, so dass gilt
\begin{equation*}
f(x) - f(x_0) = \operatorname{grad} f(\xi)^\top (x-x_0)
\end{equation*}
\end{YetAnotherTheorem}
You need more attention for your theorems? Here, you are ...

\begin{Theorem}[enhanced,
  fuzzy halo=3mm with yellow,
  fuzzy halo=2mm with red,
  fuzzy halo=1mm with yellow,
  watermark color=red!35!white,
  watermark text={Overacting Fundamental Theorem}]%
{Fundamental Theorem of Theorems}{fundamental}%
\lipsum[1-2]
\end{Theorem}

Overacting Fundamental Theorem

Theorem 18.3.8: Fundamental Theorem of Theorems


Let’s try a more conservative approach:

\begin{YetAnotherTheorem}[Mittelwertsatz für \(n\) Variable]{mittelwertsatz_n4}%
Es sei \(n\in\mathbb{N}\), \(D\subseteq\mathbb{R}^n\) eine offene Menge und \(f\in C^1(D,\mathbb{R})\). Dann gibt es auf jeder Strecke \([x_0,x]\subset D\) einen Punkt \(\xi\in[x_0,x]\), so dass gilt
\begin{equation*}
f(x)-f(x_0) = \operatorname{grad} f(\xi)^\top(x-x_0)
\end{equation*}
\end{YetAnotherTheorem}

Theorem 18.3.9 (Mittelwertsatz für \(n\) Variable): Es sei \(n\in\mathbb{N}\), \(D\subseteq\mathbb{R}^n\) eine offene Menge und \(f\in C^1(D,\mathbb{R})\). Dann gibt es auf jeder Strecke \([x_0,x]\subset D\) einen Punkt \(\xi\in[x_0,x]\), so dass gilt
\[
f(x) - f(x_0) = \operatorname{grad} f(\xi)^\top(x - x_0)
\]
18.4 Using other theorem environments with \texttt{tcolorbox}

Instead of creating theorem environments with the methods described before, environments from other packages can be boxed with a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

Environments may be created e.g. by methods from the \texttt{theorem} package or the \texttt{amsthm} package. \texttt{\texttt{tcolorbox}environment} \texttt{\texttt{\textbackslash \texttt{P}}\texttt{.22}} can be used to put a box around these environments.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\textit{Definition in the preamble:}

\begin{verbatim}
\usepackage{amsthm}
\newtheorem{lem}{Lemma} % from `amsthm'
\newtheorem{proof}{Proof} % from `amsthm'
\tcolorboxenvironment{lem}{enhanced jigsaw, colframe=cyan, interior hidden, breakable, before skip=10pt, after skip=10pt}
\tcolorboxenvironment{proof}{blanker, breakable, left=5mm, before skip=10pt, after skip=10pt, borderline west={1mm}{0pt}{red}}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{lem}
\lipsum[2]
\end{lem}
\lipsum[3]
\begin{proof}
\lipsum*[4]
\end{proof}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{tcolorbox}


\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

397
19 Library \texttt{breakable}

The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbuselibrary{breakable}
\end{verbatim}

This also loads the package \texttt{pdfcol}.

19.1 Technical Overview

The library \texttt{breakable} supports the automatic breaking of a \texttt{tcolorbox}. This feature is enabled by \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \textsuperscript{P.400} and disabled by \texttt{/tcb/unbreakable} \textsuperscript{P.401}.

If a \texttt{tcolorbox} is set to be \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \textsuperscript{P.400}, then the following algorithm is executed:

1. The box content is read to a box register similar but not identical to the unbreakable case.
2. If the total box fits into the current page, it is shipped out visibly unbroken and the algorithm stops.

\begin{table}[h]
\centering
\begin{tabular}{|l|}
\hline
\textbf{Unbroken Box} \\
\hline
unbroken \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\caption{Unbroken Box}
\end{table}

3. Otherwise, it is checked if at least \texttt{/tcb/lines before break} \textsuperscript{P.401} of the upper box can be placed on the current page. If not, a page break is inserted and the algorithm goes back to Step 2.

4. Now, the \textit{break sequence} starts. The upper box part or the lower box part is split such that it fits into the current page. The fitting part is named \textit{first part} of the \textit{break sequence} and shipped out.

\begin{table}[h]
\centering
\begin{tabular}{|l|}
\hline
\textbf{Broken Box} \\
\hline
first \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\caption{Broken Box}
\end{table}

5. If the remaining content of the total box fits into the current page, the algorithm continues with Step 7, else with Step 6.

6. The upper box part or the lower box part is split such that it fits into the current page. The fitting part is named \textit{middle part} of the \textit{break sequence} and shipped out. Then, the algorithm goes back to Step 5.

\begin{table}[h]
\centering
\begin{tabular}{|l|}
\hline
\textbf{Broken Box} \\
\hline
middle \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\caption{Broken Box}
\end{table}

7. The remaining part is named \textit{last part} of the \textit{break sequence} and shipped out. The algorithm stops.

\begin{table}[h]
\centering
\begin{tabular}{|l|}
\hline
\textbf{Broken Box} \\
\hline
last \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\caption{Broken Box}
\end{table}

The algorithm takes care that the optional segmentation line never appears at the end of a box. The optional lower box part is also checked to have at least \texttt{/tcb/lines before break} \textsuperscript{P.401}. 

398
In principle, all boxes of the *break sequence* share the same geometric parameters. The differences are:

- The given */tcb/before* \(^\text{\textsuperscript{P.86}}\) and */tcb/after* \(^\text{\textsuperscript{P.86}}\) values are used only before the *first* and after the *last* part of the *break sequence*.

- A special behavior between the parts of the *break sequence* can be given by */tcb/torule at break* \(^\text{\textsuperscript{P.405}}\), */tcb/bottomrule at break* \(^\text{\textsuperscript{P.405}}\), */tcb/enlarge top at break* \(^\text{\textsuperscript{P.94}}\), and */tcb/enlarge bottom at break* \(^\text{\textsuperscript{P.94}}\).

- The */tcb/skin* \(^\text{\textsuperscript{P.153}}\) decides how the *first*, *middle*, and *last* part look like. Actually, every part type has its own skin given by the options */tcb/skin first* \(^\text{\textsuperscript{P.153}}\), */tcb/skin middle* \(^\text{\textsuperscript{P.153}}\), and */tcb/skin last* \(^\text{\textsuperscript{P.153}}\). Typically, these options are set automatically by the main skin, see Subsection 19.8 from page 414.

### 19.2 Limitations and Known Bugs

- The maximal total height of the upper and of the lower part of normal breakable *tcolorboxes* is about 65536pt (ca. 2300cm) apiece. If such a part gets longer, the output will get buggy without warning. For very oversized boxes which are longer than 65536pt, use the *unlimited* value for */tcb/breakable* \(^\text{\textsuperscript{P.400}}\). With the *unlimited* setting, the applied algorithm has (virtually) no height limit for boxes, but very likely the compiler memory will have to be increased for boxes longer than 300 pages (depending on compiler settings and box content). But it is recommended to use *unlimited* for critical large boxes only.

- You can nest an unbreakable *tcolorbox* inside another *tcolorbox*, even inside a breakable one. But you cannot nest a breakable box inside a breakable box. The */tcb/breakable* \(^\text{\textsuperscript{P.400}}\) key for a nested box is ignored automatically\(^3\), i.e. inner boxes are always unbreakable.

After all, in the unlikely case you really want to have the nested box to be breakable, use */tcb/enforce breakable* \(^\text{\textsuperscript{P.401}}\) for the nested box\(^4\). But, a breakable box inside a breakable box will usually give a mess.

- Depending on the *\LaTeX* engine, if your text content contains some text color changing commands, your color may not survive the break to the next box. See the documentation for */tcb/use color stack* \(^\text{\textsuperscript{P.403}}\) for more information.

- The *perpage* option of the *footmisc* package is deliberately deactivated inside a breakable box since all footnotes are placed at the end of the box (possibly far away from the reference point).

- Making a box */tcb/breakable* \(^\text{\textsuperscript{P.400}}\) which actually is not broken creates a box which acts *almost* like an unbreakable box. Visual differences are kept as indiscernible as possible, but can appear with certain */tcb/before* \(^\text{\textsuperscript{P.86}}\) and */tcb/after* \(^\text{\textsuperscript{P.86}}\) settings, especially, if there is an automatic page break before the box.

- Lua\TeX{} version 0.95 changes the behavior of the basic \texttt{\textbackslash vsplit} (a bug?!?) resulting in badly broken boxes. Thanks to Jeremy Engel, the \texttt{\texttt{\textbackslash breakable}} library contains a patch for this which also loads the the \texttt{ifluatex} package.

---

\(^3\)Until *tcolorbox* 3.04, the */tcb/breakable* \(^\text{\textsuperscript{P.400}}\) key was not ignored for nested boxes.

\(^4\)*/tcb/enforce breakable* \(^\text{\textsuperscript{P.401}}\) acts like */tcb/breakable* \(^\text{\textsuperscript{P.400}}\) until *tcolorbox* 3.04.
19.3 Main Option Keys

\verb|/tcb/breakable=true|false|unlimited\ (default \texttt{true}, initially \texttt{false})

Allows the \texttt{tcolorbox} to be breakable. If the box is larger than the available space at the current page, the box is automatically broken and continued to the next page. All sorts of \texttt{tcolorbox} can be made breakable. It depends on the skin how the breaking looks like. If you do not know better, use \verb|/tcb/enhanced|\ref{breakable} for breaking a box. The parts of the \texttt{break sequence} are numbered by the counter \texttt{tcbbreakpart}.

- \texttt{false}: Sets the \texttt{tcolorbox} to be unbreakable.
- \texttt{true}: Breaks the \texttt{tcolorbox} from one page to another. The maximal total height of the upper and of the lower part is about 65536pt (ca. 2300cm or ca. 90 pages) apiece.
- \texttt{unlimited}: Experimental code for unlimited total height of breakable boxes. For boxes longer than 300 pages (or even shorter ones) the compiler memory will have to be increased.

\begin{verbatim}
% \usepackage{lipsum} % preamble
\tcbsset{enhanced jigsaw, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black,
  watermark color=yellow!25!white, watermark text=\arabic{tcbbreakpart},
  fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[breakable,title=My breakable box\]
\lipsum[1-6]
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\textbf{My breakable box}


Quisque ullamcorper placerat ipsum. Cras nibh. Morbi vel justo vitae lacus tincidunt.
ultrices. Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. In hac habitasse platea
dictumst. Integer tempus convallis augue. Etiam facilisis. Nunc elementum fermentum
wisi. Aenean placerat. Ut imperdiet, enim sed gravida sollicitudin, felis odio placerat
quam, ac pulvinar elit purus eget enim. Nunc vitae tortor. Proin tempus nibh sit amet
nisl. Vivamus quis tortor vitae risus porta vehicula.

Fusce mauris. Vestibulum luctus nibh at lectus. Sed bibendum, nulla a faucibus semper,
leo velit ultricies tellus, ac venenatis arcu wisi vel nisl. Vestibulum diam. Aliquam
pellentesque, augue quis sagittis posuere, turpis lacus congue quam, in hendrerit risus
Nulla facilisi. Sed a turpis eu lacus commodo facilisis. Morbi fringilla, wisi in dignissim
interdum, justo lectus sagittis dui, et vehicula libero dui cursus dui. Mauris tempor
Curabitur a leo. Quisque egestas wisi eget nunc. Nam feugiat lacus vel est. Curabitur
consectetuer.

Suspendisse vel felis. Ut lorem lorem, interdum eu, tincidunt sit amet, laoreet vitae, arcu.
Aenean faucibus pede eu ante. Praesent enim elit, rutrum at, molestie non, nonummy vel,
nisl. Ut lectus eros, malesuada sit amet, fermentum eu, sodales cursus, magna. Donec
eu purus. Quisque vehicula, urna sed ultricies auctor, pede lorem egestas dui, et convallis elit
erat sed nulla. Donec luctus. Curabitur et nunc. Aliquam dolor odio, commodo pretium,
ultricies non, pharetra in, velit. Integer arcu est, nonummy in, fermentum faucibus,
egestas vel, odio.

/tcb/unbreakable (no value, initially set)

Sets the tcolorbox to be unbreakable.

/tcb/enforce breakable (no value)

A tcolorbox inside a tcolorbox is automatically set to be unbreakable. Using
/tcb/breakable→P.400 on such an inner box has no effect. If one really wants the
inner box to be breakable, use /tcb/enforce breakable. This will usually give a mess
of shattered boxes. You are advised to not use this option.

Note that /tcb/enforce breakable has the functionality that /tcb/breakable→P.400 had
until package version 3.04 and exists for backward compatibility.

/tcb/title after break=⟨text⟩ (no default, initially empty)

The /tcb/title→P.23 is used only for the first part of a break sequence. Use
title after break to create a heading line with ⟨text⟩ as content for all following parts.
Also see /tcb/extras title after break→P.408 for formatting the title text.

/tcb/notitle after break (no value, initially set)

Removes the title line or following parts in a break sequence if set before.

/tcb/adjusted title after break=⟨text⟩ (style, no default, initially unset)

Works like /tcb/adjusted title→P.23 but applied to /tcb/title after break.

/tcb/lines before break=⟨number⟩ (no default, initially 2)

Assures that the given ⟨number⟩ of lines of the upper box part or the lower box part are
placed before a break happens.
/tcb-break at=(length)/⟨length⟩/…/(length)  (no default, initially 0pt)
Defines break points at the given ⟨length⟩ values. The first ⟨length⟩ defines the (maximal) height of the first partial box, the second ⟨length⟩ defines the (maximal) height of the second partial box, and so on. The last ⟨length⟩ value is applied to all following partial boxes if any.

- Setting a ⟨length⟩ to 0pt means that the naturally available space is used for breaking.
- Setting a ⟨length⟩ to a negative value means that the sum of this negative value and the naturally available space is used for breaking (boxes will shrink in height). Note that before version 4.10 negative values were treated like 0pt.

/tcb/enlargepage=(length)/⟨length⟩/…/(length)  (no default, initially 0pt)
Inserts a \enlargethispage{⟨length⟩} to the pages of the break sequence, i.e. allows one to enlarge (or shrink) partial boxes. The first ⟨length⟩ is applied to the first partial box, the second ⟨length⟩ is applied to the second partial box, and so on. The last ⟨length⟩ value is applied to all following partial boxes if any. Note that floating boxes will not be enlarged.

The example code enlarged the second partial box by one line, the third partial box by two lines, and all following parts are not enlarged.

If an automated page break occurs before the first partial box, the page enlargement is applied to the page before the first partial box and again to the page of the first partial box. Insert a manual break to prevent this.

In general, \enlargepage should be used at the final stage of a document for fine-tuning only.
This allows an automated page enlargement for up to \( \text{\texttt{length}} \). The algorithm can use this to avoid breaking a box, if there is enough room after enlargement. Also, the last partial box of a break sequence may be enlarged to avoid further breaking.

Note that this potential enlargement is \texttt{additive} to settings of \texttt{/tcb/enlargepage} \textsuperscript{\texttt{P.402}}. But \texttt{/tcb/enlargepage flexible} overwrites settings of \texttt{/tcb/pad before break*} \textsuperscript{\texttt{P.405}} or \texttt{/tcb/pad at break*} \textsuperscript{\texttt{P.405}}.

\begin{tcbitemize}
\item \texttt{/tcb/compress page=(\textit{option})} (default \texttt{all}, initially \texttt{baselineskip})
\end{tcbitemize}

This option controls the space management on the page which contains the unbroken box or the first part of a \textit{break sequence}. Feasible \texttt{(option)} values are:

- \texttt{all} (default value): All shrinkable glue on the page is potentially used for the unbroken box or the first part of a \textit{break sequence}. Thus, all vertical spaces on the page will potentially be reduced to their minimal values.
- \texttt{baselineskip} (initial value): Shrinkable glue up to one \texttt{\baselineskip} on the page is potentially used for the unbroken box or the first part of a \textit{break sequence}.
- \texttt{none}: The break algorithm respects the target size of the given glue values on the page. This was the initial value before version 3.34.

Note that the box \textit{content} is not influenced by this option.

\begin{tcbitemize}
\item \texttt{/tcb/shrink break goal=(\texttt{length})} (no default, initially 0pt)
\end{tcbitemize}

This is an emergency parameter if the break algorithm produces unpleasant breaks. It shrinks the goal height of the current box part by \texttt{\texttt{length}} which may result in smaller boxes. Never use negative values. \textit{Usually, this option will never be needed at all.}

\begin{tcbitemize}
\item \texttt{/tcb/use color stack=true|false} (default \texttt{true}, initially \texttt{false})
\end{tcbitemize}

Depending on the \LaTeX{} engine and loaded packages, if your text contains some color changing commands, your color may not survive the break to the next box. For some engines, there is support for additional color stacks which allow colors to survive breaks. Such an color stack can be activated by \texttt{/tcb/use color stack} with help of the \texttt{pdfcol} package. This can be done globally or per box.

Note that activating \texttt{/tcb/use color stack} inserts a color command with a \texttt{whatsit} at the begin of the upper part and of the lower part of a \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{\texttt{P.12}}. This may add additional vertical space, e.g. if your box text starts with a list like \textit{enumerate}!

- \texttt{pdf\TeX}: color stacks supported.
- \texttt{Lua\TeX}: color stacks supported, but you should consider loading the \texttt{luacolor} package \textit{instead} which avoids the spacing problem.
- \texttt{Xe\TeX}: color stacks not supported (yet?). From hearsay, with the \texttt{fontspec} package, you may use \texttt{\addfontfeatures{Color=mycolor}} to add a font color which survives the break.

If \texttt{pdfcol} cannot initialize an additional color stack for the used engine, \texttt{/tcb/use color stack} is silently ignored.
The result of the following example depends on the used \LaTeX engine and loaded packages. The right-hand side is blue, if compiled using pdf\LaTeX, Lua\LaTeX without luacolor, and Xe\LaTeX. Lua\LaTeX with luacolor gives the next but one result.

\% \usepackage{multicol,lipsum}
\begin{multicols}{2}\footnotesize
Breakable box without color stack.
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw, size=small, colframe=gray, colback=yellow!10!white, colupper=blue, enforce breakable,\% use only breakable in the real world!
vfill before first, pad at break=1mm, break at=33mm ]
Some blue text.\par\smallskip
{\color{red}\itshape\lipsum[2]}\par\smallskip
More blue text.
\end{tcolorbox}
Text after box.
\end{multicols}

Breakable box without color stack.
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw, size=small, colframe=gray, colback=yellow!10!white, colupper=blue, enforce breakable,\% use only breakable in the real world!
vfill before first, pad at break=1mm, break at=33mm ]
Some blue text.\par\smallskip
{\color{red}\itshape\lipsum[2]}\par\smallskip
More blue text.
\end{tcolorbox}
Text after box.

We do again with \texttt{/tcb/use color stack} \textsuperscript{403}. Again, the result depends on the used \LaTeX engine. The right-hand side stays blue for Xe\LaTeX and and is red and blue for pdf\LaTeX and Lua\LaTeX.

\% \usepackage{multicol,lipsum}
\begin{multicols}{2}\footnotesize
Breakable box with color stack.
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw, use color stack, size=small, colframe=gray, colback=yellow!10!white, colupper=blue, enforce breakable,\% use only breakable in the real world!
vfill before first, pad at break=1mm, break at=33mm ]
Some blue text.\par\smallskip
More blue text.
\end{tcolorbox}
Text after box.
\end{multicols}

Breakable box with color stack.
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw, use color stack, size=small, colframe=gray, colback=yellow!10!white, colupper=blue, enforce breakable,\% use only breakable in the real world!
vfill before first, pad at break=1mm, break at=33mm ]
Some blue text.\par\smallskip
More blue text.
\end{tcolorbox}
Text after box.
19.4 Option Keys for the Break Appearance

/tcb/toprule at break=(length) (no default, initially 0.5mm)
Sets the line width of the top rule to (length) if the box is /tcb/breakable → P.400. In this case, it is applied to middle and last parts in a break sequence. Note that /tcb/toprule → P.40 overwrites this value if used afterwards.

/tcb/bottomrule at break=(length) (no default, initially 0.5mm)
Sets the line width of the bottom rule to (length) if the box is /tcb/breakable → P.400. In this case, it is applied to first and middle parts in a break sequence. Note that /tcb/bottomrule → P.40 overwrites this value if used afterwards.

/tcb/topsep at break=(length) (no default, initially 0mm)
Additional vertical space of (length) which is added at the top of middle and last parts in a break sequence. In general, it is not advisable to change this value if these parts start with a rule or a title.

/tcb/bottomsep at break=(length) (no default, initially 0mm)
Additional vertical space of (length) which is added at the bottom of first and middle parts in a break sequence. In general, it is not advisable to change this value if these parts end with a rule.

/tcb/pad before break=(length) (style, no default, initially 3.5mm)
Sets the total amount of vertical space after the text content and before the break point to (length). This style sets /tcb/toprule at break to 0pt and changes /tcb/topsep at break as required. In general, it is not advisable to change this value if these parts start with a rule or a title.

/tcb/pad before break*=(length) (style, no default)
Sets /tcb/pad before break to (length) and /tcb/enlargepage flexible → P.403 to an appropriate value such that empty closing frames are avoided.

/tcb/pad after break=(length) (style, no default, initially 3.5mm)
Sets the total amount of vertical space after the break point and before the text content to (length). This style sets /tcb/bottomrule at break to 0pt and changes /tcb/bottomsep at break as required. In general, it is not advisable to change this value if these parts end with a rule.

/tcb/pad at break=(length) (style, no default, initially 3.5mm)
Abbreviation for setting (length) to /tcb/pad before break and /tcb/pad after break.

/tcb/pad at break*=(length) (style, no default)
Sets /tcb/pad at break to (length) and /tcb/enlargepage flexible → P.403 to an appropriate value such that empty closing frames are avoided.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw,breakable,pad at break*=0mm, title={For this box, the pad space at the break point is set to 0mm}]
\lipsum[1-2]
\end{tcolorbox}

For this box, the pad space at the break point is set to 0mm

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis


/tcb/pad at break=^P.405 or /tcb/pad at break*=^P.405 should be used as very last option in an option list, because they adapt other settings.

Also see /tcb/enlarge top at break by=^P.94 and /tcb/enlarge bottom at break by=^P.94.

/tcb/height fixed for=(part) (no default, initially none)

When certain amount of space is available for a partial box of a break sequence, the partial box typically is smaller than this space (depending on the box content). For given ⟨part⟩(s), the height can be set to all available space.

- none: Every partial colorbox is set with its natural height.
- first: The first partial box is set to a height which matches the available space.
- middle: All middle partial boxes are set to a height which matches the available space.
- last: The last partial box is set to a height which matches the available space.
- first and middle: The first and all middle partial boxes are set to a height which matches the available space.
- middle and last: All middle partial boxes and the last partial box are set to a height which matches the available space.
- all: All partial boxes are set to a height which matches the available space.

If the box keeps unbroken, this option is not applied. See /tcb/height=^P.58 for setting a fixed height for unbroken boxes. See /tcb/height fill=^P.61 for giving unbroken boxes maximum height.

/tcb/vfill before first=true|false (default true, initially false)

Inserts a \vfill at the begin of the first partial box to move this partial box to the end of the current page. This may be used as an alternative to /tcb/height fixed for=first to get justified columns or pages. The \vfill is not inserted, if the box gets not actually broken.

/tcb/segmentation at break=true|false (default true, initially true)

If a breakable box contains an upper part and a lower part and the break happens at the segmentation between both parts, then

- the segmentation line (or similar) is drawn as first element of the partial box containing the lower part, if /tcb/segmentation at break is set to be true.
- the segmentation line (or similar) is not drawn at all, if /tcb/segmentation at break is set to be false. This may be preferable for skins like bicolor=^P.242, tile=^P.253, or beamer=^P.257.
19.5 Extra Options for Partial Boxes

\texttt{/tcb/extras=\{\langle options\rangle\}}

(no default, initially unset)

Adds \texttt{tcolorbox} \langle \texttt{options} \rangle to every box of a break sequence after skin settings are done. This is quite late in box processing. Geometry and break settings should not be used here, because they will either be ignored or have unexpected negative results. But it is possible to change most colors, skin effects, shadows, borders, frame code, etc. Note that using \texttt{/tcb/extras} for every box is very seldom an advantage over setting the options directly. Usually, \texttt{/tcb/extras} for every box is very seldom an advantage over setting the options directly.

\texttt{/tcb/no extras}

(style, no default, initially set)

Removes all extras if set before.

\texttt{/tcb/extras broken=\{\langle options\rangle\}}

(no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \texttt{P.400} and is broken actually, then the \langle \texttt{options} \rangle are added to every box of the break sequence. \texttt{/tcb/extras} overwrites this key.

\texttt{/tcb/extras unbroken=\{\langle options\rangle\}}

(no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \texttt{P.400} but is not broken actually or if the box is set to be \texttt{/tcb/unbreakable} \texttt{P.401}, then the \langle \texttt{options} \rangle are added to the box. \texttt{/tcb/extras} overwrites this key.

\texttt{/tcb/no extras unbroken}

(style, no default, initially set)

Removes the unbroken extras if set before.

\texttt{/tcb/extras first=\{\langle options\rangle\}}

(no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \texttt{P.400} and is broken actually, then the \langle \texttt{options} \rangle are added to the first box of the break sequence. \texttt{/tcb/extras} overwrites this key.

\texttt{/tcb/no extras first}

(style, no default, initially set)

Removes the first extras if set before.

\texttt{/tcb/extras middle=\{\langle options\rangle\}}

(no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \texttt{P.400} and is broken actually, then the \langle \texttt{options} \rangle are added to every middle box (if any) of the break sequence. \texttt{/tcb/extras} overwrites this key.

\texttt{/tcb/no extras middle}

(style, no default, initially set)

Removes the middle extras if set before.

\texttt{/tcb/extras last=\{\langle options\rangle\}}

(no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \texttt{P.400} and is broken actually, then the \langle \texttt{options} \rangle are added to the last box of the break sequence. \texttt{/tcb/extras} overwrites this key.

\texttt{/tcb/no extras last}

(style, no default, initially set)

Removes the last extras if set before.

\texttt{/tcb/extras unbroken and first=\{\langle options\rangle\}}

(no default, initially unset)

This is an abbreviation for setting \texttt{/tcb/extras unbroken} and \texttt{/tcb/extras first} together. \texttt{/tcb/extras} overwrites this key.

\texttt{/tcb/extras middle and last=\{\langle options\rangle\}}

(no default, initially unset)

This is an abbreviation for setting \texttt{/tcb/extras middle} and \texttt{/tcb/extras last} together. \texttt{/tcb/extras} overwrites this key.

\texttt{/tcb/extras unbroken and last=\{\langle options\rangle\}}

(no default, initially unset)

This is an abbreviation for setting \texttt{/tcb/extras unbroken} and \texttt{/tcb/extras last} together. \texttt{/tcb/extras} overwrites this key.
/tcb/extras first and middle=⟨options⟩ (no default, initially unset)

This is an abbreviation for setting /tcb/extras first→P.407 and /tcb/extras middle→P.407 together. /tcb/extras→P.407 overwrites this key.

/tcb/extras title after break=⟨options⟩ (no default, initially unset)

If the box has a /tcb/title after break→P.401, then the ⟨options⟩ are added for all titles after the first break, i.e. all middle and last. The color, font, and alignment of titles after break can be adapted choosing ⟨options⟩, e.g. by /tcb/coltitle→P.33, /tcb/fonttitle→P.34, /tcb/halign title→P.37. Note that /tcb/colbacktitle→P.32 has to be placed into /tcb/extras middle and last→P.407.

/tcb/no extras title after break (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the title after break extras if set before.
My unbroken box


My broken box


19.6 Breakable boxes and the \texttt{multicol} package

With version 4.10, the algorithm for detecting the available height for a \texttt{tcolorbox} inside a \texttt{multicol} environment was improved with help of Frank Mittelbach. This change may impact existing user code which \textit{may} have to be adapted.

Unbreakable \texttt{tcolorbox}es can be used without special care inside a \texttt{multicols} environment from the \texttt{multicol} package \cite{multicol}. Since version 3.10, a breakable \texttt{tcolorbox} detects, if it is used inside a \texttt{multicols} environment. But choosing break points for a breakable box cannot be done by the balancing routine of \texttt{multicols}. By default, boxes will break at maximum column height. To get pleasant results, use the \texttt{/tcb/break at} \cite{tcolorbox} and \texttt{/tcb/height fixed for} \cite{tcolorbox} options.

\begin{verbatim}
\% \usepackage{lipsum,multicol} \% preamble
\footnotesize
\begin{multicols}{2}
\lipsum[1]
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw, breakable, size=title, colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=bfseries, title=My breakable box, pad at break=1mm, break at=-\baselineskip/0pt ]
\lipsum[2-4]
\end{tcolorbox}
\lipsum[4]
\end{multicols}
\end{verbatim}


\begin{mybreakablebox}


\end{mybreakablebox}
This example is already set inside a `multicols` environment. This time, a `middle` part has full column height (here `\textheight`). `/tcb/height fixed for \textheight` is used to spread this box part over the full height to align with neighboring columns.

```latex
% \usepackage{lipsum, multicols}
\begin{lipsum}[1]

\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced jigsaw, breakable, size=title, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, fonttitle=\bfseries, title=My breakable box, pad at break=2mm, break at=-\baselineskip/0pt, height fixed for=middle ]
\lipsum[2-7]
\end{tcolorbox}
\lipsum[8]
\end{lipsum}
```


My breakable box


Nulla malesuada porttitor diam. Donec felis erat, congue non, volutpat at, tincidunt tristique, libero. Vivamus viverra fermentum felis.


quis dolor. Donec pellentesque, erat ac sagittis semper, nunc dui lobortis purus, quis congue purus metus ultricies tellus. Proin et quam. Class aptent taciti sociosqu ad litora torquent per conubia nostra, per inceptos hymenaeos. Praesent sapien turpis, fermentum vel, eleifend faucibus, vehicula eu, lacus.


The following example has a \texttt{\texttt{tcolorbox}} which fills the \texttt{\texttt{multicols}} environment completely. Here, \texttt{\texttt{tcb/height fixed for P.406}} is used to give all three columns the full height. Note that the appropriate \texttt{\texttt{tcb/break at P.402}} value is not computed automatically but set manually.

\begin{verbatim}
% \usepackage{lipsum,multicol} % preamble
\small
\begin{multicols}{3}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw, breakable, size=small, 
  colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, fonttitle=bfseries, 
  title=My breakable box, pad at break=2mm, drop fuzzy shadow, 
  height fixed for=all, break at=11.4cm ]
\lipsum[1-3]
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{multicols}
\end{verbatim}

\textbf{My breakable box}


A breakable box is not broken, if there is enough space on the current page or column. Therefore, typical penalty insertion with \break, \pagebreak, \columnbreak, ... may only work as expected, if the box is broken at least into two parts without inserting the penalties.

To force a page or column break, \tcbreak starts a new paragraph and inserts an insane tall rule which causes a break and which is immediately discarded. You may ignore this technical information and just use it as you would use \pagebreak.

For an unbreakable box, \tcbreak is identical to insert \par, i.e. it just starts a new paragraph.

Also see /tcb/break at \→ P.402 for defining height dependend breaks.

\begin{tcolorbox}[breakable,enhanced jigsaw,size=small,  
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,  
  title=Break into parts  
]
First part \tcbreak  
Second part \tcbreak  
Third part  
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw,size=small,  
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,  
  title=You shall not break  
]
First part \tcbreak  
Second part \tcbreak  
Third part  
\end{tcolorbox}
19.8 Break Sequence for the Skins

The following diagrams document the *break sequence* for different skins. Depending on the main skin of a `tcolorbox`, the actual skins of the *break sequence* parts are displayed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=standard</td>
<td>skin=standard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=standard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=standard</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=standard jigsaw</td>
<td>skin=standard jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=standard jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=standard jigsaw</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=spartan</td>
<td>skin=spartan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=spartan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=spartan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unbroken Box</td>
<td>Broken Boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skin=enhanced</td>
<td>skin=enhancedfirst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedlast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unbroken Box with skin=enhancedfirst</td>
<td>Broken Boxes with skin=enhancedfirst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unbroken Box with skin=enhancedmiddle</td>
<td>Broken Boxes with skin=enhancedmiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unbroken Box with skin=enhancedlast</td>
<td>Broken Boxes with skin=enhancedlast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedlast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unbroken Box</td>
<td>Broken Boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skin=enhanced jigsaw</td>
<td>skin=enhancedfirst jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skin=enhancedfirst jigsaw</td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw</td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skin=enhancedlast jigsaw</td>
<td>skin=enhancedlast jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unbroken Box</td>
<td>Broken Boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skin=bicolor</td>
<td>skin=bicolorfirst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolorlast</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=bicolorfirst</td>
<td>skin=bicolorfirst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle</td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=bicolorlast</td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unbroken Box</td>
<td>Broken Boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>skin=bicolor jigsaw</code></td>
<td><code>skin=bicolorfirst jigsaw</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>skin=bicolorlast jigsaw</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>skin=bicolorfirst jigsaw</code></td>
<td><code>skin=bicolorfirst jigsaw</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw</code></td>
<td><code>skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>skin=bicolorlast jigsaw</code></td>
<td><code>skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>skin=bicolorlast jigsaw</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unbroken Box</td>
<td>Broken Boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skin=tile</td>
<td>skin=tilefirst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=tilemiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=tilelast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unbroken</td>
<td>first</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=tilefirst</td>
<td>skin=tilefirst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=tilemiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=tilemiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unbroken</td>
<td>first</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=tilemiddle</td>
<td>skin=tilemiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=tilemiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=tilemiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unbroken</td>
<td>first</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=tilelast</td>
<td>skin=tilemiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=tilemiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=tilelast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unbroken</td>
<td>first</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
19.9 Break by Hand (Faked Break)

See Section 19.6 on page 410 for real column breaks.

Since the appearance of broken boxes is done by skins, it is quite easy to 'fake a break'. For this, you actually don’t need the \breakable library at all.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My broken box,skin=enhancedfirst]
This is a box which breaks from one column to another
\end{tcolorbox} \hfill
\begin{tcolorbox}[skin=enhancedmiddle]
column. I am sorry to say that this is a trick. Nevertheless, you may use this trick for your
\end{tcolorbox} \hfill
\begin{tcolorbox}[skin=enhancedlast]
own purposes.
\end{tcolorbox}
The main purpose of this library is to store a \texttt{tcolorbox} into an array of box registers for later usage.

If the \texttt{tcolorbox} is not breakable, there is not much add-on compared to usual \TeX/\LaTeX{} box storage and usage (and you do not really need this library for that use case). For a breakable \texttt{tcolorbox}, this library allows to capture all partial boxes into a sequence of registers. The partial boxes can be used anywhere in arbitrary order.

The name of this library indicates \textit{magazine} in the sense of storage, but also in the sense of a journal where an article often is \textit{continued on page} \textit{x}. An example for this kind of application is given throughout this section starting on the right hand side. The creation of this library was motivated by Ulrike Fischer and Steven B. Segletes.

The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbuselibrary{magazine}
\end{verbatim}

This also loads the library \texttt{breakable}, see Section 19 on page 398.

The box register operations of this library are global. \TeX{} grouping will not clear the registers when leaving the current group. Also be aware that extensive use of large box arrays may eat up \TeX{}'s available memory and registers.

### 20.1 Creation and Resetting of Box Arrays

\begin{verbatim}
\newboxarray\{\langle name\rangle\}
\end{verbatim}

This creates a new box array called \texttt{\langle name\rangle}. There already is a box array available with name \texttt{default} which can be used directly. Note that the creation is a global operation.

\begin{verbatim}
\newboxarray\{myarray\}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\boxarrayreset\{\langle name\rangle\}
\end{verbatim}

Resets the size counter of a box array \texttt{\langle name\rangle} to zero. If \texttt{\langle name\rangle} is not provided, \texttt{default} is used as name. Use this or \texttt{/tcb/reset box array} before you apply \texttt{/tcb/store to box array} \textsuperscript{P.426}. Otherwise, all boxes would be appended to the already existing boxes. This command does not clear box registers.

\begin{verbatim}
\boxarrayreset % resets \texttt{\langle name\rangle}
\boxarrayreset\{myarray\} % resets \texttt{\langle name\rangle}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{reset box array, \% resets \texttt{\langle name\rangle}}
\end{verbatim}

Resets the size counter of a box array \texttt{\langle name\rangle} to zero. Use this or \texttt{\boxarrayreset} (which does the same) before you apply \texttt{/tcb/store to box array} \textsuperscript{P.426}.
Works like \texttt{\boxarrayreset} to reset the size counter of a box array \langle name \rangle to zero. Additionally, all allocated box registers of the box array are cleared of their content. Note that the allocated box registers stay allocated. So, this may be useful to clear memory, but not to free registers for other applications. If \texttt{\consumeboxarray} or \texttt{\consumetcboxarray} was used to apply the stored boxes, there is no advantage in using \texttt{\boxarrayclear}.

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{ll}
\boxarrayclear & \texttt{\boxarrayclear} \% clears \texttt{\texttt{default'}}
\boxarrayclear{myarray} & \texttt{\boxarrayclear{myarray}} \% clears \texttt{\texttt{myarray'}}
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

20.2 Storing Content

\texttt{/tcb/store to box array=\langle name \rangle} (default default, initially unset)

Stores a \texttt{tcolorbox} or all parts of a break sequence of a \texttt{tcolorbox} into a box array \langle name \rangle. If no \langle name \rangle is given, the already existing default box array is used. Otherwise, the box array has to be created beforehand with \texttt{\newboxarray}. Note that the box has to be \texttt{/tcb/breakable}, if the box shall break into several parts. Typically, manual break points are additionally defined by \texttt{/tcb/break at}. Otherwise, the box parts will have a length of about \texttt{\textwidth}. For most use cases, a \texttt{\reset box array} should be applied to reset the box array counter.

\begin{center}
\begin{verbatim}
% \usepackage{lipsum}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw,size=fbox,width=4cm,
    colback=yellow!10,colframe=yellow!10!black,
    enforce breakable,% use only breakable in the real world!
    break at=7cm/4cm,
    height fixed for=all,
    watermark text={\arabic{tcbbreakpart}},
    reset box array,
    store to box array]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}
\useboxarray{1}
\begin{tabular}{cc}
\multicolumn{2}{c}{\includegraphics[width=7cm]{Basilica_5.png}}
\useboxarray{2} & \useboxarray{3}
\end{tabular}
\end{verbatim}
\end{center}
If the first box part should fill the rest of the available space of the current page, you can use \pagegoal-\pagetotal minus some distance for the first element of /tcb/break at → P.402. You may want to have some additional distance to the preceding text.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,breakable,reset box array,
store to box array,break at=\pagegoal-\pagetotal-5mm/0pt,
height fixed for=first and middle]
\lipsum[1-15]
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
[blanker,width=4cm,
fontupper=\footnotesize,
enforce breakable,% use only breakable in the real world!
break at=4cm,
height fixed for=all,
watermark text=\arabic{tcbbreakpart},
reset box array,
store to box array]
\includegraphics[width=\linewidth]{Basilica_5.png}\par
\lipsum[1-2]
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcbitemize}
[raster columns=3,raster equal height,
size=small,halign=center,sharp corners,colback=blue!5]
\tcbitem\consumeboxarray{5}
\tcbitem\consumeboxarray{6}
\tcbitem\consumeboxarray{1}
\tcbitem\consumeboxarray{2}
\tcbitem\consumeboxarray{3}
\tcbitem\consumeboxarray{4}
\end{tcbitemize}
Combination of \texttt{/tcb/reset box array} \textsuperscript{\textit{P.425}} and \texttt{/tcb/store to box array} \textsuperscript{\textit{P.426}}.

Disables the \texttt{/tcb/store to box array} \textsuperscript{\textit{P.426}} option, if set before.

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{boxarraystore}{default}
\fbox{Mary}\fbox{Had}\fbox{a}\fbox{Little}\fbox{Lamb}
\end{boxarraystore}
\useboxarray{5}\useboxarray{4}\useboxarray{3}\useboxarray{2}\useboxarray{1}\hfill
\useboxarray{1}\useboxarray{5}
\end{verbatim}

\section*{20.3 Retrieving Content}

\texttt{\textbf{\textbackslash boxarraygetsize}} \texttt{\{\textit{name}\}\{\textit{macro}\}}

Stores the current size of a box array \texttt{\{\textit{name}\}} into a given \texttt{\{\textit{macro}\}}. If no \texttt{\{\textit{name}\}} is given, the already existing \texttt{\textit{default}} box array is used.

\begin{verbatim}
\boxarraygetsize{\mysize}
\foreach \n in {1,...,\mysize} { \useboxarray{\n} }
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\textbf{\textbackslash useboxarray}} \texttt{\{\textit{name}\}\{\textit{index}\}}

Typesets the box with the given \texttt{\{\textit{index}\}} number from the box array \texttt{\{\textit{name}\}}. If no \texttt{\{\textit{name}\}} is given, the already existing \texttt{\textit{default}} box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array \texttt{\{\textit{name}\}} is used. It is silently ignored, if the \texttt{\{\textit{index}\}} is out of range. Note that \texttt{\textbf{\textbackslash useboxarray}} corresponds to the standard \texttt{\textbackslash usebox} macro, respectively, \texttt{\textbackslash copy}.
\usetcbarray[(name)]{⟨index⟩}{⟨options⟩}

Typesets the box with the given ⟨index⟩ number from the box array ⟨name⟩ using \useboxarray \textsuperscript{P.428} as content of a \tcbox \textsuperscript{P.14}. If no ⟨name⟩ is given, the already existing default box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array ⟨name⟩ is used. It is silently ignored, if the ⟨index⟩ is out of range. The \tcbox \textsuperscript{P.14} can be customized by \tcolorbox ⟨options⟩.

\boxarraygetsize\{\mysize\}
\foreach \n in \{1,...,\mysize\} { \usetcbarray\{\n\}{on line,colframe=yellow, colback=yellow!10} }

\consumeboxarray[(name)]{⟨index⟩}

Typesets the box with the given ⟨index⟩ number from the box array ⟨name⟩. If no ⟨name⟩ is given, the already existing default box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array ⟨name⟩ is used. It is silently ignored, if the ⟨index⟩ is out of range. In contrast to \useboxarray \textsuperscript{P.428}, \consumeboxarray corresponds to the standard \box macro, i.e. after typesetting the box register is cleared and cannot be used again.

\boxarraygetsize\{\mysize\}
First run: \foreach \n in \{1,...,\mysize\} { \consumeboxarray\{\n\} }
\par
Second run: \foreach \n in \{1,...,\mysize\} { \consumeboxarray\{\n\} }

First run: Mary Had a Little Lamb
Second run: Mary Had a Little Lamb

\consumetcboxarray[(name)]{⟨index⟩}{⟨options⟩}

Typesets the box with the given ⟨index⟩ number from the box array ⟨name⟩ using \consumeboxarray as content of a \tcbox \textsuperscript{P.14}. If no ⟨name⟩ is given, the already existing default box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array ⟨name⟩ is used. It is silently ignored, if the ⟨index⟩ is out of range. The \tcbox \textsuperscript{P.14} can be customized by \tcolorbox ⟨options⟩. After typesetting the box register is cleared and cannot be used again.

N 2015-07-13 \textbf{boxarraygetbox}[(\textit{name})]{(\textit{macro})}{(\textit{index})}

Assigns the box with the given \textit{index} number from the box array \textit{name} to a \textit{macro}. If no \textit{name} is given, the already existing default box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array \textit{name} is used. If the \textit{index} is out of range, the \textit{macro} will be undefined.

\begin{tcolorbox}[size=small,colframe=blue!20,colback=yellow!5,on line, reset and store to box array]{Test}
\end{tcolorbox}
\textbf{ifboxarrayempty}[(\textit{name})]{(\textit{index})}{(\textit{true})}{(\textit{false})}

Tests the box with the given \textit{index} number from the box array \textit{name} for emptiness be empty and executes \textit{true} if it is empty, and \textit{false} otherwise. If no \textit{name} is given, the already existing default box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array \textit{name} is used.

\begin{tcolorbox}[size=small,colframe=blue!20,colback=yellow!5,on line, reset and store to box array]{Test}
\end{tcolorbox}
20.4 Box Dimensions

\begin{tabular}{ll}
\useboxarray{1} & width of box 1: \boxarraygetwidth{mylen}{1} \mylen \\
\useboxarray{2} & width of box 2: \boxarraygetwidth{mylen}{2} \mylen
\end{tabular}

Test width of box 1: 30.36pt
width of box 2: 0pt

\begin{tabular}{ll}
\useboxarray{1} & height of box 1: \boxarraygetheight{mylen}{1} \mylen \\
\useboxarray{2} & height of box 2: \boxarraygetheight{mylen}{2} \mylen
\end{tabular}

Test height of box 1: 9.89pt
height of box 2: 0pt

\begin{tabular}{ll}
\useboxarray{1} & depth of box 1: \boxarraygetdepth{mylen}{1} \mylen \\
\useboxarray{2} & depth of box 2: \boxarraygetdepth{mylen}{2} \mylen
\end{tabular}

Test depth of box 1: 3.69pt
depth of box 2: 0pt
Assigns the total height of the box with the given \textit{index} number from the box array \textit{name} to a \textit{macro}. If no \textit{name} is given, the already existing default box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array \textit{name} is used. If the \textit{index} is out of range, the \textit{macro} will be set to 0pt.

\begin{tabular}{ll}
\useboxarray{1} & total height of box 1: \boxarraygettotalheight{\mylen}{1} \mylen \\
\useboxarray{2} & total height of box 2: \boxarraygettotalheight{\mylen}{2} \mylen
\end{tabular}
20.5  Leaflet Example

The following full application example can be used to create leaflets. Obviously, the code can be adapted and customized in many ways.

\documentclass[a4paper,landscape]{article}
\usepackage[noheadfoot,margin=0pt]{geometry}
\usepackage[skins,raster,magazine]{tcolorbox}
\usepackage{lipsum}
\newenvironment{leaflet}{%\begin{tcolorbox}[nobeforeafter,empty,colback=white,
  sharp corners,size=minimal,left=10mm,right=10mm,top=10mm,bottom=10mm,
  width=\textwidth/3,\breakable,\break at=\textheight,\height fixed for=all,\reset box array,\store to box array,#1}\begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=3,raster equal skip=0pt,blankest]\tcbitem\consumeboxarray\tcbitem\consumeboxarray\tcbitem\consumeboxarray\tcbitem\consumeboxarray\tcbitem\consumeboxarray\tcbitem\consumeboxarray\end{tcbitemize} }{\end{tcolorbox}\begin{document}\begin{leaflet}[underlay={\node[above=5mm,font=\footnotesize] at (frame.south) {- \arabic{tcbbreakpart} -};}]{\includegraphics[width=\linewidth]{Basilica_5.png}\begin{center}\bfseries\LARGE Example\end{center}\section{Introduction}{\lipsum[1]}\section{Main Part A}{\lipsum[2-8]}\section{Main Part B}{\lipsum[9-15]}\section{Conclusion}{\lipsum[16-18]}\end{leaflet}\end{document}

4 Conclusion

Nulla malesuada porttitor diam. Donec felis erat, cursus ac, hendrerit sit amet, rutrum suscipit, magna.


4 Main Part B

Morbi malesuada, wisi viverra faucibus pretium, nullam vel, suscipit eu, mi in, cursus ac, massa.

Nulla malesuada, magna in, cursus ac, massa. Donec malesuada, magna in, cursus ac, massa.


Nulla malesuada malesuada, magna in, cursus ac, massa. Donec malesuada, magna in, cursus ac, massa. Donec malesuada, magna in, cursus ac, massa. Donec malesuada, magna in, cursus ac, massa.


Nulla malesuada malesuada, magna in, cursus ac, massa. Donec malesuada, magna in, cursus ac, massa. Donec malesuada, magna in, cursus ac, massa. Donec malesuada, magna in, cursus ac, massa.

Nulla malesuada malesuada, magna in, cursus ac, massa. Donec malesuada, magna in, cursus ac, massa. Donec malesuada, magna in, cursus ac, massa. Donec malesuada, magna in, cursus ac, massa.
21 Library \texttt{poster}

The main purpose of this library is to support creation of single page posters with \texttt{tcolorbox}.

A \texttt{tcbposter} is a \texttt{tikzpicture} where \texttt{tcolorbox}es can be placed in a column oriented manner using \texttt{\posterbox} commands. This base concept is more or less copied from the great \texttt{baposter} package.

The \texttt{raster} library, see Section 16 on page 304, can produce similar looking results and may be more appropriate depending on the actual project.

- The \texttt{raster} library has a flow oriented concept, just like a conventional text flow. The text flow (box flow) is a merely endless ribbon which gets broken into lines (and paragraphs) and the lines are broken into pages. \texttt{raster} shapes the boxes to convenient sizes to fill lines and pages in a pleasant way.

- The \texttt{tcbposter} library supports a quite free placement of boxes inside a page. Basically, boxes are placed like nodes are placed inside a \texttt{tikzpicture}. In contrast to \texttt{raster}, this is a single page and not a flow of pages. The poster is divided into columns and rows. There is a more or less gentle force to use the columns (or spans of columns) for positioning and sizing while the row placement is completely optional.

The creation of this library was motivated by Ignasi.

Inside a \texttt{tikzpicture} there should be no embedded \texttt{tikzpictures}. This rule is violated by the \texttt{poster} library. Be aware that there may be some unwanted interactions between the main \texttt{tikzpicture} and the embedded ones inside the \texttt{tcolorbox}es.

The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbuselibrary{poster}
\end{verbatim}

This also loads the libraries \texttt{skins}, see Section 10 on page 168, \texttt{breakable}, see Section 19 on page 398, \texttt{magazine}, see Section 20 on page 425, and \texttt{fitting}, see Section 22 on page 449.

21.1 Overview

You get the best overview of the \texttt{poster} library and its facilities, if you look at the \textbf{Poster Tutorial} which is part of the \texttt{tcolorbox} documentation:

tcolorbox-tutorial-poster.pdf
This creates a \texttt{tikzpicture} environment with suitable additional settings defined by the given \texttt{(options)}. Basically, \texttt{posterbox} \textsuperscript{P.441} and \texttt{posterboxenv} \textsuperscript{P.441} are used to place \texttt{tcolorboxes} as nodes into the environment, but additional TikZ code can also be used. As \texttt{(options)} all \texttt{/tcb/posterset/} keys may be applied, namely:

- \texttt{/tcb/posterset/poster} \textsuperscript{P.438}: poster settings like columns, rows, sizes...
- \texttt{/tcb/posterset/coverage} \textsuperscript{P.439} and \texttt{/tcb/posterset/no coverage} \textsuperscript{P.439}: settings for a surrounding \texttt{tcolorbox} for background and margins.
- \texttt{/tcb/posterset/boxes} \textsuperscript{P.440}: style of the \texttt{tcolorboxes} used for the poster.
- \texttt{/tcb/posterset/fontsize} \textsuperscript{P.440}: scaling of used fonts.

\begin{tcbposter}
\begin{optionlist}
\item poster = \{showframe,height=10cm,spacing=2mm\},
\item boxes = \{beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50\},
\end{optionlist}
\posterbox\{name=A,column=3,row=2\}\{My first box\}
\posterbox\{adjusted title=Second box\}
\posterbox\{name=B,column=2,span=2,below=A\}\{My second box\}
\posterbox\{adjusted title=Third box\}
\{name=C,column=2,between=B and bottom\}\{My third box\}
\end{tcbposter}
Inside \texttt{tcbposter} \footnote{P.436}, there are several predefined TikZ nodes. These nodes share a common \texttt{/tcb/poster/prefix} \footnote{P.438} which is \texttt{TCBPOSTER@} by default. This prefix is used to discriminate the poster nodes from local nodes of any embedded \texttt{tikzpicture} environment. You will never need this prefix using \texttt{\posterbox} \footnote{P.441} and its placement options, but if you want to refer to a predefined node using pure TikZ code. The predefined nodes (shown without prefix) are:

- \texttt{poster}: defines the bounding box of the poster (without the coverage).
- \texttt{top}: top position plus row spacing
- \texttt{bottom}: bottom position minus row spacing
- \texttt{middle}: vertical middle position
- \texttt{col1}, \texttt{col2}, \ldots: bounding box of column 1, column 2, \ldots
- \texttt{row1}, \texttt{row2}, \ldots: bounding box of row 1, row 2, \ldots

Further nodes are defined using the \texttt{/tcb/posterloc/name} \footnote{P.442} option. 

![Never use a \texttt{tcbposter} inside a \texttt{tcbposter}. But, if you do anyway, use a different \texttt{/tcb/poster/prefix} for the embedded poster or you surely get a total mess.]

There are several properties inside a \texttt{tcbposter} \footnote{P.436} which may be useful for advanced code (skip the following on first reading):

- \texttt{\tcbposterwidth}: Width of the poster (without margins).
- \texttt{\tcbposterheight}: Height of the poster (without margins).
- \texttt{\tcbpostercolspacing}: Column distance.
- \texttt{\tcbposterrowspacing}: Row distance.
- \texttt{\tcbpostercolumns}: Column quantity.
- \texttt{\tcbposterrows}: Row quantity.
- \texttt{\tcbpostercolwidth}: Width of a column.
- \texttt{\tcbposterrowheight}: Height of a row.

\texttt{\tcbposterset\{\langle\text{options}\rangle\}}

Sets options for every following \texttt{tcbposter} inside the current \LaTeX{} group. For example, the numbers for rows and columns may be defined for the whole document by this:

\texttt{\tcbposterset\{poster=\{columns=2,rows=3\}\}}

See \texttt{tcbposter} \footnote{P.436} for all feasible options.
21.3 Poster Settings

\begin{tcbposter}[
  \texttt{poster} = \{\texttt{showframe,columns=5,rows=2,spacing=1mm,height=4cm}\},
]\end{tcbposter}

\texttt{\textbackslash tcbposterset\{width=20cm,height=15cm\}}

For the \texttt{poster} option, see the following keys.

\texttt{\textbackslash tcb/posterset/poster=\{(option list)\}} \hspace{1cm} \text{(style, no default)}

This option can be applied inside \texttt{tcbposter} and \texttt{\textbackslash tcbposterset} to set the given poster \texttt{(option list)}, e.g.

\texttt{\textbackslash tcbposterset\{width=20cm,height=15cm\}}

\texttt{\textbackslash tcb/poster/columns=\{(number)\}} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially 3)}

Sets the \texttt{(number)} of columns for a \texttt{tcbposter}.

\texttt{\textbackslash tcb/poster/rows=\{(number)\}} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially 4)}

Sets the \texttt{(number)} of rows for a \texttt{tcbposter}.

\texttt{\textbackslash tcb/poster/colspacing=\{(length)\}} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially 4mm)}

Sets \texttt{(length)} as distance between columns.

\texttt{\textbackslash tcb/poster/rowspacing=\{(length)\}} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially 4mm)}

Sets \texttt{(length)} as distance between rows.

\texttt{\textbackslash tcb/poster/spacing=\{(length)\}} \hspace{1cm} \text{(style, no default, initially 4mm)}

Sets \texttt{(length)} as distance between columns and rows.

\texttt{\textbackslash tcb/poster/showframe=true|false} \hspace{1cm} \text{(default \texttt{true}, initially \texttt{false})}

Displays a red auxiliary mesh as optical support during poster creation. Also, every \texttt{\textbackslash tcb/posterloc/name} is displayed.

\texttt{\textbackslash tcb/poster/width=\{(length)\}} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially \textbackslash linewidth)}

Sets \texttt{(length)} as width of the poster. For a typical poster, this has not to be set manually. Especially, if \texttt{\textbackslash tcb/posterset/coverage} is present, use \texttt{coverage=\{width=\{length\}\}} instead to change the overall width.

\texttt{\textbackslash tcb/poster/height=\{(length)\}} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially unset)}

Sets \texttt{(length)} as height of the poster. For a typical poster, this has not to be set manually, but is set automatically to an appropriate value. If \texttt{\textbackslash tcb/posterset/coverage} is present, use only one if any option \texttt{coverage=\{height=\{length\}\}} or \texttt{poster=\{height=\{length\}\}}.

\texttt{\textbackslash tcb/poster/prefix=\{name\}} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially \textbackslash \textbackslash TCBPOSTER@)}

\texttt{(name)} is set as prefix for any \texttt{TikZ} node which is generated automatically by the \texttt{poster} library. This encompasses predefined nodes like \texttt{top, bottom, . . . ,} and nodes defined by using \texttt{\textbackslash tcb/posterloc/name}. Also, see Section 21.2 on page 436. For a typical poster, this value can stay as it is.
21.4 Coverage

\texttt{/tcb/posterset/coverage=\{\textit{option list}\}} \quad \text{(style, no default)}

This option can be applied inside \texttt{tcbposter} \footnote{P.436} and \texttt{tcbposterset} \footnote{P.437} and it adds an optional coverage for the poster which is a surrounding \texttt{tcolorbox} with the given \textit{(option list)}. Here, margins and background settings for the poster can be given. The \texttt{coverage} has several default \texttt{tcolorbox} settings suitable for the purpose:

\begin{Verbatim}
\texttt{\begin{tcbposter}
poster = \{showframe, spacing=1mm\},
coverage = \{height=5cm,}
\hspace{1ex} \texttt{interior style=\{top color=yellow, bottom color=yellow!50!red\}},
\hspace{1ex} \texttt{watermark text=\{My Poster\}, watermark color=white,}
\end{tcbposter}}
\end{Verbatim}

The \texttt{\{option list\}} can contain any \texttt{tcolorbox} option.

\begin{Verbatim}
\texttt{\begin{tcbposter}

\hspace{1ex} \texttt{\begin{tcbposter}
poster = \{showframe, spacing=1mm\},
coverage = \{height=5cm,}
\hspace{1ex} \texttt{interior style=\{top color=yellow, bottom color=yellow!50!red\}},
\hspace{1ex} \texttt{watermark text=\{My Poster\}, watermark color=white,}
\end{tcbposter}}
\end{tcbposter}}
\end{Verbatim}

\begin{itemize}
\item For a typical poster, the option \texttt{/tcb/spread} \footnote{P.99} will use the whole page for the poster coverage.
\item Poster margins can be adapted by \texttt{/tcb/left} \footnote{P.44}, \texttt{/tcb/right} \footnote{P.45}, \texttt{/tcb/top} \footnote{P.47}, \texttt{/tcb/bottom} \footnote{P.48}.
\item Poster background can be changed by \texttt{/tcb/colback} \footnote{P.32}, \texttt{/tcb/interior style} \footnote{P.169}, \texttt{/tcb/interior style image} \footnote{P.170}, etc.
\item Do not use \texttt{/tcb/poster/width} \footnote{P.438} and \texttt{/tcb/poster/height} \footnote{P.438} in combination with a \texttt{coverage}. Note that you may use \texttt{/tcb/width} \footnote{P.39} and \texttt{/tcb/height} \footnote{P.58} inside the \texttt{coverage \{option list\}}. Note that this also is not necessary when \texttt{/tcb/spread} \footnote{P.99} is applied.
\end{itemize}

\texttt{/tcb/posterset/no coverage} \quad \text{(style, no value, initially set)}

Removes the surrounding \texttt{tcolorbox} completely.
21.5 Common Box Settings

This option can be applied inside \tcbposter\(^{P.436}\) and \tcbposterset\(^{P.437}\) and it is used to set up the style of the \tcolorboxes inside the poster. The \<(option list)\> can contain any \tcolorbox option, but box size options are not assumed to be useful here, because the size will be determined by the placement options.

\begin{tcbposter}
\begin{quote}
poster = {spacing=2mm,columns=3,rows=2},
coverage = {height=5cm,
    interior style={top color=yellow,bottom color=yellow!50!red},
},
boxes = {sharp corners=downhill,arc=3mm,boxrule=1mm,
    colback=white,colframe=cyan,
    title style={left color=black,right color=cyan},
    fontsize=\bfseries
}
\end{quote}
\[ adjusted title=First]{column=1,row=1,span=2}{First box}
\[ adjusted title=Second]{column=1,row=2,span=2}{Second box}
\[ adjusted title=Third]{column=3,row=1,rowspan=2}{Third box}
\end{tcbposter}

21.6 Font Scaling

This option can be applied inside \tcbposter\(^{P.436}\) and \tcbposterset\(^{P.437}\). It uses \tcb/fit basedim\(^{P.455}\) and \tcb/fit fontsize macros\(^{P.456}\) to redefine \texttt{\normalsize} to \<length> and all other standard font size macros like \texttt{\small} and \texttt{\large} accordingly. This needs a freely scalable font family like \texttt{lmodern} to work. If \texttt{/tcb/posterset/fontsize} is not applied, there standard font size macros are not changed in any way.

\begin{tcbposter}
\begin{quote}
poster = {spacing=2mm,columns=3,rows=2},
coverage = {height=5cm,
    interior style={top color=yellow,bottom color=yellow!50!red},
},
boxes = {sharp corners=downhill,arc=3mm,boxrule=1mm,
    colback=white,colframe=cyan,
    title style={left color=black,right color=cyan},
    fontsize=15pt, % \texttt{\normalsize} is now 15pt
}
\end{quote}
\end{tcbposter}
21.7 Box Placement

Inside a `tcbposter` environment, this places a `tcolorbox` with additional `tcolorbox` options and the given `box content` at a place determined by `placement`. All `placement` options are described in the following. Note that `box content` cannot contain `verbatim` material, see `posterboxenv`.

\begin{tcbposter}
    \[\begin{array}{ll}
        \text{poster} & \{\text{showframe,height=4cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2},
        \\
        \text{boxes} & \{\text{beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50},
    \end{array}\]
    \posterbox[title=My title]{name=A,column=2,row=2}{My first box}
\end{tcbposter}

This is the environment version of `\posterbox`, i.e. inside a `tcbposter` environment, this places a `tcolorbox` with additional `tcolorbox` options and the given `environment content` at a place determined by `placement`. In contrast to `\posterbox`, the `environment content` is allowed to contain `verbatim` material. Note that the implementation of `\posterbox` is more efficient than the implementation of `posterboxenv`.

\begin{tcbposter}
    \begin{posterboxenv}[title=My title]{name=A,column=2,between=top and bottom}
    My first box.
    \begin{tcblisting}[size=small,colback=yellow!10]
        My \textbf{first} poster listing.
    \end{tcblisting}
    \end{posterboxenv}
\end{tcbposter}
Sets \( \langle \text{name} \rangle \) as reference for the current \texttt{\_posterbox} \(^{\text{P.441}}\) or \texttt{\_posterboxenv} \(^{\text{P.441}}\). A \text{TikZ} shape name is constructed automatically as combination of \texttt{\_poster/prefix} \(^{\text{P.438}}\) and \( \langle \text{name} \rangle \).

\begin{tcbposter}
\begin{tabular}{ccc}
\text{col1} & \text{col2} & \text{col3} \\
row1 & Example A & \\
row2 & & My first box A \\
\end{tabular}
\end{tcbposter}

\begin{tcbposter}
\begin{tabular}{ccc}
\text{col1} & \text{col2} & \text{col3} \\
row1 & First box & \\
row2 & Second box & \\
\end{tabular}
\end{tcbposter}

\begin{tcbposter}
\begin{tabular}{ccc}
\text{col1} & \text{col2} & \text{col3} \\
row1 & First box & \\
row2 & Second box & \\
\end{tabular}
\end{tcbposter}
/tcb/posterloc/span\{\textit{number}\} (no default, initially 1)

Sets the width of the current box to span \langle \textit{number} \rangle columns. \langle \textit{number} \rangle is also allowed to be a real number like 0.5 or 1.7. See /tcb/posterloc/column \textsuperscript{P.442} and /tcb/posterloc/column* \textsuperscript{P.442} for examples.

/tcb/posterloc/row\{\textit{number}\} (no default, initially unset)

If this option is applied, the box is placed at the row denoted by \langle \textit{number} \rangle. Also, the height is set as fixed according to /tcb/posterloc/rowspan.

\begin{tcbposter}
poster = \{showframe,height=2.5cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2\},
boxes = \{beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50\},
\end{tcbposter}

/tcb/posterloc/rowspan\{\textit{number}\} (no default, initially 1)

Sets the height of the current box to span \langle \textit{number} \rangle rows. \langle \textit{number} \rangle is also allowed to be a real number like 0.5 or 1.7.

\begin{tcbposter}
poster = \{showframe,height=2.5cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2\},
boxes = \{beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50\},
\end{tcbposter}

/tcb/posterloc/fixed height (no value, initially 0pt)

Sets the height of the current box span rows as denoted by /tcb/posterloc/rowspan. This can be used, if not /tcb/posterloc/row, but another height placement option is applied.
The box is placed below another box with the given \( \langle \text{name} \rangle \). Also, \( \langle \text{name} \rangle \) can be a predefined node, see Section 21.2 on page 436.

\begin{tcbposter}
\[ \text{poster = \{showframe,height=3cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2\},} \]
\[ \text{boxes = \{beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50\},} \]
\posterbox{\text{name=A,column=1,below=top}}{\text{First box}}
\posterbox{\text{name=B,column=1,below=A}}{\text{Second box}}
\posterbox{\text{name=C,column=2,below=B}}{\text{Third box}}
\posterbox{\text{name=D,column=3,below=row1}}{\text{Fourth box}}
\end{tcbposter}

The box is placed above another box with the given \( \langle \text{name} \rangle \). Also, \( \langle \text{name} \rangle \) can be a predefined node, see Section 21.2 on page 436.

\begin{tcbposter}
\[ \text{poster = \{showframe,height=3cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2\},} \]
\[ \text{boxes = \{beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50\},} \]
\posterbox{\text{name=A,column=1,above=bottom}}{\text{First box}}
\posterbox{\text{name=B,column=1,above=A}}{\text{Second box}}
\posterbox{\text{name=C,column=2,above=B}}{\text{Third box}}
\posterbox{\text{name=D,column=3,above=row2}}{\text{Fourth box}}
\end{tcbposter}
The box is placed at the position with the given \langle name \rangle. This is quite likely a predefined node, see Section 21.2 on page 436.

\begin{tcbposter}
poster = \{showframe,height=3cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2\},
boxes = \{beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50\},
\end{tcbposter}

\begin{tcbposter}
poster = \{showframe,height=3cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2\},
boxes = \{beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50\},
\end{tcbposter}
The box is broken into partial boxes. These partial boxes are placed following the given \textit{sequence} of placements. The feasible syntax for the \textit{sequence} is:

\begin{verbatim}
(column a) between (name a1) and (name a2) then
(column b) between (name b1) and (name b2) then
(column c) between (name c1) and (name c2) then ... 
\end{verbatim}

Obviously, this places the first part box at \textit{(column a)} between \textit{(name a2)} and \textit{(name a2)}. The second box part is placed at \textit{(column b)} between \textit{(name b2)} and \textit{(name b2)}, and so on.

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tcbposter}
\[\text{poster} = \{\text{showframe, height=6cm, spacing=2mm, rows=2},
\text{boxes} = \{\text{beamer, colframe=blue!50!black, colback=blue!50, colupper=yellow!50},
\}
\] \text{posterbox}
\begin{tcbposter}
\begin{array}{c}
\text{adjusted title=A} \{\text{name=A, column=1, below=top, span=2}\}
\{\text{First box}\}
\text{posterbox}
\begin{tcbposter}
\begin{array}{c}
\text{name=B, column=2, above=bottom, span=2}\}
\{\text{Second box}\}
\text{posterbox}
\begin{tcbposter}
\begin{array}{c}
\text{adjusted title=C, colframe=red!50!black, colback=red!50} \{\text{name=C, sequence=1 between A and bottom then}
2 between A and B then
3 between top and B \}
\end{tcbposter}
\end{tcbposter}
\end{tcbposter}
\end{array}
\end{tcbposter}
\end{array}
\end{tcbposter}
\end{verbatim}

\lipsum[2]

\end{tcbposter}
If the box content of a `/tcb/posterloc/sequence` is too short to fill all reserved box parts, the empty boxes are drawn with the `/tcb/placement` style. This style can be redefined, e.g. to `/tcb/blankest`, if nothing should be drawn for empty boxes.

```
\begin{tcbposter}
poster = {showframe,height=2.5cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2},
boxes = {beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50},
\end{tcbposter}
```

```
\begin{tcbposter}
poster = {showframe,height=3cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2},
boxes = {beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50},
\end{tcbposter}
```

/\texttt{tcb/posterloc/xshift}=(\texttt{length})

(no default, initially 0pt)

Horizontal shift of a box by `(length)`. 
Vertical shift of a box by \langle length \rangle.

\begin{tcbposter}
\[\text{poster} = \{\text{showframe, height=3cm, spacing=2mm, rows=2},
\text{boxes} = \{\text{beamer, colframe=blue!50!black, colback=blue!50, colupper=yellow!50}\},\]
\]
\posterbox\{name=A, column=1, row=1, yshift=-4mm\}\{First box\}
\posterbox\{name=B, column=2, row=2, yshift=4mm\}\{Second box\}
\end{tcbposter}
The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

```latex
\tcbuselibrary{fitting}
```

### 22.1 Macros of the Library

**\tcboxfit**(\{(options)\})\{(box content)\}

Creates a colored box where the given \{(box content)\} is fitted to the width and height of the box. A \tcboxfit has to have a fixed height. If no fixed height is given, a square box is constructed. In principle, most (options) for a \tcolorbox \(^{P.12}\) can be used for \tcboxfit with some restrictions. A \tcboxfit cannot have a lower part and cannot be broken.

```latex
% \usepackage{lipsum} \tcbuselibrary{raster}
\begin{tcbraster}[colframe=blue!50!black, colback=red!10!white, boxsep=0pt, top=1mm, bottom=1mm, left=1mm, right=1mm, fit algorithm=hybrid*, raster equal skip=1mm}
\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=3, raster valign=bottom]
\begin{tcbset}
% \usepackage{lipsum} \tcbuselibrary{raster}
\begin{tcbbraster}[height=8cm]{\lipsum[1]}
\begin{tcbbraster}[height=4cm]{\lipsum[1]}
\begin{tcbbraster}[height=2cm]{\lipsum[1]}
\end{tcbbraster}
\end{tcbbraster}
\end{tcbset}
\end{tcbraster}
\end{tcbraster}
\end{tcbraster}
```


With a title

This is a LaTeX length adapted automatically by most variants of \texttt{/tcb/fit algorithm} \textsuperscript{P.460}. Therefore, it never is to be changed by the user, but may be applied read-only. The \texttt{tcbfitdim} corresponds to the font size and may also be used to calculate box margins or other distances in dependency. The initial and maximum value for \texttt{tcbfitdim} is set by \texttt{/tcb/fit basedim} \textsuperscript{P.455}.

\texttt{tcbfontsize\{⟨factor⟩\}}

Selects a font size inside a tcolorbox which is scaled with the given \texttt{⟨factor⟩} relative to \texttt{tcbfitdim}. Also see \texttt{/tcb/fit fontsize macros} \textsuperscript{P.456}.
22.2 Producing \texttt{tcboxfit} Commands

\begin{verbatim}
\newtcboxfit[\{\texttt{init options}\}]{\{\texttt{name}\}}{\{\texttt{number}\}}{\{\texttt{default}\}}{\{\texttt{options}\}}
\end{verbatim}

Creates a new macro \texttt{\{name\}} based on \texttt{tcboxfit} \textsuperscript{P.449}. Basically, \texttt{newtcboxfit} operates like \texttt{newcommand}. The new macro \texttt{\{name\}} optionally takes \texttt{(number)+1} arguments, where \texttt{(default)} is the default value for the optional first argument. The \texttt{(options)} are given to the underlying \texttt{tcboxfit}. The \texttt{(init options)} allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 124.

\begin{verbatim}
\newtcboxfit{\mybox}{colback=red!5!white,
colframe=red!75!black,width=4cm,
height=1.5cm,halign=center}
\mybox{This is my own box.}\par
\mybox{This is my own box with more text to be written.}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\renewtcboxfit[\{\texttt{init options}\}]{\{\texttt{name}\}}{\{\texttt{number}\}}{\{\texttt{default}\}}{\{\texttt{options}\}}
\end{verbatim}

Operates like \texttt{newtcboxfit}, but based on \texttt{renewcommand} instead of \texttt{newcommand}. An existing macro is redefined.
\NewTCBoxFit[(init options)]{⟨name⟩}{⟨specification⟩}{⟨options⟩}

Creates a new command \langle name⟩ based on \tcboxfit → P.449. Basically, \NewTCBoxFit operates like \NewDocumentCommand. This means, the new command \langle name⟩ is constructed with the given argument ⟨specification⟩. An error is issued if \langle name⟩ has already been defined. The ⟨options⟩ are given to the underlying \tcboxfit → P.449.

Note that /tcb/savedelimiter → P.31 is set to the given ⟨name⟩ automatically.

The ⟨init options⟩ allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 124.

\begin{Verbatim}
% \usepackage{lipsum}
\NewTCBoxFit\{\mybox\}{O{} m !o}
{colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,
  width=#2,height=#2/3*2,
  IfValueT={#3}{height=#3},
  #1}
\end{Verbatim}

\begin{Verbatim}
\mybox[colback=yellow]{6cm}\%\langle\lipsum[2]\rangle
\mybox[colback=yellow]{6cm}{4cm}\langle\lipsum[2]\rangle
\end{Verbatim}

\RenewTCBoxFit[(init options)]{⟨name⟩}{⟨specification⟩}{⟨options⟩}

Operates like \NewTCBoxFit, but based on \RenewDocumentCommand instead of \NewDocumentCommand. An existing command is redefined.

\ProvideTCBoxFit[(init options)]{⟨name⟩}{⟨specification⟩}{⟨options⟩}

Operates like \NewTCBoxFit, but based on \ProvideDocumentCommand instead of \NewDocumentCommand. The command ⟨name⟩ is only created if it is not already defined.

\DeclareTCBoxFit[(init options)]{⟨name⟩}{⟨specification⟩}{⟨options⟩}

Operates like \NewTCBoxFit, but based on \DeclareDocumentCommand instead of \NewDocumentCommand. The new command ⟨name⟩ is always created, irrespective of an already existing command with the same name.
\NewTotalTCBoxFit\{\(init\ options\}\{\(name\}\{\(specification\}\{\(options\}\{\(content\}\}

Creates a new command \(\text{name}\) based on \texttt{tcboxfit} \(^\text{P.449}\). In contrast to \NewTCBoxFit\(^\text{P.452}\), also the \(\text{content}\) of the \texttt{tcboxfit} is specified. Basically, \NewTotalTCBoxFit operates like \NewDocumentCommand. This means, the new command \(\text{name}\) is constructed with the given argument \(\text{specification}\). An error is issued if \text{name} has already been defined. The \(\text{options}\) are given to the underlying \texttt{tcboxfit} \(^\text{P.449}\) which is filled with the specified \(\text{content}\).

Note that \texttt{tcbox(savedelimiter)} \(^\text{P.31}\) is set to the given \text{name} automatically. The \(\text{init options}\) allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 124.

\% \texttt{usepackage\{lipsum\}}

\NewTotalTCBoxFit{\texttt{multibox}}\{\{\begin{array}{l}
\text{nobeafter, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, width=#2, height=#2/3*2, valign=center, #1}
\end{array}\}\{\parbox[t]{\textwidth}{I shall not repeat.}\}\{\parbox[t]{\textwidth}{I shall not repeat.}\}\{\parbox[t]{\textwidth}{I shall not repeat.}\}\{\parbox[t]{\textwidth}{I shall not repeat.}\}\{\parbox[t]{\textwidth}{I shall not repeat.}\}

\multibox[5cm]{I shall not repeat.}\multibox[colframe=blue!75!white][5cm][20]{I shall not repeat.}\\
\multibox[colback=yellow, height=5cm][14cm][100]{I shall not repeat.}

\RenewTotalTCBoxFit\{\(init\ options\}\{\(name\}\{\(specification\}\{\(options\}\{\(content\}\}

Operates like \NewTotalTCBoxFit, but based on \RenewDocumentCommand instead of \NewDocumentCommand. An existing command is redefined.

\ProvideTotalTCBoxFit\{\(init\ options\}\{\(name\}\{\(specification\}\{\(options\}\{\(content\}\}

Operates like \NewTotalTCBoxFit, but based on \ProvideDocumentCommand instead of \NewDocumentCommand. The command \text{name} is only created if it is not already defined.

\DeclareTotalTCBoxFit\{\(init\ options\}\{\(name\}\{\(specification\}\{\(options\}\{\(content\}\}

Operates like \NewTotalTCBoxFit, but based on \DeclareDocumentCommand instead of \NewDocumentCommand. The new command \text{name} is always created, irrespective of an already existing command with the same name.

453
22.3 Option Keys of the Library

The font size for the content of a box with fixed width and fixed height can be adjusted automatically. This is called the *fitbox capture mode*. Note that the fit control algorithm constructs a series of versions for the box and selects the “best”. Therefore, the compilation time is quite longer than for a normal box. The \texttt{tcboxfit} macro uses this algorithm by default.

The fit control keys are only applicable to unbreakable boxes without a lower part. The box content should not change counters.

\tcb/fit

Sets the \texttt{/tcb/capture} mode to *fitbox*, i.e. enables the font size adjustment algorithm. Thereby, a \texttt{tcolorbox} acts like \texttt{tcboxfit} where the given box content is fitted to the width and height of the box. Therefore, the box has to have a fixed height. If no fixed height is given, a square box is constructed. The font dimension \texttt{tcbfitdim} can also be used to adjust the margins of the box since a box with a tiny font may not need large margins. The number of constructed boxes is saved to the macro \texttt{tcbfitsteps} for analysis.

\begin{fitting}{4cm}
\lipsum[1]
\end{fitting}

\begin{fitting}{2cm}
\lipsum[2]
\end{fitting}

\begin{fitting}{1cm}
\lipsum[3]
\end{fitting}
Shortcut for using `/tcb/fit` and setting the \textit{(width)} and \textit{(height)} values separately.

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit to=3cm and 2cm]
This box content is fitted to the given dimensions.
\end{tcolorbox}

Shortcut for using `/tcb/fit` and setting the \textit{(height)} value separately.

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit to height=2cm]
This box content is fitted to the given height.
\end{tcolorbox}

Sets the starting font dimension for the font size adjustment algorithm to \textit{(length)}. The algorithm never enlarges this dimension. Therefore, the final `\texttt{tcbfitdim}` is identical to or small than \textit{(length)}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit to=4cm and 2cm, fit basedim=50pt]
Enough words for the box.
\end{tcolorbox}

Sets the skip value of the selected font to \textit{(real value)} times `\texttt{tcbfitdim}`.

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit to=5cm and 4cm, fit skip=1.0 ]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}
Redefines the standard \LaTeX font size macros \tiny, \scriptsize, \footnotesize, \small, \normalsize, \large, \Large, \Huge, and \Huge, to set font sizes relative to the current \tcbfitdim. Note that the display skip values for mathematical formulas are respected by the redefined macros. Also see \tcbfontsize.

% \usepackage{lipsum}
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,
colframe=red!75!black,left=1mm,
right=1mm,boxsep=0mm}

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit to height=4cm]
{\Large\bfseries This text is not adapted:}\par
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit to height=4cm,
fit fontsize macros ]
{\Large\bfseries This text is adapted:}\par
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,
colframe=red!75!black,left=1mm,
right=1mm,boxsep=0mm}
\let\realHuge=\Huge

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit basedim=7pt,
fontupper=\normalsize,
fit fontsize macros]
The relative relative font size macros are also usable without the \textit{fit} algorithm:\par
{\Huge Adapted Huge} ---
{\realHuge Original Huge}
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{size=fbox,colback=red!5!white,
colframe=red!75!black}

\tcbboxfit[height=5cm,
fit fontsize macros,
fonttitle=\normalsize\bfseries,
title=Adapted title]
{\lipsum[2]}
The box is allowed to enlarge the fixed height up to the given \texttt{dimension}, before a font size fit is applied. An optional \texttt{/tcb/fit width plus} is tried after the height adaption.

% \usepackage{lipsum}
% \tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,left=1mm,top=1mm,bottom=1mm,
% right=1mm,boxsep=0mm,width=3cm,height=3cm,nobeforeafter}

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\\begin{tcolorbox}[fit,fit height plus=1cm]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\\begin{tcolorbox}[fit]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}
\\begin{tcolorbox}[fit,fit height plus=1cm]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/fit width plus=\texttt{dimension}}
\textcolor{red}{(no default, initially 0pt)}

The box is allowed to enlarge the fixed width up to the given \texttt{dimension}, before a font size fit is applied. An optional \texttt{/tcb/fit height plus} is tried before the width adaption.

% \usepackage{lipsum}
% \tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,left=1mm,top=1mm,bottom=1mm,
% right=1mm,boxsep=0mm,width=3cm,height=3cm,nobeforeafter}

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\\begin{tcolorbox}[fit,fit width plus=1cm]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\\begin{tcolorbox}[fit]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}
\\begin{tcolorbox}[fit,fit width plus=1cm]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}
Typically but not necessarily, the optional title of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is not part of the \texttt{fit} operation. If a \texttt{/tcb/fit width plus} is applied, the title is also adapted to the new width. If counters are increased inside the title text, they may be increased more than one time. To avoid this, you are encouraged to use \texttt{/tcb/phantom} or \texttt{/tcb/step and label} to set counters or use automatic numbering, see Subsection 5.1 from page 124.

\texttt{/tcb/fit width from=\langle min \rangle to \langle max \rangle} \quad \text{(style, no default)}

Sets the box width to \langle min \rangle and allows the width to grow up to \langle max \rangle.

\% \usepackage{lipsum}
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, left=1mm, top=1mm, bottom=1mm, right=1mm, boxsep=0mm, height=4cm}

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit, width=\linewidth/2]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}\par
\begin{tcolorbox}[fit width from=\linewidth/2 to \linewidth]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}\par


458
Sets the box height to (min) and allows the height to grow up to (max).

\begin{tcbbox}[mybox]{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,left=1mm,top=1mm,bottom=1mm,right=1mm,boxsep=0mm,width=4cm,nobeforeafter,fit height from=1cm to 8cm}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}
This is a tcolorbox. This is a tcolorbox. This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}
\lipsum[2]
\end{mybox}
/tcb/fit algorithm=(name) (no default, initially \texttt{fontsize})

Sets the algorithm for the fitting process after optionally width and height are adapted. In the following, adapting the font size means adapting \texttt{tcbfitdim} \texttt{+P.450}. Feasible values for \texttt{name} are:

- \texttt{fontsize} (initial): The algorithm is a bisection method that adapts the font size until certain stop conditions are fulfilled. This is the most time-consuming method but it is robust and gives pleasant results.

  - The used font has to be freely scalable for this method! Other content than text is not scaled down. The aspect ratio is fully guaranteed.

- \texttt{fontsize*}: First, the \texttt{fontsize} algorithm is applied. If the font was scaled down and the resulting height is too small, the box is squeezed to fit the area.

  - The used font has to be freely scalable for this method! Other content than text may be slightly rescaled. The aspect ratio cannot be fully guaranteed.

- \texttt{areasize}: The algorithm calculates the area size for the text without scaling the font. The text box is shaped for the needed aspect ratio in one or two steps. Finally, it is scaled down with a standard \texttt{\resizebox} macro.

  - The used font has not to be scalable. Every box content is scaled down. The aspect ratio cannot be fully guaranteed.

- \texttt{areasize*}: The \texttt{areasize} algorithm is applied, but if the content was scaled down and the resulting height is too small, the box is squeezed to fit the area.

  - The used font has not to be scalable. Every box content is scaled down. The aspect ratio cannot be fully guaranteed.

- \texttt{hybrid}: First, this algorithm estimates the needed font size in one or two steps. Then an \texttt{areasize} fitting as above is applied.

  - The used font has to be freely scalable for this method! Other content than text may be slightly rescaled. The aspect ratio cannot be fully guaranteed.

- \texttt{hybrid*}: First, this algorithm estimates the needed font size in one or two steps. Then an \texttt{areasize*} fitting as above is applied.

  - The used font has to be freely scalable for this method! Other content than text may be slightly rescaled. The aspect ratio cannot be fully guaranteed.

- \texttt{squeeze}: The text box is brutally scaled down to fit.

  - The aspect ratio is very likely to be horrible. You should not use this method for final documents.
Quality \dotfill versus \dotfill Speed

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Quality</th>
<th>\dotfill</th>
<th>\dotfill</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>


461
The following options set control parameters for the fit algorithm. Mainly, they apply to the `fontsize` variant, see `/tcb/fit algorithm` on page 460. The options should be seen as experimental and are likely to change in future versions, if necessary.

```
/tcb/fit maxstep=⟨number⟩
```

Sets the maximal step size for the font size adjustment algorithm. In normal situations, the algorithm stops before reaching the initial value of 20 steps. If the box content does not shrink, this value prevents an endless loop.

```
/tcb/fit maxfondiff=⟨dimension⟩
```

The algorithm stops, if the font size is determined within a deviation of ⟨dimension⟩.

```
/tcb/fit maxfondiffgap=⟨dimension⟩
```

The algorithm stops, if the number of lines is determined and the font size is determined within a deviation of ⟨dimension⟩.

```
/tcb/fit maxwidthdiff=⟨dimension⟩
```

The algorithm stops, if the (optionally) flexible box width is determined within a deviation of ⟨dimension⟩.

```
/tcb/fit maxwidthdiffgap=⟨dimension⟩
```

The algorithm stops, if the number of lines is determined and the (optionally) flexible box width is determined within a deviation of ⟨dimension⟩.

```
/tcb/fit warning=⟨value⟩
```

Typically, the fit control algorithm constructs several auxiliary boxes to determine the optimal one. If not switched off, the construction of the auxiliary boxes may produce many \hbadness warnings. This option key changes the \hbadness value.

- **off**: Most of `Underfull \hbox` and `Overfull \hbox` warnings are switched off (including the ones for the finally used box).
- **on**: All warnings for all auxiliary boxes are displayed.
- **final**: Only warnings for the finally used box are displayed. Note that an additional box has to be constructed for these messages.
23 Library \texttt{hooks}

The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\texttt{\tcbuselibrary{hooks}}

For the skin related options, the library \texttt{skins} has to be loaded separately.

23.1 Concept of Hooks

A hook is a placeholder in some \LaTeX{} code where additional code can be added. For example, the \LaTeX{} macro \texttt{\AtBeginDocument} adds code to a hook which is placed at the beginning of every document.

Several option keys of \texttt{tcolorbox} allow providing some code which is added to specific places of a colored box. For example, \texttt{/tcb/before upper} \textsuperscript{P.70} places code before the content of the upper part. A following usage of this key overwrites any prior settings.

The library \texttt{hooks} extends \texttt{/tcb/before upper} \textsuperscript{P.70} and several more existing keys to “hook-able” versions, e.g. \texttt{/tcb/before upper app} \textsuperscript{P.464} and \texttt{/tcb/before upper pre} \textsuperscript{P.464}. The “hookable” keys don’t overwrite prior settings but either append or prepend the newly given code to the existing code.

The general naming convention (with some small exceptions) is:

- \texttt{(option key) app}: works like \texttt{(option key)} but appends its code to the existing code.
- \texttt{(option key) pre}: works like \texttt{(option key)} but prepends its code to the existing code.

If the original \texttt{(option key)} is used (again), all code will be overwritten. Therefore, the order of the option key usage is crucial.

\begin{verbatim}
% \usepackage{array,tabularx}
\newcolumntype{Y}{>{\raggedleft\arraybackslash}X}% see tabularx
\tcbset{enhanced,fonttitle=\bfseries\large,fontupper=\normalsize\sffamily, colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black,colbacktitle=Salmon!30!white, coltitle=black,center title, tabularx={|X|Y|Y|Y|Y|Y|},% this sets `\textasciitilde before upper` and `\textasciitilde after upper` before upper app={Group & One & Two & Three & Four & Sum\hline\hline}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My table]
Red \& 1000.00 \& 2000.00 \& 3000.00 \& 4000.00 \& 10000.00\hline
Green \& 2000.00 \& 3000.00 \& 4000.00 \& 5000.00 \& 14000.00\hline
Blue \& 3000.00 \& 4000.00 \& 5000.00 \& 6000.00 \& 18000.00\hline
Sum \& 6000.00 \& 9000.00 \& 12000.00 \& 15000.00 \& 42000.00
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}
23.2 Box Content Additions

The following option keys extend the options given in Subsection 4.11 from page 69.

/tcb/before title app=(code)  (no default)
  Appends the given ⟨code⟩ to /tcb/before title\textsuperscript{P.69} after the color and font settings and before the content of the title.

/tcb/before title pre=(code)  (no default)
  Prepends the given ⟨code⟩ to /tcb/before title\textsuperscript{P.69} after the color and font settings and before the content of the title.

/tcb/after title app=(code)  (no default)
  Appends the given ⟨code⟩ to /tcb/after title\textsuperscript{P.69} after the content of the title.

/tcb/after title pre=(code)  (no default)
  Prepends the given ⟨code⟩ to /tcb/after title\textsuperscript{P.69} after the content of the title.

/tcb/before upper app=(code)  (no default)
  Appends the given ⟨code⟩ to /tcb/before upper\textsuperscript{P.70} or /tcb/before upper\textsuperscript{*P.70} after the color and font settings and before the content of the upper part.

/tcb/before upper pre=(code)  (no default)
  Prepends the given ⟨code⟩ to /tcb/before upper\textsuperscript{P.70} or /tcb/before upper\textsuperscript{*P.70} after the color and font settings and before the content of the upper part.

/tcb/after upper app=(code)  (no default)
  Appends the given ⟨code⟩ to /tcb/after upper\textsuperscript{P.71} or /tcb/after upper\textsuperscript{*P.71} after the content of the upper part.

/tcb/after upper pre=(code)  (no default)
  Prepends the given ⟨code⟩ to /tcb/after upper\textsuperscript{P.71} or /tcb/after upper\textsuperscript{*P.71} after the content of the upper part.

\% \tcbsuselibrary{theorems}
\begin{tcolorbox}[ams align, % this sets \textsuperscript{before upper*} and \textsuperscript{after upper*}
colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black,
before upper app={\frac{2}{\sqrt{2}}&=\sqrt{2}.\},
after upper pre={\\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right)&=1.}\],
\end{tcolorbox}

\[
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty. \tag{23}
\]

\[
\int x^2 \, dx = \frac{1}{3} x^3 + c. \tag{24}
\]

\[
\sin \left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right) = 1. \tag{25}
\]
/tcb/before lower app=\textcolor{code}{(code)} \textcolor{after}{(no default)}

Appends the given \textcolor{code}{(code)} to /tcb/before lower→P.72 or /tcb/before lower*→P.72 after the color and font settings and before the content of the lower part.

/tcb/before lower pre=\textcolor{code}{(code)} \textcolor{after}{(no default)}

Prepends the given \textcolor{code}{(code)} to /tcb/before lower→P.72 or /tcb/before lower*→P.72 after the color and font settings and before the content of the lower part.

/tcb/after lower app=\textcolor{code}{(code)} \textcolor{after}{(no default)}

Appends the given \textcolor{code}{(code)} to /tcb/after lower→P.73 or /tcb/after lower*→P.73 after the content of the lower part.

/tcb/after lower pre=\textcolor{code}{(code)} \textcolor{after}{(no default)}

Prepends the given \textcolor{code}{(code)} to /tcb/after lower→P.73 or /tcb/after lower*→P.73 after the content of the lower part.
23.3 Embedding into the Surroundings

The following option keys extend the options given in Subsection 4.14 from page 86.

The “hookable” versions are usable inside the document. In the preamble, they can only be used after explicit setting of /tcb/before \textsuperscript{P.86} and /tcb/after \textsuperscript{P.86} or by e.g. /tcb/parskip \textsuperscript{P.90}.

/tcb/before app\{code\} \hspace{2cm} (no default)

Appends the given \langle code\rangle to /tcb/before \textsuperscript{P.86} before the colored box.

/tcb/before pre\{code\} \hspace{2cm} (no default)

Prepends the given \langle code\rangle to /tcb/before \textsuperscript{P.86} before the colored box.

/tcb/after app\{code\} \hspace{2cm} (no default)

Appends the given \langle code\rangle to /tcb/after \textsuperscript{P.86} after the colored box.

/tcb/after pre\{code\} \hspace{2cm} (no default)

Prepends the given \langle code\rangle to /tcb/after \textsuperscript{P.86} after the colored box.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title,before app={The box follows:\[4pt\]},
after app={This is the end.}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

The box follows:

\begin{tabular}{|c|}
\hline
My title \\
\hline
This is a \textcolor{red}{tcolorbox}.
\hline
\end{tabular}

This is the end.

/tcb/before float app\{code\} \hspace{2cm} (no default)

Appends the given \langle code\rangle to /tcb/before float \textsuperscript{P.85} before the colored box.

/tcb/before float pre\{code\} \hspace{2cm} (no default)

Prepends the given \langle code\rangle to /tcb/before float \textsuperscript{P.85} before the colored box.

/tcb/after float app\{code\} \hspace{2cm} (no default)

Appends the given \langle code\rangle to /tcb/after float \textsuperscript{P.85} after the colored box.

/tcb/after float pre\{code\} \hspace{2cm} (no default)

Prepends the given \langle code\rangle to /tcb/after float \textsuperscript{P.85} after the colored box.
23.4 Overlays

The following option keys extend the options given in Subsection 4.12 from page 79.

\[\text{/tcb/overlay app} = \langle \text{graphical code} \rangle \text{ (no default)}\]

Appends the given \langle\text{graphical code}\rangle to \text{/tcb/overlay} → P.79.

\[\text{/tcb/overlay pre} = \langle \text{graphical code} \rangle \text{ (no default)}\]

Prepends the given \langle\text{graphical code}\rangle to \text{/tcb/overlay} → P.79.

\[\text{/tcb/overlay unbroken app} = \langle \text{graphical code} \rangle \text{ (no default)}\]

Appends the given \langle\text{graphical code}\rangle to \text{/tcb/overlay unbroken} → P.80.

\[\text{/tcb/overlay unbroken pre} = \langle \text{graphical code} \rangle \text{ (no default)}\]

Prepends the given \langle\text{graphical code}\rangle to \text{/tcb/overlay unbroken} → P.80.

\[\text{/tcb/overlay first app} = \langle \text{graphical code} \rangle \text{ (no default)}\]

Appends the given \langle\text{graphical code}\rangle to \text{/tcb/overlay first} → P.80.

\[\text{/tcb/overlay first pre} = \langle \text{graphical code} \rangle \text{ (no default)}\]

Prepends the given \langle\text{graphical code}\rangle to \text{/tcb/overlay first} → P.80.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Default</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/overlay middle app=⟨graphical code⟩</td>
<td>Appends the given ⟨graphical code⟩ to /tcb/overlay middle → P. 80.</td>
<td>(no default)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/overlay middle pre=⟨graphical code⟩</td>
<td>Prepends the given ⟨graphical code⟩ to /tcb/overlay middle → P. 80.</td>
<td>(no default)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/overlay last app=⟨graphical code⟩</td>
<td>Appends the given ⟨graphical code⟩ to /tcb/overlay last → P. 80.</td>
<td>(no default)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/overlay last pre=⟨graphical code⟩</td>
<td>Prepends the given ⟨graphical code⟩ to /tcb/overlay last → P. 80.</td>
<td>(no default)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/overlay broken app=⟨graphical code⟩</td>
<td>Appends the given ⟨graphical code⟩ to /tcb/overlay broken → P. 80.</td>
<td>(no default)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/overlay broken pre=⟨graphical code⟩</td>
<td>Prepends the given ⟨graphical code⟩ to /tcb/overlay broken → P. 80.</td>
<td>(no default)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/overlay unbroken and first app=⟨graphical code⟩</td>
<td>Appends the given ⟨graphical code⟩ to /tcb/overlay unbroken and first → P. 80.</td>
<td>(no default)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/overlay unbroken and first pre=⟨graphical code⟩</td>
<td>Prepends the given ⟨graphical code⟩ to /tcb/overlay unbroken and first → P. 80.</td>
<td>(no default)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/overlay middle and last app=⟨graphical code⟩</td>
<td>Appends the given ⟨graphical code⟩ to /tcb/overlay middle and last → P. 80.</td>
<td>(no default)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/overlay middle and last pre=⟨graphical code⟩</td>
<td>Prepends the given ⟨graphical code⟩ to /tcb/overlay middle and last → P. 80.</td>
<td>(no default)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/overlay unbroken and last app=⟨graphical code⟩</td>
<td>Appends the given ⟨graphical code⟩ to /tcb/overlay unbroken and last → P. 80.</td>
<td>(no default)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/overlay unbroken and last pre=⟨graphical code⟩</td>
<td>Prepends the given ⟨graphical code⟩ to /tcb/overlay unbroken and last → P. 80.</td>
<td>(no default)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/overlay first and middle app=⟨graphical code⟩</td>
<td>Appends the given ⟨graphical code⟩ to /tcb/overlay first and middle → P. 80.</td>
<td>(no default)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/overlay first and middle pre=⟨graphical code⟩</td>
<td>Prepends the given ⟨graphical code⟩ to /tcb/overlay first and middle → P. 80.</td>
<td>(no default)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
23.5 Watermarks

The following option keys extend the options given in Subsection 10.3 from page 186.

Watermarks are special overlays. The \texttt{\textcolor{green}{\textsf{hooks}}} library allows the combination of several watermarks and overlays.

\texttt{/tcb/watermark text app=(text)}

(no default)

Appends a `/tcb/watermark text` \footnote{P.186} to the colored box.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\textbf{}}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,watermark graphics=Basilica_5.png,watermark opacity=0.25,watermark text app=Basilica,watermark color=Navy]
\lipsum[1-2]
\tcbuser
This example uses a public domain picture from\url{http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Basilica_5.png}
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This example uses a public domain picture from \url{http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Basilica_5.png}

\texttt{/tcb/watermark text pre=(text)}

(no default)

Prepends a `/tcb/watermark text` \footnote{P.186} to the colored box.

\texttt{/tcb/watermark text app on=(part) is (text)}

(no default)

Appends a `/tcb/watermark text on` \footnote{P.186} the named \langle part \rangle of a break sequence.

\texttt{/tcb/watermark text pre on=(part) is (text)}

(no default)

Prepends a `/tcb/watermark text on` \footnote{P.186} the named \langle part \rangle of a break sequence.
/tcb/watermark graphics app=⟨file name⟩ (no default)
Appends a /tcb/watermark graphics→P.187 referenced by ⟨file name⟩ to the colored box.

/tcb/watermark graphics pre=⟨file name⟩ (no default)
Prepends a /tcb/watermark graphics→P.187 referenced by ⟨file name⟩ to the colored box.

/tcb/watermark graphics app on=⟨part⟩ is ⟨file name⟩ (no default)
Appends a /tcb/watermark graphics on→P.187 the named ⟨part⟩ of a break sequence. The picture is referenced by ⟨file name⟩.

/tcb/watermark graphics pre on=⟨part⟩ is ⟨file name⟩ (no default)
Prepends a /tcb/watermark graphics on→P.187 the named ⟨part⟩ of a break sequence. The picture is referenced by ⟨file name⟩.

/tcb/watermark tikz app=⟨graphical code⟩ (no default)
Appends a /tcb/watermark tikz→P.188 with the given tikz ⟨graphical code⟩ to the colored box.

/tcb/watermark tikz pre=⟨graphical code⟩ (no default)
Prepends a /tcb/watermark tikz→P.188 with the given tikz ⟨graphical code⟩ to the colored box.

\% \usepackage{tikz}
\tcbsset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
watermark color=Navy,watermark opacity=0.25,
smiley/.style={watermark tikz pre={%
\path[fill=yellow,draw=yellow!75!red] (0,0) circle (1cm);
\fill[red] (45:5mm) circle (1mm);
\fill[red] (135:5mm) circle (1mm);
\draw[line width=1mm,red] (215:5mm) arc (215:325:5mm);}}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, watermark text=Watermark, smiley]
\lipsum[1-2]
\end{tcolorbox}

My title

/tcb/watermark tikz app on=⟨part⟩ is ⟨graphical code⟩ (no default)
Appends a /tcb/watermark tikz on→P.188 the named ⟨part⟩ of a break sequence.

/tcb/watermark tikz pre on=⟨part⟩ is ⟨graphical code⟩ (no default)
Prepends a /tcb/watermark tikz on→P.188 the named ⟨part⟩ of a break sequence.
23.6 Underlays

The following option keys extend the options given in Section 10.8 on page 216. There are no app type keys since underlays are stackable by default.

\[ /tcb/underlay \text{ pre}=(\text{graphical code}) \]

Prepends the given \( \text{graphical code} \) to \( /tcb/underlay \) → P.216.

\[ /tcb/underlay \text{ unbroken pre}=(\text{graphical code}) \]

Prepends the given \( \text{graphical code} \) to \( /tcb/underlay \text{ unbroken} \) → P.217.

\[ /tcb/underlay \text{ first pre}=(\text{graphical code}) \]

Prepends the given \( \text{graphical code} \) to \( /tcb/underlay \text{ first} \) → P.217.

\[ /tcb/underlay \text{ middle pre}=(\text{graphical code}) \]

Prepends the given \( \text{graphical code} \) to \( /tcb/underlay \text{ middle} \) → P.217.

\[ /tcb/underlay \text{ last pre}=(\text{graphical code}) \]

Prepends the given \( \text{graphical code} \) to \( /tcb/underlay \text{ last} \) → P.217.

\[ /tcb/underlay \text{ boxed title pre}=(\text{graphical code}) \]

Prepends the given \( \text{graphical code} \) to \( /tcb/underlay \text{ boxed title} \) → P.217.

\[ /tcb/underlay \text{ broken pre}=(\text{graphical code}) \]

Prepends the given \( \text{graphical code} \) to \( /tcb/underlay \text{ broken} \) → P.217.

\[ /tcb/underlay \text{ unbroken and first pre}=(\text{graphical code}) \]

Prepends the given \( \text{graphical code} \) to \( /tcb/underlay \text{ unbroken and first} \) → P.217.

\[ /tcb/underlay \text{ middle and last pre}=(\text{graphical code}) \]

Prepends the given \( \text{graphical code} \) to \( /tcb/underlay \text{ middle and last} \) → P.217.

\[ /tcb/underlay \text{ unbroken and last pre}=(\text{graphical code}) \]

Prepends the given \( \text{graphical code} \) to \( /tcb/underlay \text{ unbroken and last} \) → P.217.

\[ /tcb/underlay \text{ first and middle pre}=(\text{graphical code}) \]

Prepends the given \( \text{graphical code} \) to \( /tcb/underlay \text{ first and middle} \) → P.217.
23.7 Finishes

The following option keys extend the options given in Section 10.9 on page 218. There are no app type keys since finishes are stackable by default.

\[ /tcb/finish \text{ pre}=(\text{graphical code}) \quad \text{(no default)} \]

Prepends the given \( (\text{graphical code}) \) to \( /tcb/finish \rightarrow^* \text{P.218} \).

\[ /tcb/finish \text{ unbroken pre}=(\text{graphical code}) \quad \text{(no default)} \]

Prepends the given \( (\text{graphical code}) \) to \( /tcb/finish \text{ unbroken} \rightarrow^* \text{P.219} \).

\[ /tcb/finish \text{ first pre}=(\text{graphical code}) \quad \text{(no default)} \]

Prepends the given \( (\text{graphical code}) \) to \( /tcb/finish \text{ first} \rightarrow^* \text{P.219} \).

\[ /tcb/finish \text{ middle pre}=(\text{graphical code}) \quad \text{(no default)} \]

Prepends the given \( (\text{graphical code}) \) to \( /tcb/finish \text{ middle} \rightarrow^* \text{P.219} \).

\[ /tcb/finish \text{ last pre}=(\text{graphical code}) \quad \text{(no default)} \]

Prepends the given \( (\text{graphical code}) \) to \( /tcb/finish \text{ last} \rightarrow^* \text{P.219} \).

\[ /tcb/finish \text{ broken pre}=(\text{graphical code}) \quad \text{(no default)} \]

Prepends the given \( (\text{graphical code}) \) to \( /tcb/finish \text{ broken} \rightarrow^* \text{P.219} \).

\[ /tcb/finish \text{ unbroken and first pre}=(\text{graphical code}) \quad \text{(no default)} \]

Prepends the given \( (\text{graphical code}) \) to \( /tcb/finish \text{ unbroken and first} \rightarrow^* \text{P.219} \).

\[ /tcb/finish \text{ middle and last pre}=(\text{graphical code}) \quad \text{(no default)} \]

Prepends the given \( (\text{graphical code}) \) to \( /tcb/finish \text{ middle and last} \rightarrow^* \text{P.219} \).

\[ /tcb/finish \text{ unbroken and last pre}=(\text{graphical code}) \quad \text{(no default)} \]

Prepends the given \( (\text{graphical code}) \) to \( /tcb/finish \text{ unbroken and last} \rightarrow^* \text{P.219} \).

\[ /tcb/finish \text{ first and middle pre}=(\text{graphical code}) \quad \text{(no default)} \]

Prepends the given \( (\text{graphical code}) \) to \( /tcb/finish \text{ first and middle} \rightarrow^* \text{P.219} \).

23.8 Skin Code

The following option keys extend the options given in Subsection 9.2 from page 157.

\[ /tcb/frame \text{ code app}=(\text{graphical code}) \quad \text{(no default)} \]

Appends the given \( (\text{graphical code}) \) to \( /tcb/frame \text{ code} \rightarrow^* \text{P.157} \).

\[ /tcb/frame \text{ code pre}=(\text{graphical code}) \quad \text{(no default)} \]

Prepends the given \( (\text{graphical code}) \) to \( /tcb/frame \text{ code} \rightarrow^* \text{P.157} \).

\[ /tcb/interior \text{ titled code app}=(\text{graphical code}) \quad \text{(no default)} \]

Appends the given \( (\text{graphical code}) \) to \( /tcb/interior \text{ titled code} \rightarrow^* \text{P.157} \).
23.9 Extras

The following option keys extend the options given in Section 19.5 on page 407. There are no app type keys since extras are stackable by default.

```
N 2015-07-16 /tcb/extras pre={⟨options⟩} (no default)
    Prepends the given ⟨options⟩ to /tcb/extras P.407.
N 2015-07-16 /tcb/extras unbroken pre={⟨options⟩} (no default)
    Prepends the given ⟨options⟩ to /tcb/extras unbroken P.407.
N 2015-07-16 /tcb/extras first pre={⟨options⟩} (no default)
    Prepends the given ⟨options⟩ to /tcb/extras first P.407.
N 2015-07-16 /tcb/extras middle pre={⟨options⟩} (no default)
    Prepends the given ⟨options⟩ to /tcb/extras middle P.407.
N 2015-07-16 /tcb/extras last pre={⟨options⟩} (no default)
    Prepends the given ⟨options⟩ to /tcb/extras last P.407.
N 2015-07-16 /tcb/extras broken pre={⟨options⟩} (no default)
    Prepends the given ⟨options⟩ to /tcb/extras broken P.407.
N 2015-07-16 /tcb/extras unbroken and first pre={⟨options⟩} (no default)
    Prepends the given ⟨options⟩ to /tcb/extras unbroken and first P.407.
N 2015-07-16 /tcb/extras middle and last pre={⟨options⟩} (no default)
    Prepends the given ⟨options⟩ to /tcb/extras middle and last P.407.
N 2015-07-16 /tcb/extras unbroken and last pre={⟨options⟩} (no default)
    Prepends the given ⟨options⟩ to /tcb/extras unbroken and last P.407.
N 2015-07-16 /tcb/extras first and middle pre={⟨options⟩} (no default)
    Prepends the given ⟨options⟩ to /tcb/extras first and middle P.408.
```

23.10 Listings

The following option keys extend the options given in Section 17 from page 326.

```
N 2019-07-11 /tcb/listing options app={⟨options⟩} (no default)
    Appends the given ⟨options⟩ to /tcb/listing options P.336.
N 2019-07-11 /tcb/listing options pre={⟨options⟩} (no default)
    Prepends the given ⟨options⟩ to /tcb/listing options P.336.
N 2019-07-11 /tcb/minted options app={⟨options⟩} (no default)
    Appends the given ⟨options⟩ to /tcb/minted options P.339.
N 2019-07-11 /tcb/minted options pre={⟨options⟩} (no default)
    Prepends the given ⟨options⟩ to /tcb/minted options P.339.
```
The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

```latex
\usepackage{xparse}
```

This loads the package \texttt{xparse} [15].

Note that up to version 5.0.2 this library contained code which needed the \texttt{xparse} package. Since nowadays this package has become basically a part of the \LaTeX{} kernel, the code of the library was migrated to other parts of the \texttt{tcolorbox} package. So, the remaining library is nearly a stub which only loads \texttt{xparse}.

Instead of including the \texttt{xparse} library, it is recommended to include the \texttt{xparse} package directly, \textbf{if really needed} (the \LaTeX{} kernel contains essentially everything needed). The library is kept for compatibility.
The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

```latex
\tcbuselibrary{external}
```

The purpose of this library is to support externalization of document snippets like graphics or boxes which can be compiled stand-alone. These snippets are written to external files, compiled and the resulting pdf files are included to the main document as images. The whole procedure saves compilation time, if such a snippet is costly to compile but needs to compile just once or very seldom.

There are very good alternatives to this library. One should consider the `standalone` package or the TikZ externalization library instead. The \texttt{LIB external} library is something in between and can be seen as a poor man variant of the TikZ externalization library.

The main differences between TikZ externalization and \texttt{LIB external} are:

- TikZ \texttt{external} compiles the whole original document in a sophisticated way while \texttt{LIB external} uses only the preamble or a part of the preamble of the original document.

- TikZ \texttt{external} can automatically externalize all \texttt{tikzpicture} environments while \texttt{LIB external} externalizes marked snippets only.

- Code snippets to be externalized by \texttt{LIB external} are not restricted to \texttt{tikzpicture} environments. But these snippets have to be stand-alone without dependencies to the rest of the document.

Why should somebody use \texttt{LIB external} instead of the more powerful TikZ \texttt{external}? One reason could be compilation speed, but the main reason for creating the library at all was that TikZ \texttt{external} tends to choke on complicated documents where the sophisticated mechanism stumbles. Since \texttt{LIB external} does not use the original document body for compilation, this cannot happen.

Source snippets are compiled, if their \texttt{md5} checksum has changed. They are not compiled automatically, if option settings are changed or anything outside the snippet is changed. Use `/tcb/external/force remake`\textsuperscript{P.477} to force compilation in this case or simply delete the externalized pdf oder md5 files.

To use the externalization options, the compiler has to be called with the `-shell-escape` permission to authorize potentially dangerous system calls. Be warned that this is a security risk.
25.1 Preparation of a Document for Externalization

The preamble of the main document has to contain the `\texttt{\textbackslash externaize}` command. Without this command, no externalization operation will be executed.

\texttt{\textbackslash externaize}

It is mandatory for externalization that this command is used once in the preamble of the main document. Every setting before `\texttt{\textbackslash externaize}` will also be used for compiling an external snippet. Every setting after `\texttt{\textbackslash externaize}` will be ignored for compiling an external snippet. Place this command right before `\texttt{\begin{document}}`, if you are not absolutely sure about another place.

The main document has to look like the following:

```
\documentclass[a4paper]{book}
\usepackage{...}
% ... 
% Typically, all or the very most settings for the document.
\texttt{\textbackslash externaize}
% Typically, just before \begin{document}
% Additional settings which are ABSOLUTELY irrelevant for the 
% stand-alone snippets.
\begin{document}
% The document.
% This also contains the marked snippets for externalization.
\end{document}
```

During compilation, a `/tcb/external/runner` file is dynamically created (several times). This is the actual main file for compiling an externalized snippet.

\texttt{\textbackslash tcb/external/runner}=(\textit{file name}) \hfill (no default, initially \texttt{\jobname\_run.tex})

Sets the \textit{(file name)} for dynamically created \texttt{runner} file. This is the actual main file for a document snippet. Typically, the initial setting is not needed to be changed.

```
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbset}\{external/runner=myrunner.tex\}
```

\texttt{\textbackslash tcb/external/prefix}=(\textit{text}) \hfill (no default, initially \texttt{external/})

The \textit{(text)} is prefixed to any `/tcb/external/name` for an externalization snippet. The initial setting implies saving all snippets into an \texttt{external/} subdirectory. Depending on the operation system, the subdirectory may have to be created manually once.

```
% Use a 'real' prefix instead of writing into a subdirectory:
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbset}\{external/prefix=ext_{\dots}\}
```

\texttt{\textbackslash tcb/external/externalize}={true|false} \hfill (default \texttt{true}, initially \texttt{true})

If set to \texttt{true}, the marked snippets are compiled if necessary. If set to \texttt{false}, the marked snippets are not compiled but included as text. `/tcb/external/externalize` can only be used after `\texttt{\textbackslash externaize}`.

\texttt{\textbackslash tcb/external/force remake}={true|false} \hfill (default \texttt{true}, initially \texttt{false})

If set to \texttt{true}, the marked snippets are always compiled. If set to \texttt{true}, the marked snippets are compiled only if necessary. The necessity is given, if a compiled pdf file is missing or the md5 checksum of the source snippet has changed.

\texttt{\textbackslash tcb/external/!} \hfill (style)

Shortcut for setting `/tcb/external/force remake` to \texttt{true}.

\texttt{\textbackslash tcb/external/-} \hfill (style)

Shortcut for setting `/tcb/external/externalize` to \texttt{false}.
25.2 Marking Externalization Snippets

\begin{tcbexternal}{example_tikzpicture}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c] (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{tcbexternal}

If a \texttt{tcolorbox} is externalized, one should use /tcb/nobeforeafter for the box. Indentation and distances to the text before and after have to be given separately outside the \texttt{tcbexternal} environment.

\begin{tcbexternal}{example_tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[nobeforeafter,enhanced,fonttitle=\textbf,\texttt\textbf,title=Externalized Box, colframe=red!50!black,drop fuzzy shadow, interior style={fill overzoom image=goldshade.png}]
This complete tcolorbox is externalized. One cannot use numbered boxes here. Note the \texttt{\texttt{minipage}} option which tells the current line width to the external snippet.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbexternal}

Externalized Box

This complete tcolorbox is externalized. One cannot use numbered boxes here. Note the minipage option which tells the current line width to the external snippet.
The interior of the `tcolorbox` is externalized. One can use numbered boxes without problems. Note that the text color has to be set for the text manually since it is converted into an image.

\begin{tcbexternal}[minipage]{example_tabularx}
\newcolumntype{Y}{>{\raggedleft\arraybackslash}X}
\begin{tabularx}{\linewidth}{|l||Y|Y|Y|Y||Y|}
\hline
Group & One & Two & Three & Four & Sum \\
\hline
Red & 1000.00 & 2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 10000.00 \\
Green & 2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 5000.00 & 14000.00 \\
Blue & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 5000.00 & 6000.00 & 18000.00 \\
\hline
Sum & 6000.00 & 9000.00 & 12000.00 & 15000.00 & 42000.00 \\
\hline
\end{tabularx}
\end{tcbexternal}

N 2015-03-11 /tcb/external/name=(name) (no default, initially unnamed)

The \textit{name} is automatically prefixed with \texttt{/tcb/external/prefix} → P.477. In combination, this has to be a unique file name for externalization. Typically, this key is not used directly but is set indirectly as mandatory parameter, see \texttt{tcbexternal} → P.478.
This is an externalized version of `tcolorbox` created using \newtcbexternalizetcolorbox: 

\begin{tcolorbox}
Inner box.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{extcolorbox}
\begin{minipage}{example_extcolorbox}
[ enhanced,colframe=red!50!black,colback=yellow!10,  
  fonttitle=\bfseries,drop fuzzy shadow,  
  title=My external box ]

This box is completely externalized.
\end{minipage}
\end{extcolorbox}

\begin{extcolorbox}
\begin{minipage}{example_extcolorbox}
[ enhanced,colframe=red!50!black,colback=yellow!10,  
  fonttitle=\bfseries,drop fuzzy shadow,  
  title=My external box ]

This box is completely externalized.
\end{minipage}
\end{extcolorbox}

My external box

This box is completely externalized.

Inner box.

\begin{tcolorbox}
Inner box.
\end{tcolorbox}

Never externalize numbered boxes.

Never externalize boxes which contain references to other things, e.g. using \ref or \cite.

Never externalize breakable boxes.
This is an externalized version of `tikzpicture` created using `\newtcbexternalizeenvironment` → P. 485:

\begin{center}
\begin{extikzpicture}
\preamble{\usepackage{pgfplots}}, % add package for external graph
\input source on error=false, % do not load source on error
\{example_pgfplots\}
\pgfplotsset{width=12cm}
\begin{axis}[
3d box=background,grid=major,
xlabel=$x$, ylabel=$y$, zlabel=$z$, view/h=40,
mesh/interior colormap name=hot,
colormap/blackwhite,
z buffer=sort,domain=0:90,y domain=0:60,
zmin=0,zmax=2,z post scale=1.2,
]
\addplot3[surf,mesh/interior colormap name=blackwhite, colormap/hot,] ( {cos(x)},{sin(x)}, {2*sin(y)} );
\addplot3[surf] ( {2*cos(x)*cos(y)},{2*sin(x)*cos(y)}, {2*sin(y)} );
\end{axis}
\end{extikzpicture}
\end{center}
The text content of a `tcblisting` is externalized with the given \langle name \rangle. Note that the listing part is not externalized.

\begin{tcblisting}{externalize listing=example_listing, 
  bicolor,colback=yellow!10,colframe=yellow!50!black, 
  colbacklower=white,center lower}
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
  \path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
  \foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue} {
  \path[shading=ball,ball color=\c] (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{tcblisting}

The text content of a `dispExample*` is externalized with the given \langle name \rangle. Note that the listing part is not externalized.

\begin{dispExample*}{sidebyside,externalize example=example_example}
\tikz\path[shading=ball, 
  ball color=red] circle (7mm);
\end{dispExample*}

Combination of /tcb/externalize listing and /tcb/external/force remake.

Combination of /tcb/externalize example and /tcb/external/force remake.
25.3 Customization

/\texttt{tcb/external/safety}=(\texttt{length})

(no default, initially 2mm)

The snippet box is surrounded with a safety border with a thickness of \langle length\rangle. This border is automatically trimmed during picture inclusion. The reason for this mechanism is to catch box content which extrudes over the bounding box. For example, shadows of a \texttt{tcolorbox} are painted outside the bounding box and would be lost otherwise.

/\texttt{tcb/external/environment}=(\texttt{env})

(no default, initially unset)

Surrounds the exported snippet text with an environment \langle env\rangle without parameters. Note that this option is ignored for \texttt{/tcb/externalize listing} \textsuperscript{P.482}.

/\texttt{tcb/external/environment with percent}=true/false

(default true, initially true)

If set to true, the \texttt{begin} and \texttt{end} code of \texttt{/tcb/external/environment} is appended with a percent sign. For verbatim environments, this option typically has to be set to false.

/\texttt{tcb/external/minipage}=(\texttt{length})

(default \texttt{\linewidth}, initially unset)

Surrounds the exported snippet text with a minipage. The optional \langle length\rangle parameter sets the width of the minipage. Note that the default width is the current line width of the main document. See \texttt{tcbexternal} \textsuperscript{P.478} for examples. Note that this option is ignored for \texttt{/tcb/externalize listing} \textsuperscript{P.482}.

/\texttt{tcb/external/plain}

(no value, initially set)

Removes any text which was set to surround the snippet. This removes the setting of \texttt{/tcb/external/minipage}, but is independent of \texttt{/tcb/external/safety}.

/\texttt{tcb/external/compiler}=(\texttt{text})

(no default, initially \texttt{pdflatex})

Sets the name of the compiler for the snippets. Note that this compiler has to support the \texttt{\pdfmdfivesum} primitive e.g. using the \texttt{pdftexcmds} package. This should work for \texttt{xelatex} and \texttt{lualatex}.

/\texttt{tcb/external/runs}=(\texttt{number})

(no default, initially 1)

Sets the number of compiler runs for the snippet.

\begin{tcbexternal}[minipage,runs=2]{example_raster}
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height,
    size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
    \tcbitem One
    \tcbitem \Huge Two
    \tcbitem Three
    \tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}
\end{tcbexternal}

\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
One & Two \tabularnewline
\hline
Three & Four \tabularnewline
\hline
\end{tabular}

/\texttt{tcb/external/input source on error}=true/false

(default true, initially true)

If set to true, the source code of the snippet is loaded instead of the failed pdf picture. Typically, this will lead to an error stop at the faulty place of the source and such helps detecting the cause. If the source input compiles without error, the document setup may be incorrect, see Section 25.1 on page 477. Maybe, the \texttt{external/} subdirectory has to be created manually in this case, see \texttt{/tcb/external/prefix} \textsuperscript{P.477}.

If the option is set to false, the compilation stops immediately on an error. The log file of the external snippet has to be consulted for error messages in this case.
The given \texttt{\langle code\rangle} is added before the snippet document. Typically, this means before \texttt{\documentclass}. This is not used for compilation of the main document.

The given \texttt{\langle options\rangle} are passed to the given \texttt{\langle package\rangle} for the snippet document. This is a shortcut for using \texttt{/tcb/external/preclass} with \texttt{\PassOptionsToPackage}. This not used for compilation of the main document.

The given \texttt{\langle options\rangle} are passed to the given \texttt{\langle class\rangle} for the snippet document. This is a shortcut for using \texttt{/tcb/external/preclass} with \texttt{\PassOptionsToClass}. This not used for compilation of the main document.

Removes all additional \texttt{/tcb/external/preclass} settings.

The given \texttt{\langle code\rangle} is added to the preamble of the snippet document. This is not used for compilation of the main document.

The given \texttt{\langle options\rangle} are added as parameter for \texttt{\tcbset} \texttt{\textsuperscript{P.13}} to the preamble of the snippet document. This are not used for compilation of the main document.

Removes all additional \texttt{/tcb/external/preamble} settings.

Expands to \texttt{\langle true\rangle}, if executed during snippet compilation, and to \texttt{\langle false\rangle}, if executed during main document compilation. This can be used before \texttt{\tcbEXTERNALIZE} \texttt{\textsuperscript{P.477}} to give different setting to snippet and main document.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbifexternal{\langle true\rangle}{\langle false\rangle}
{\usepackage{onlyforexternal}}
{\usepackage{onlyformain}}
\end{verbatim}
\newtcbexternalizeenvironment\{\langle newenv \rangle\}{\langle env \rangle\}{\langle options \rangle\}{\langle begin \rangle\}{\langle end \rangle}\}

Creates a new environment \langle newenv \rangle which is based on \texttt{tcbexternal} \textsuperscript{P.478}. This environment takes \textit{at least} one optional parameter and one mandatory parameter. These two parameters are passed to \texttt{tcbexternal} \textsuperscript{P.478}. Further, the given \langle options \rangle are always added to the option list of \texttt{tcbexternal} \textsuperscript{P.478}.

The environment content is externalized and the external snippet is surrounded by an environment \langle env \rangle. All further parameters of \langle newenv \rangle are given to \langle env \rangle as parameters. The included image is prepended by \langle begin \rangle and appended by \langle end \rangle.

\texttt{extikzpicture} \textsuperscript{P.481} is an example application for \newtcbexternalizeenvironment.

\begin{extabular}{example_tabular}{|l|p{6cm}|r|}
\hline
A & B & C \\
\hline
a & This table is externalized as snippet. Obviously, this only makes sense for highly complex tables. & b \\
\hline
\end{extabular}

\renewtcbexternalizeenvironment\{\langle newenv \rangle\}{\langle env \rangle\}{\langle options \rangle\}{\langle begin \rangle\}{\langle end \rangle}\}

Identical to \newtcbexternalizeenvironment, but the environment \langle newenv \rangle is created by \renewenvironment instead of \newenvironment.

\newtcbexternalizetcolorbox\{\langle newenv \rangle\}{\langle env \rangle\}{\langle options \rangle\}{\langle begin end options \rangle}\}

Creates a new environment \langle newenv \rangle which is based on \texttt{tcbexternal} \textsuperscript{P.478}. This environment takes \textit{at least} one optional parameter and one mandatory parameter. These two parameters are passed to \texttt{tcbexternal} \textsuperscript{P.478}. Further, the given \langle options \rangle are always added to the option list of \texttt{tcbexternal} \textsuperscript{P.478}.

The environment content is externalized and the external snippet is surrounded by an environment \langle env \rangle. All further parameters of \langle newenv \rangle are given to \langle env \rangle as parameters. \textbf{In contrast to \newtcbexternalizeenvironment, the environment \langle env \rangle is intended to be based on \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{P.12} or \texttt{tcblisting} \textsuperscript{P.327}.}

The \langle begin end options \rangle are options for settings the space before and after the included image using /tcb/before \textsuperscript{P.86}, /tcb/before skip \textsuperscript{P.88}, /tcb/after \textsuperscript{P.86}, or /tcb/after skip \textsuperscript{P.88}.

Use the exact identical values for /tcb/before \textsuperscript{P.86} and /tcb/after \textsuperscript{P.86} inside \langle begin end options \rangle as they were used for definition of \langle env \rangle! Otherwise, externalized and non-externalized version will have different spacings.

\texttt{extcolorbox} \textsuperscript{P.480} is an example application for \newtcbexternalizetcolorbox.
\newtcblisting{myownlisting}{2}[]{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,colbacktitle=red!50!yellow,before skip=6pt,after skip=6pt,title={#2},#1}
\newtcbexternalizetcolorbox{exmyownlisting}{myownlisting}\
{minipage,environment with percent=false}\%
{before skip=6pt,after skip=6pt}% same values as for mylisting
\begin{exmyownlisting}{example_mylisting}%
% <- name for the external file
{My externalized example box}
This is my \LaTeX\ box.
\end{exmyownlisting}

\renewtcbexternalizetcolorbox{(newenv){(env){(options){(begin end options)}}}
Identical to \renewenvironment instead of \newenvironment.
\tcbiffileprocess{(condition){(source){(md5-file){(target){(true){(false)}}}}}
This is a low-level macro which is internally used. The MD5 digest of a \langle source\rangle file is compared with a stored MD5 digest from an auxiliary \langle md5-file\rangle. If they are not equal, the auxiliary \langle md5-file\rangle is updated to store the current MD5 digest. Further,
\begin{itemize}
  \item if \langle condition\rangle equals 0, \langle true\rangle is executed.
  \item if \langle condition\rangle equals 1:
    \begin{itemize}
      \item If the current and stored MD5 digests were different, \langle true\rangle is executed.
      \item Otherwise, if the \langle target\rangle file is not existing, \langle true\rangle is executed.
      \item Otherwise, if the \langle target\rangle file is older than the \langle md5-file\rangle, \langle true\rangle is executed.
      \item Otherwise, \langle false\rangle is executed.
    \end{itemize}
  \end{itemize}
\end{itemize}
Otherwise, \langle false\rangle is executed.
The intended processing purpose of the \langle true\rangle code is to produce a \langle target\rangle file from the given \langle source\rangle file.
25.4 Troubleshooting and FAQ

- **I use the default settings, but the external subdirectory is not created.**
  Depending on operating system and compiler, an `external` subdirectory is automatically created or not. If not, create such a directory manually or add the following to your document:\footnote{The `shellesc` package is loaded automatically by the library.}:

\ShellEscape{mkdir external}

or

\ShellEscape{mkdir -p external}

If the combination of `/tcb/external/prefix`\footnote{The `shellesc` package is loaded automatically by the library.} and chosen snippet name points to another subdirectory than `external`, this has to be adapted.

- **I use the `minted` package and I get a cache directory for every externalized snippet.**
  To avoid this problem, there are several ways.
  - If you do not need `minted` inside the snippet code, you may use `\usepackage{minted} after `\tcbEXTERNALIZE`\footnote{The `shellesc` package is loaded automatically by the library.} or use `\tcbifexternal`\footnote{The `shellesc` package is loaded automatically by the library.} to switch `minted` off for the external code. If `minted` is already included by another package, add the following to your preamble:

```
\tcbset{external/PassOptionsToPackage={draft}{minted}}
```

- If `minted` is needed for the snippet code, caching can be switched off by adding the following to your preamble:

```
\tcbset{external/PassOptionsToPackage={cache=false}{minted}}
```

Alternatively, the `cachedir` option of `minted` may be used to redirect the cache.
This library has the single purpose to support \LaTeX{} package documentations like this one. Actually, the visual nature follows the approach from Till Tantau’s \texttt{pgf} \cite{pgf} documentation. Typically, this library is assumed to be used in conjunction with the class \texttt{ltxdoc} or alike. Denis Bitouzé, Muzimuzhi, and many others provided very valuable input for this library.

The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\begin{quote}
\texttt{\texttt{tcbuselibrary}{documentation}}
\end{quote}

This also loads the library \texttt{\texttt{skins}}, see Section 10 on page 168, the library \texttt{\texttt{raster}}, see Section 16 on page 304, the library \texttt{\texttt{listings}}, see Section 17 on page 326, the library \texttt{\texttt{xparse}}, see Section 24 on page 475, and a bunch of packages, namely \texttt{makeidx}, \texttt{marginnote}, \texttt{refcount}, and \texttt{hyperref}. The packages \texttt{pifont} and \texttt{marvosym} should be installed for some symbols, but need not to be loaded.

\begin{quote}
\texttt{\texttt{The package \texttt{makeidx} is loaded only, if \texttt{\texttt{printindex} is \texttt{not} already defined. Therefore, one can include an alternative to \texttt{makeidx} like \texttt{imakeidx} before the library \texttt{documentation} is used.}}}
\end{quote}

\begin{quote}
\texttt{\texttt{The package \texttt{marginnote} is loaded only, if \texttt{\texttt{marginnote} is \texttt{not} already defined.}}}
\end{quote}

\begin{quote}
\texttt{\texttt{In contrast to other \texttt{tcolorbox} options, the option settings for \texttt{\texttt{documentation} are typically not getting reset by \texttt{\texttt{tcb/reset}} \texttt{P.119}, i.e. they keep their values for embedded boxes.}}}
\end{quote}

\begin{quote}
\texttt{\texttt{In combination with DocStrip, \texttt{\texttt{tcb/verbatim ignore percent \texttt{P.145} may be helpful.}}}}
\end{quote}

For UTF-8 support load (ignore this when using Xe\LaTeX{}):

\begin{quote}
\texttt{\texttt{tcbuselibrary}{listingsutf8,documentation}}
\end{quote}

For \texttt{minted} \cite{minted} support, load:

\begin{quote}
\texttt{\texttt{tcbuselibrary}{documentation,minted}}
\texttt{\texttt{tcbset}{listing engine=minted}}
\end{quote}

### 26.1 Macros of the Library

\begin{quote}
\texttt{\texttt{\texttt{\begin{docCommand}\texttt{(options)}}\texttt{(name)}\texttt{(parameters)}\texttt{\texttt{\end{docCommand}}}}}
\end{quote}

Documents a \LaTeX{} macro with given \texttt{(name)} where \texttt{(name)} is written without backslash. The given \texttt{(options)} are set with \texttt{\texttt{tcbset} \texttt{\texttt{P.13}}}. This macro takes mandatory or optional \texttt{(parameters)}. It is automatically indexed and can be referenced with \texttt{\texttt{refCom} \texttt{P.499}}\texttt{(name)}.
\begin{docCommand}{foomakedocSubKey}{\marg{name}}{\marg{key path}}\end{docCommand}

Creates a new environment \texttt{name} based on \texttt{docKey} for the documentation of keys with the given \texttt{key path}.

\begin{docCommand}\[color definition=blue\]{foomakedocSubKey*}\end{docCommand}

Identical to \texttt{docCommand} \textsuperscript{P. 488}, but without index entry.

\begin{docCommands}\[\langle options\rangle\]{\langle name\rangle}{\langle parameters\rangle}\end{docCommands}

Documents several (similar) \LaTeX{} macro variants simultaneously. The given \texttt{options} are set with \texttt{tcbset} \textsuperscript{P. 13} and are valid for all variants and the documentation text. Every variant is described by an option set \texttt{(variant1), \langle variant2\rangle, and so on}. The most crucial options are \texttt{/tcb/doc name} \textsuperscript{P. 502} and \texttt{/tcb/doc parameter} \textsuperscript{P. 502}.

\begin{docCommands}\end{docCommands}

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{docCommands}
  doc no index, % no index entries for this example
  doc name = newtheorem,
  doc parameter = \marg{envname},
 \end{docCommands}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\newtheorem{\langle envname\rangle}
\newtheorem{\langle envname\rangle}{\langle numbered within\rangle}
\newtheorem{\langle numbered like\rangle}{\langle envname\rangle}
\newtheorem*{\langle envname\rangle}
\end{verbatim}

example
Documents an \LaTeX{} environment with given \langle name \rangle. The given \langle options \rangle are set with \texttt{\tcbset}. This environment takes mandatory or optional \langle parameters \rangle. It is automatically indexed and can be referenced with \texttt{\refEnv}. 

\begin{docEnvironment}{foocolorbox}{\oarg{options}}
This is the main environment to create an accentuated colored text box with rounded corners and, optionally, two parts.
\end{docEnvironment}

\begin{foocolorbox}{\langle options \rangle}
\langle content description \rangle
\end{foocolorbox}

This is the main environment to create an accentuated colored text box with rounded corners and, optionally, two parts.

\begin{docEnvironment} %
[doclang/environment content=My content text]%
{foocolorbox*}{\oarg{options}}
This is the main environment to create an accentuated colored text box with rounded corners and, optionally, two parts.
\end{docEnvironment}

\begin{foocolorbox*}{\langle options \rangle}
\langle My content text \rangle
\end{foocolorbox*}

This is the main environment to create an accentuated colored text box with rounded corners and, optionally, two parts.

\begin{docEnvironment*}[\langle options \rangle]{\langle name \rangle}{\langle parameters \rangle}
\end{docEnvironment*}

Identical to \texttt{docEnvironment}, but without index entry.
Documents several (similar) \LaTeX environment variants simultaneously. The given <options> are set with \tcbset \textsuperscript{P.13} and are valid for all variants and the documentation text. Every variant is described by an option set <variant1>, <variant2>, and so on. The most crucial options are /tcb/doc name \textsuperscript{P.502} and /tcb/doc parameter \textsuperscript{P.502}.

\begin{docEnvironments}
\end{docEnvironments}

\begin{docEnvironments}{\langle options\rangle}{\langle variant1\rangle}, {\langle variant2\rangle}, \ldots
\begin{environment description}
\end{docEnvironments}

\begin{docEnvironments}
  doc no index,  \% no index entries for this example
  \begin{example}
    \begin{redbox}{\langle options\rangle}{\langle title\rangle}
      \langle box content\rangle
    \end{redbox}
    \begin{greenbox}{\langle options\rangle}{\langle title\rangle}
      \langle box content\rangle
    \end{greenbox}
    \begin{bluebox}{\langle options\rangle}{\langle title\rangle}
      \langle box content\rangle
    \end{bluebox}
    \begin{custombox}{\langle options\rangle}{\langle color\rangle}{\langle title\rangle}
      \langle box content\rangle
    \end{custombox}
  \end{example}
\end{docEnvironments}

\begin{redbox}{\langle options\rangle}{\langle title\rangle}
  \langle box content\rangle
\end{redbox}

\begin{greenbox}{\langle options\rangle}{\langle title\rangle}
  \langle box content\rangle
\end{greenbox}

\begin{bluebox}{\langle options\rangle}{\langle title\rangle}
  \langle box content\rangle
\end{bluebox}

\begin{custombox}{\langle options\rangle}{\langle color\rangle}{\langle title\rangle}
  \langle box content\rangle
\end{custombox}

(a red colored box)

(a green colored box)

(a blue colored box)

(a colored box)
\begin{docKey}{(key path)}{(options)}{(name)}{(parameters)}{(description)}
\end{docKey}

Documents a key with given \langle name\rangle and an optional \langle key path\rangle. The given \langle options\rangle are set with \texttt{\textbackslash tcbset \textasciitilde P.13}. This key takes mandatory or optional \langle parameters\rangle as value with a short \langle description\rangle. It is automatically indexed and can be referenced with \texttt{\textbackslash refKey \textasciitilde P.499\{name\}}.

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{docKey}{foo}{footitle}{=\texttt{\meta{text}}}{no default, initially empty}
  Creates a heading line with \texttt{\meta{text}} as content.
\end{docKey}

/foo/footitle={text} (no default, initially empty)
  Creates a heading line with \langle text\rangle as content.
\end{verbatim}

\begin{docKey*}
\end{docKey*}

Identical to \texttt{\textbackslash docKey}, but without index entry.

\begin{docKeys}{(options)}{{\langle variant1\rangle},{\langle variant2\rangle},\ldots}
\end{docKeys}

Documents several (similar) key variants simultaneously. The given \langle options\rangle are set with \texttt{\textbackslash tcbset \textasciitilde P.13} and are valid for all variants and the documentation text. Every variant is described by an option set \langle variant1\rangle, \langle variant2\rangle, and so on. The most crucial options are \texttt{/tcb/doc keypath \textasciitilde P.502}, \texttt{/tcb/doc name \textasciitilde P.502}, \texttt{/tcb/doc parameter \textasciitilde P.502}, and \texttt{/tcb/doc description \textasciitilde P.503}.

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{docKeys}
  doc no index, \% no index entries for this example
  doc keypath = mykeyroot,
  doc parameter = \texttt{=\meta{length}},
  ]
  {
    doc name = width,
    doc description = initially \texttt{10cm},
  },
  {
    doc name = height,
    doc description = initially \texttt{7cm},
  },
  example
\end{docKeys}

/mykeyroot/width=\langle length\rangle (initially 10cm)
/mykeyroot/height=\langle length\rangle (initially 7cm)
\end{verbatim}
Documents a TikZ path operation with given \langle name \rangle. The given \langle options \rangle are set with \tcbset \rightarrow P.13. This TikZ path operation takes mandatory or optional \langle parameters \rangle. It is automatically indexed and can be referenced with \refPathOperation \rightarrow P.500 \langle name \rangle.

\begin{docPathOperation}{fooop}{\oarg{opt}{\meta{name}}}{{\colOpt{at}{\meta{coord}}}}
\end{docPathOperation}

Imaginary path operation for illustration.

\begin{docPathOperation*}{fooop}{\oarg{opt}{\meta{name}}}{{\colOpt{at}{\meta{coord}}}}
\end{docPathOperation*}

Identical to \docPathOperation, but without index entry.

\begin{docPathOperations}{\langle options \rangle}{\langle variant1 \rangle, \langle variant2 \rangle, \ldots}
\end{docPathOperations}

Documents several (similar) TikZ path operation variants simultaneously. The given \langle options \rangle are set with \tcbset \rightarrow P.13 and are valid for all variants and the documentation text. Every variant is described by an option set \langle variant1 \rangle, \langle variant2 \rangle, and so on. The most crucial options are /tcb/doc name \rightarrow P.502 and /tcb/doc parameter \rightarrow P.502.

\begin{docPathOperations}[
  doc no index,  % no index entries for this example
  \{ 
    doc name = rectangle,  
    doc parameter = \meta{corner or cycle},
  },
  \{ 
    doc name = circle,  
    doc parameter = \oarg{options},
  },
  \{ 
    doc name = ellipse,  
    doc parameter = \oarg{options},
  },
  \example
\end{docPathOperations}

\begin{Verbatim}
\path ... rectangle{corner or cycle} ...;
\path ... circle{\langle options \rangle} ...;
\path ... ellipse{\langle options \rangle} ...;
\example
\end{Verbatim}
Documents a value with given \langle name \rangle. Typically, this is a value for a key. The given \langle options \rangle are set with \texttt{tcbset} \textsuperscript{P.13}. This value is automatically indexed for \texttt{docValue} and has no index entry for \texttt{docValue*}.

A feasible value for \texttt{\refKey\{/foo/footitle\}} is \texttt{\docValue\{foovalue\}}.

A feasible value for /foo/footitle \textsuperscript{P.492} is \texttt{foovalue}.

Documents an auxiliary or minor \LaTeX macro with given \langle name \rangle where \langle name \rangle is written without backslash. The given \langle options \rangle are set with \texttt{tcbset} \textsuperscript{P.13}. This macro is automatically indexed for \texttt{docAuxCommand} and has no index entry for \texttt{docAuxCommand*}.

The macro \texttt{\docAuxCommand\{fooaux\}} holds some interesting data.

The macro \texttt{fooaux} holds some interesting data.

Documents an auxiliary or minor \LaTeX environment with given \langle name \rangle. The given \langle options \rangle are set with \texttt{tcbset} \textsuperscript{P.13}. This macro is automatically indexed indexed for \texttt{docAuxEnvironment} and has no index entry for \texttt{docAuxEnvironment*}.

The environment \texttt{\docAuxEnvironment\{fooauxenv\}} holds some interesting data.

The environment \texttt{fooauxenv} holds some interesting data.

Documents an auxiliary key with given \langle name \rangle and an optional \langle key path \rangle. The given \langle options \rangle are set with \texttt{tcbset} \textsuperscript{P.13}. It is automatically indexed for \texttt{docAuxKey} and has no index entry for \texttt{docAuxKey*}.

The key \texttt{\docAuxKey[foo]\{fooaux\}} holds some interesting data.

The key \texttt{/foo/fooaux} holds some interesting data.

Documents a counter with given \langle name \rangle. The given \langle options \rangle are set with \texttt{tcbset} \textsuperscript{P.13}. The counter is automatically indexed for \texttt{docCounter} and has no index entry for \texttt{docCounter*}.

The counter \texttt{\docCounter\{foocounter\}} can be used for computation.

The counter \texttt{foocounter} can be used for computation.
Documents a length with given \langle name\rangle. The given \langle options\rangle are set with \texttt{tcbset}^{P.13}. The length is automatically indexed for \docLength and has no index entry for \docLength*. The length \docLength{foolength} can be used for computation.

Documents a color with given \langle name\rangle. The given \langle options\rangle are set with \texttt{tcbset}^{P.13}. The color is automatically indexed for \docColor and has no index entry for \docColor*. The color \docColor{foocolor} is available.

\cs{\langle name\rangle}
Macro from \texttt{ltxdoc} [4] to typeset a command word \langle name\rangle where the backslash is prefixed. The library overwrites the original macro.

This is a \cs{foocommand}.

This is a \texttt{foocommand}.

\meta{\langle text\rangle}
Macro from \texttt{doc} [9] to typeset a meta \langle text\rangle. The library overwrites the original macro.

This is a \meta{text}.

This is a \langle text\rangle.

\marg{\langle text\rangle}
Macro from \texttt{ltxdoc} [4] to typeset a \langle text\rangle with curly brackets as a mandatory argument. The library overwrites the original macro.

This is a mandatory \marg{argument}.

This is a mandatory \langle argument\rangle.

\oarg{\langle text\rangle}
Macro from \texttt{ltxdoc} [4] to typeset a \langle text\rangle with square brackets as an optional argument. The library overwrites the original macro.

This is an optional \oarg{argument}.

This is an optional \langle argument\rangle.
\sarg

Macro to typeset * as an optional star.

This is an optional \sarg.

This is an optional *.

\brackets{(text)}

Sets the given (text) with curly brackets.

Here we use \brackets{some text}.

Here we use {some text}.

\begin{dispExample}
\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{example}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{example}
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{dispExample}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

This is a L\LaTeX\ example.

\begin{dispExample*}{sidebyside}
\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{example}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{example}
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{dispExample*}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

This is a L\LaTeX\ example.

The starred version of dispExample takes tcolorbox *P.12 \langle options \rangle as parameter. These \langle options \rangle are executed after /tcb/docexample *P.510.
\begin{dispListing}
\begin{Verbatim}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{Verbatim}
\end{dispListing}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

\begin{dispListing*}{title=My listing}
\begin{Verbatim}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{Verbatim}
\end{dispListing*}

My listing

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

\begin{absquote}
|tcolorbox| provides an environment for colored and framed text boxes with a heading line. Optionally, such a box can be split in an upper and a lower part.
\end{absquote}

tcolorbox provides an environment for colored and framed text boxes with a heading line. Optionally, such a box can be split in an upper and a lower part.

\begin{Verbatim}
\begin{dispListing}
\begin{Verbatim}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{Verbatim}
\end{dispListing}
\end{Verbatim}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\texttt{tcbmakedocSubKey}(\langle name \rangle,\langle key path \rangle)\)

Creates a new environment \langle name \rangle based on \texttt{docKey}$^\text{P.492}$ for the documentation of keys with the given \langle key path \rangle as root. The new environment \langle name \rangle takes the same parameters as \texttt{docKey}$^\text{P.492}$ itself. A second starred environment \langle name \rangle is also created, which is identical to \langle name \rangle but without index entry.

\begin{code}
\begin{tcbmakedocSubKey}{docFooKey}{foo}
\begin{docFooKey}{foodummy}{=\texttt{nothing}}{no default, initially empty}
Some key.
\end{docFooKey}
\begin{docFooKey*}{foo another dummy}{=\texttt{nothing}}{no default, initially empty}
Some key (not indexed).
\end{docFooKey*}
\end{tcbmakedocSubKey}
\end{code}

\texttt{tcbmakedocSubKeys}(\langle name \rangle,\langle key path \rangle)\)

Creates a new environment \langle name \rangle based on \texttt{docKeys}$^\text{P.492}$ for the documentation of keys with the given \langle key path \rangle as root. The new environment \langle name \rangle takes the same parameters as \texttt{docKeys}$^\text{P.492}$ itself.

\begin{code}
\begin{tcbmakedocSubKeys}{docFooKeys}{foo}
\begin{docFooKeys}\[
\begin{array}{l}
\text{doc parameter} = \texttt{nothing},
\text{doc description} = \texttt{no default, initially empty},
\end{array}
\]
\{ \[
\begin{array}{l}
\text{doc name} = \text{foodummy 2},
\end{array}
\]
\{ \[
\begin{array}{l}
\text{doc name} = \text{foo another dummy 2},
\text{doc no index},
\end{array}
\}
\}
Some description.
\end{docFooKeys}
\end{tcbmakedocSubKeys}
\end{code}
\refCom\{⟨name⟩\}
References a documented \LaTeX\ macro with given \(⟨name⟩\) where \(⟨name⟩\) is written without backslash. The page reference is suppressed if it links to the same page.

We have created \refCom{foomakedocSubKey} as an example.

\refCom*\{⟨name⟩\}
References a documented \LaTeX\ macro with given \(⟨name⟩\) where \(⟨name⟩\) is written without backslash. There is no page reference.

We have created \refCom{foomakedocSubKey} as an example.

\refEnv\{⟨name⟩\}
References a documented \LaTeX\ environment with given \(⟨name⟩\). The page reference is suppressed if it links to the same page.

We have created \refEnv{foocolorbox} as an example.

\refEnv*\{⟨name⟩\}
References a documented \LaTeX\ environment with given \(⟨name⟩\). There is no page reference.

We have created \refEnv{foocolorbox} as an example.

\refKey\{⟨name⟩\}
References a documented key with given \(⟨name⟩\) where \(⟨name⟩\) is the full path name of the key. The page reference is suppressed if it links to the same page.

We have created \refKey{/foo/footitle} as an example.

\refKey*\{⟨name⟩\}
References a documented key with given \(⟨name⟩\) where \(⟨name⟩\) is the full path name of the key. There is no page reference.

We have created \refKey{/foo/footitle} as an example.
\refPathOperation{\langle name \rangle}

References a documented TikZ path operation with given \langle name \rangle. The page reference is suppressed if it links to the same page.

We have created \refPathOperation{fooop} as an example.

We have created fooop \textsuperscript{P. 493} as an example.

\refPathOperation*{\langle name \rangle}

References a documented TikZ path operation with given \langle name \rangle. There is no page reference.

We have created \refPathOperation*{fooop} as an example.

\refAux{\langle name \rangle}

References some auxiliary environment, key, value, or color. The \langle name \rangle is colored according to \texttt{/tcb/color hyperlink} \textsuperscript{P. 512}, if \texttt{hyperref} colorlinks are set, but there is no real link.

Some pages back, one can see \refAux{/foo/footitle} as an example.

Some pages back, one can see /foo/footitle as an example.

\refAuxcs{\langle name \rangle}

References some auxiliary macro \langle name \rangle where \langle name \rangle is written without backslash. The \langle name \rangle is colored according to \texttt{/tcb/color hyperlink} \textsuperscript{P. 512}, if \texttt{hyperref} colorlinks are set, but there is no real link.

Some pages back, one can see \refAuxcs{foooaux} as an example.

Some pages back, one can see oooaux as an example.

\colDef{\langle text \rangle}

Sets \langle text \rangle with the command color, see \texttt{/tcb/color command} \textsuperscript{P. 512}.

This is my \colDef{text}.

This is my \text{text}.

\colOpt{\langle text \rangle}

Sets \langle text \rangle with the option color, see \texttt{/tcb/color option} \textsuperscript{P. 512}.

This is my \colOpt{text}.

This is my \text{text}.
\colFade\{text\}

Sets \textit{text} with the fade color, see /tcb/color fade→P.512.

This is my \colFade\{text\}.

This is my text.

\tcbdocmarginnote\{(options)\}\{text\}

Creates a tcolorbox note with the given \textit{text} inside the margin using the marginnote package. The style of the tcolorbox is predefined and can be altered by /tcb/doc marginnote→P.504 and the given \textit{options}.

Some text \tcbdocmarginnote\{Note A\}
which is commented by a note inside the margin. Alternatively to \tcbdocmarginnote, you can always use \marginnote with a tcolorbox directly. \par
This is further text \%
\tcbdocmarginnote\{colframe=blue!50!white, colback=blue!5!white\}\{Note B\}
with another note.

Some text which is commented by a note inside the margin. Alternatively to \tcbdocmarginnote, you can always use \marginnote with a tcolorbox directly. This is further text with another note.

\tcbdocnew\{date\}

Auxiliary macro which typesets the /tcb/doclang/new→P.513 text with the given \textit{date}. It may be redefined for customization.

\tcbdocnew\{1981-10-29\}.
\% Next one is displayed in the margin:
\tcbdocmarginnote\{\tcbdocnew\{1978-02-09\}\}

\tcbdocupdated\{date\}

Auxiliary macro which typesets the /tcb/doclang/updated→P.513 text with the given \textit{date}. It may be redefined for customization.

\tcbdocupdated\{2014-09-19\}.
26.2 Entry Content Option Keys

\texttt{/tcb/doc name=\textit{\textit{name}}} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially empty)}

Sets the \textit{name} of the entry to document, i.e. the \textit{name} of the command, environment, key, etc. For \texttt{docCommand}\P{488}, \texttt{docEnvironment}\P{490}, etc. the \textit{name} is set by a mandatory parameter, but can also be set by \texttt{/tcb/doc name}. \texttt{/tcb/doc name} also sets \textit{name} to \texttt{/tcb/doc label}\P{503}, \texttt{/tcb/doc index}\P{503}, and \texttt{/tcb/doc sort index}\P{503}.

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{docCommands}
  \begin{docnoindex}
    \docname = bfseries,
    \end{docnoindex}
  \end{docCommands}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\textbf{\textit{name}}} \hspace{1cm} \text{Font setting to bold face.}

\texttt{/tcb/doc parameter=\textit{\textit{parameters}}} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially empty)}

Sets the \textit{parameters} of the entry to document, i.e. the \textit{parameters} of the command, environment, key, etc. For \texttt{docCommand}\P{488}, \texttt{docEnvironment}\P{490}, etc. the \textit{parameters} is set by a mandatory option, but can also be set by \texttt{/tcb/doc parameter}.

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{docCommands}
  \begin{docnoindex}
    \docname = textbf,
    \docparameter = \textbf{\texttt{parameters}},
    \end{docnoindex}
  \end{docCommands}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\textbf{\textit{parameters}}} \hspace{1cm} \text{Sets \textit{parameters} in bold face.}

\texttt{/tcb/doc keypath=\textit{\textit{key path}}} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially empty)}

Sets the \textit{key path} of the key to document. For \texttt{docKey}\P{492} and \texttt{docKey*}\P{492} the \textit{key path} is set by a specialized option, but can also be set by \texttt{/tcb/doc keypath}.

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{docKeys}
  \begin{docnoindex}
    \docname = \texttt{tikz},
    \docparameter = \texttt{\textbf{\textit{color}}},
    \end{docnoindex}
  \end{docKeys}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\texttt{\textbf{\textit{color}}}} \hspace{1cm} \text{This option causes the path to be filled.}

\texttt{/tikz/fill=\textit{\textit{color}}} \hspace{1cm} \text{(default is scope’s color setting)}

This option causes the path to be filled.
Sets a (short!) additional \textit{description} for \texttt{docCommand} \cite{P.488}, \texttt{docEnvironment} \cite{P.490}, or \texttt{docPathOperation} \cite{P.493}. Such a description is mandatory for \texttt{docKey} \cite{P.492}.

\begin{docCommand*}[doc description=my description]{myCommandF}{\marg{argument}}
This is the documentation of \texttt{\refCom{myCommandF}} which takes one \texttt{\meta{argument}}. \texttt{myCommandF} does some funny things with its \texttt{\meta{argument}}.
\end{docCommand*}

\texttt{myCommandF}{\langle argument \rangle} (my description)
This is the documentation of \texttt{myCommandF} which takes one \texttt{\langle argument \rangle}. \texttt{myCommandF} does some funny things with its \texttt{\langle argument \rangle}.

Note that the description \langle text \rangle may overlap with the text on the left hand side if too long. Linebreaks can be used inside the \langle text \rangle.

\begin{docPathOperation*}[doc label=pathline]{-{}-}{\meta{coordinate or cycle}}
This is the documentation of \texttt{\refPathOperation{pathline}}.
\end{docPathOperation*}

\texttt{-|} \langle coordinate or cycle \rangle ...;
This is the documentation of \texttt{-|}.

\begin{docPathOperation}[doc index=foo path (horizontal then vertical), doc label=pathline2]{\textbar}{\meta{coordinate or cycle}}
This is the documentation of \texttt{\refPathOperation{pathline2}}.
\end{docPathOperation}

\texttt{\textbar} \langle coordinate or cycle \rangle ...;
This is the documentation of \texttt{\textbar}.

\begin{docCommands}[doc name = l_tcobox_example_tl, doc sort index = example_tl, \% sorted unter e like example ]{}
\end{docCommands}
/tcb/doc into index=true|false  
(default true, initially true)

If set to false, no index entries are written for the main documentation environments. The same effect is achieved by using e.g. docCommand*→P.489 instead of docCommand→P.488.

/tcb/doc no index  
(style, initially unset)

If set, no index entries are written for the main documentation environments. This is a shortcut for using /tcb/doc into index=false.

/tcb/doc marginnote=(options)  
(no default, initially empty)

Sets style ⟨options⟩ for the displayed box of the \tcbdocmarginnote→P.501 command.

\tcbset\{doc marginnote={colframe=blue!50!white,colback=blue!5!white}\}
\%
This is some text\tcbdocmarginnote(Note A)
which is commented by a note inside the margin.

This is some text which is commented by a note inside the margin.

Note A

/tcb/doc new=(date)  
(style, no default)

Adds a a marginnote with a “New: ⟨date⟩” message at the beginning of the upper box part. The intended use is inside the option list of docCommand→P.488, docEnvironment→P.490, etc.

\begin{docCommand}[doc new=2000-01-01]{foosomething}{\marg}{⟨text⟩}
Some command for something.
\end{docCommand}

New: 2000-01-01

\foosomething{⟨text⟩}

Some command for something.

/tcb/doc updated=(date)  
(style, no default)

Adds a marginnote with a “Updated: ⟨date⟩” message at the beginning of the upper box part.

/tcb/doc new and updated={⟨new date⟩}{⟨update date⟩}  
(style, no default)

Adds a marginnote with “New: ⟨new date⟩” and “Updated: ⟨update date⟩” messages at the beginning of the upper box part. See /tcb/doc new.
26.3 Entry Customization Option Keys

/tcb/doc left=⟨length⟩  (no default, initially 2em)
Sets the left hand offset of the documentation texts from \texttt{docCommand} \footnote{P.488},\texttt{docEnvironment} \footnote{P.490}, \texttt{docKey} \footnote{P.492}, etc, to ⟨length⟩.

\begin{docCommand*}[doc left=2cm,doc left indent=-2cm]{myCommandA}{⟨argument⟩}
This is the documentation of \refCom{myCommandA} which takes one \texttt{meta}⟨argument⟩. \refCom{myCommandA} does some funny things with its \texttt{meta}⟨argument⟩.
\end{docCommand*}

\begin{docCommand*}{myCommandA}{⟨argument⟩}
This is the documentation of \texttt{myCommandA} which takes one ⟨argument⟩. \texttt{myCommandA} does some funny things with its ⟨argument⟩.
\end{docCommand*}

/tcb/doc right=⟨length⟩  (no default, initially 0em)
Sets the right hand offset of the documentation texts from \texttt{docCommand} \footnote{P.488},\texttt{docEnvironment} \footnote{P.490}, \texttt{docKey} \footnote{P.492}, etc, to ⟨length⟩.

\begin{docCommand*}{myCommandB}{⟨argument⟩}
This is the documentation of \texttt{myCommandB} which takes one ⟨argument⟩. \texttt{myCommandB} does some funny things with its ⟨argument⟩.
\end{docCommand*}

\begin{docCommand*}{myCommandB}{⟨argument⟩}
This is the documentation of \texttt{myCommandB} which takes one ⟨argument⟩. \texttt{myCommandB} does some funny things with its ⟨argument⟩.
\end{docCommand*}

/tcb/doc left indent=⟨length⟩  (no default, initially -2em)
Sets the left hand indent of documentation heads from \texttt{docCommand} \footnote{P.488},\texttt{docEnvironment} \footnote{P.490}, \texttt{docKey} \footnote{P.492}, etc, to ⟨length⟩.

\begin{docCommand*}{myCommandC}{⟨argument⟩}
This is the documentation of \texttt{myCommandC} which takes one ⟨argument⟩. \texttt{myCommandC} does some funny things with its ⟨argument⟩.
\end{docCommand*}

\begin{docCommand*}{myCommandC}{⟨argument⟩}
This is the documentation of \texttt{myCommandC} which takes one ⟨argument⟩. \texttt{myCommandC} does some funny things with its ⟨argument⟩.
\end{docCommand*}

/tcb/doc right indent=⟨length⟩  (no default, initially 0pt)
Sets the right hand indent of documentation heads from \texttt{docCommand} \footnote{P.488}, \texttt{docEnvironment} \footnote{P.490}, \texttt{docKey} \footnote{P.492}, etc, to ⟨length⟩.

\begin{docCommand*}{myCommandD}{⟨argument⟩}(test value)
This is the documentation of \texttt{myCommandD} which takes one ⟨argument⟩. \texttt{myCommandD} does some funny things with its ⟨argument⟩.
\end{docCommand*}

\begin{docCommand*}{myCommandD}{⟨argument⟩}(test value)
This is the documentation of \texttt{myCommandD} which takes one ⟨argument⟩. \texttt{myCommandD} does some funny things with its ⟨argument⟩.
\end{docCommand*}
The head lines of the main documentation environments `docCommand` \textsuperscript{P.488}, `docEnvironment` \textsuperscript{P.490}, `docKey` \textsuperscript{P.492}, etc, are `tcolorbox`es inside a `tcbraster` \textsuperscript{P.306}. Options to the surrounding `tcbrasters` and the embedded `tcolorbox`es can be given using the following keys.

N 2020-04-24  
\texttt{/tcb/doc raster command\textsuperscript{=}(options)}  
(no default, initially empty)

Sets \texttt{(options)} for the surrounding `tcbraster` \textsuperscript{P.306} of `docCommand` \textsuperscript{P.488}, `docCommand*` \textsuperscript{P.489}, and `docCommands` \textsuperscript{P.489}.

\texttt{\tcbset(doc raster command={raster before skip=7mm,raster after skip=0mm})}

The is an example text.

\texttt{\begin{docCommand*}{myCommandI}{\marg{argument}}}
This is the documentation of \texttt{\refCom{myCommandI}} which takes one \texttt{\meta{argument}}. \texttt{\refCom{myCommandI}} does some funny things with its \texttt{\meta{argument}}.
\texttt{\end{docCommand*}}

The is an example text.

\texttt{\myCommandI{(argument)}}
This is the documentation of \texttt{\myCommandI} which takes one \texttt{(argument)}. \texttt{\myCommandI} does some funny things with its \texttt{(argument)}.

N 2020-04-24  
\texttt{/tcb/doc raster environment\textsuperscript{=}(options)}  
(no default, initially empty)

Sets \texttt{(options)} for the surrounding `tcbraster` \textsuperscript{P.306} of `docEnvironment` \textsuperscript{P.490}, `docEnvironment*` \textsuperscript{P.490}, and `docEnvironments` \textsuperscript{P.491}.

N 2020-04-24  
\texttt{/tcb/doc raster key\textsuperscript{=}(options)}  
(no default, initially empty)

Sets \texttt{(options)} for the surrounding `tcbraster` \textsuperscript{P.306} of `docKey` \textsuperscript{P.492}, `docKey*` \textsuperscript{P.492}, and `docKeys` \textsuperscript{P.492}.

N 2020-04-24  
\texttt{/tcb/doc raster path\textsuperscript{=}(options)}  
(no default, initially empty)

Sets \texttt{(options)} for the surrounding `tcbraster` \textsuperscript{P.306} of `docPathOperation` \textsuperscript{P.493}, `docPathOperation*` \textsuperscript{P.493}, and `docPathOperations` \textsuperscript{P.493}.

N 2020-04-24  
\texttt{/tcb/doc raster\textsuperscript{=}(options)}  
(no default, initially empty)

Shortcut for setting the same \texttt{(options)} for `/tcb/doc raster command`, `/tcb/doc raster environment`, `/tcb/doc raster key`, and `/tcb/doc raster path`.

\texttt{/tcb/doc head command\textsuperscript{=}(options)}  
(no default, initially empty)

Sets \texttt{(options)} for the head line of `docCommand` \textsuperscript{P.488}, `docCommand*` \textsuperscript{P.489}, and `docCommands` \textsuperscript{P.489}.

\texttt{\tcbset(doc head command={interior style={fill,left color=red!20!white, right color=blue!20!white}})}

\texttt{\begin{docCommand*}{myCommandE}{\marg{argument}}}
This is the documentation of \texttt{\refCom{myCommandE}} which takes one \texttt{\meta{argument}}. \texttt{\refCom{myCommandE}} does some funny things with its \texttt{\meta{argument}}.
\texttt{\end{docCommand*}}

\texttt{\myCommandE{(argument)}}
This is the documentation of \texttt{\myCommandE} which takes one \texttt{(argument)}. \texttt{\myCommandE} does some funny things with its \texttt{(argument)}.
\tcbset{doc head environment={beamer,boxsep=2pt,arc=2pt,colback=green!20!white}}
\begin{docEnvironment*}{myEnvironment}{⟨argument⟩}
This is the documentation of \refEnv{myEnvironment} which takes one \meta{argument}.
\end{docEnvironment*}

\begin{myEnvironment}{⟨argument⟩}⟨environment content⟩\end{myEnvironment}
This is the documentation of myEnvironment which takes one ⟨argument⟩.

\tcbset{doc head key={boxsep=4pt,arc=4pt,boxrule=0.6pt, frame style=fill,interior style=fill,colframe=green!50!black}}
\begin{docKey}{/foo/myKey}{}{no value}
This is the documentation of \refKey{/foo/myKey}.
\end{docKey}

/foo/myKey (no value)
This is the documentation of /foo/myKey.

\tcbset{doc head command={interior style={fill,left color=red!7!white, right color=blue!7!white}}}
\begin{docPathOperation*}{-{}-}{⟨coordinate or cycle⟩}
This is the documentation of \refPathOperation{-{}-}.
\end{docPathOperation*}
\path ... --⟨coordinate or cycle⟩ ...;
This is the documentation of --.

\tcbset{doc head={}}
Shortcut for setting the same \langle{options}\rangle for \texttt{tcb/doc head command} \ref{P.506}, \texttt{tcb/doc head environment}, \texttt{tcb/doc head key}, and \texttt{tcb/doc head path}. 
The description texts of the main documentation environments `docCommand` \(^{\text{P.488}}\), `docEnvironment` \(^{\text{P.490}}\), `docKey` \(^{\text{P.492}}\), etc, are set in a compact form without indentation and `parskip=0pt`. This settings can overruled by using the following keys to insert code before (or after) the description texts.

\begin{tcb}{before doc body command}{\langle \text{code} \rangle}
\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{before doc body command={%
  \setlength{\parindent}{2.5em}
  \setlength{\parskip}{1ex plus 0.75ex minus 0.25ex}%
}}
\begin{docCommand*}{myCommandG}{\marg \langle \text{argument} \rangle}
  This is the documentation of \refCom{myCommandG} which takes one \meta\langle \text{argument} \rangle. \refCom{myCommandG} does some funny things with its \meta\langle \text{argument} \rangle.
\end{docCommand*}
\myCommandG{\langle \text{argument} \rangle}
\end{verbatim}
\caption{This is the documentation of \myCommandG which takes one \langle \text{argument} \rangle. \myCommandG does some funny things with its \langle \text{argument} \rangle.}
\end{tcb}

\begin{tcb}{after doc body command}{\langle \text{code} \rangle}
\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{after doc body command={%
  \hfill\nolinebreak[1]\hspace*{\fill}\textcolor{red}{$\diamondsuit$}\%
}}
\begin{docCommand*}{myCommandH}{\marg \langle \text{argument} \rangle}
  This is the documentation of \refCom{myCommandH} which takes one \meta\langle \text{argument} \rangle. \refCom{myCommandH} does some funny things with its \meta\langle \text{argument} \rangle.
\end{docCommand*}
\myCommandH{\langle \text{argument} \rangle}
\end{verbatim}
\caption{This is the documentation of \myCommandH which takes one \langle \text{argument} \rangle. \myCommandH does some funny things with its \langle \text{argument} \rangle.\diamond}
\end{tcb}

\begin{tcb}{before doc body environment}{\langle \text{code} \rangle}
\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{before doc body environment={%
\begin{docCommand*}{myCommandG}{\marg \langle \text{argument} \rangle}
  This is the documentation of \refCom{myCommandG} which takes one \meta\langle \text{argument} \rangle. \refCom{myCommandG} does some funny things with its \meta\langle \text{argument} \rangle.
\end{docCommand*}
\myCommandG{\langle \text{argument} \rangle}
\end{verbatim}
\caption{This is the documentation of \myCommandG which takes one \langle \text{argument} \rangle. \myCommandG does some funny things with its \langle \text{argument} \rangle.\diamond}
\end{tcb}

\begin{tcb}{after doc body environment}{\langle \text{code} \rangle}
\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{after doc body environment={%
\begin{docCommand*}{myCommandH}{\marg \langle \text{argument} \rangle}
  This is the documentation of \refCom{myCommandH} which takes one \meta\langle \text{argument} \rangle. \refCom{myCommandH} does some funny things with its \meta\langle \text{argument} \rangle.
\end{docCommand*}
\myCommandH{\langle \text{argument} \rangle}
\end{verbatim}
\caption{This is the documentation of \myCommandH which takes one \langle \text{argument} \rangle. \myCommandH does some funny things with its \langle \text{argument} \rangle.\diamond}
\end{tcb}

\begin{tcb}{before doc body key}{\langle \text{code} \rangle}
\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{before doc body key={%
\begin{docCommand*}{myCommandG}{\marg \langle \text{argument} \rangle}
  This is the documentation of \refCom{myCommandG} which takes one \meta\langle \text{argument} \rangle. \refCom{myCommandG} does some funny things with its \meta\langle \text{argument} \rangle.
\end{docCommand*}
\myCommandG{\langle \text{argument} \rangle}
\end{verbatim}
\caption{This is the documentation of \myCommandG which takes one \langle \text{argument} \rangle. \myCommandG does some funny things with its \langle \text{argument} \rangle.\diamond}
\end{tcb}

\begin{tcb}{after doc body key}{\langle \text{code} \rangle}
\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{after doc body key={%
\begin{docCommand*}{myCommandH}{\marg \langle \text{argument} \rangle}
  This is the documentation of \refCom{myCommandH} which takes one \meta\langle \text{argument} \rangle. \refCom{myCommandH} does some funny things with its \meta\langle \text{argument} \rangle.
\end{docCommand*}
\myCommandH{\langle \text{argument} \rangle}
\end{verbatim}
\caption{This is the documentation of \myCommandH which takes one \langle \text{argument} \rangle. \myCommandH does some funny things with its \langle \text{argument} \rangle.\diamond}
\end{tcb}
/tcb/before doc body path=(code) (no default, initially empty)
Executes (code) before the description texts of `docPathOperation` and `docPathOperation*`.

/tcb/after doc body path=(code) (no default, initially empty)
Executes (code) after the description texts of `docPathOperation` and `docPathOperation*`.

/tcb/before doc body=(options) (no default, initially empty)
Shortcut for setting the same (options) for `/tcb/before doc body command` and `/tcb/before doc body environment`, `/tcb/before doc body key`, and `/tcb/before doc body path`.

/tcb/after doc body=(options) (no default, initially empty)
Shortcut for setting the same (options) for `/tcb/after doc body command` and `/tcb/after doc body environment`, `/tcb/after doc body key`, and `/tcb/after doc body path`. 
26.4 General Customization Option Keys

/\texttt{tcb/docexample} (style, no value)

Sets the style for \texttt{dispExample} \textsuperscript{P.496} and \texttt{dispListing} \textsuperscript{P.497} with the colors \texttt{ExampleBack} and \texttt{ExampleFrame}. To change the appearance of the examples, this style can be redefined.

\begin{verbatim}
% Predefined style:
\tcbset{
  docexample/.style={colframe=ExampleFrame,colback=ExampleBack,
                      before skip=\medskipamount,after skip=\medskipamount,
                      fontlower=\footnotesize}
}
\end{verbatim}

/\texttt{tcb/documentation listing options}=\{\textit{key list}\} (no default, initially style=tcbdocumentation)

Sets the options from the package \texttt{listings} \cite{listings}. They are used inside \texttt{dispExample} \textsuperscript{P.496} and \texttt{dispListing} \textsuperscript{P.497} to typeset the listings. Note that this is not identical to the key /\texttt{tcb/listing options} \textsuperscript{P.336} which is used for “normal” listings.

Used for /\texttt{tcb/listing engine} \textsuperscript{P.341}=listings only.

/\texttt{tcb/documentation listing style}=\{\textit{listing style}\} (no default, initially tcbdocumentation)

Abbreviation for \texttt{documentation listing options}={style=...}. This key sets a \textit{style} for the \texttt{listings} package, see \cite{listings}. Note that this is not identical to the key /\texttt{tcb/listing style} \textsuperscript{P.336} which is used for “normal” listings.

Used for /\texttt{tcb/listing engine} \textsuperscript{P.341}=listings only.

/\texttt{tcb/documentation minted options}=\{\textit{key list}\} (no default, initially tabsize=2,fontsize=\small)

Sets the options from the package \texttt{minted} \cite{minted} which are used during typesetting of the listing, if used. Note that this is not identical to the key /\texttt{tcb/minted options} \textsuperscript{P.339} which is used for “normal” listings.

Used for /\texttt{tcb/listing engine} \textsuperscript{P.341}=minted only.

/\texttt{tcb/documentation minted style}=\{\textit{key list}\} (no default, initially unset)

Sets a \textit{style} known to \texttt{Pygments} \cite{pygments} for the package \texttt{minted} \cite{minted}, if used. Note that this is not identical to the key /\texttt{tcb/minted style} \textsuperscript{P.340} which is used for “normal” listings.

Used for /\texttt{tcb/listing engine} \textsuperscript{P.341}=minted only.

/\texttt{tcb/documentation minted language}=\{\textit{programming language}\} (no default, initially latex)

Sets a \textit{programming language} known to \texttt{Pygments} \cite{pygments} for the package \texttt{minted} \cite{minted}, if used. Note that this is not identical to the key /\texttt{tcb/minted language} \textsuperscript{P.339} which is used for “normal” listings.

Used for /\texttt{tcb/listing engine} \textsuperscript{P.341}=minted only.

The following two keys are deprecated and without function (v3.50 and above). Use /\texttt{tcb/before} \textsuperscript{P.86} and /\texttt{tcb/after} \textsuperscript{P.86} with appropriate values instead. Also see /\texttt{tcb/docexample}.

/\texttt{tcb/before example}=\{\textit{macros}\} (no default, initially empty)

Sets the \textit{macros} which are executed before \texttt{dispExample} \textsuperscript{P.496} and \texttt{dispListing} \textsuperscript{P.497} additional to /\texttt{tcb/before} \textsuperscript{P.86}.

/\texttt{tcb/after example}=\{\textit{macros}\} (no default, initially empty)

Sets the \textit{macros} which are executed after \texttt{dispExample} \textsuperscript{P.496} and \texttt{dispListing} \textsuperscript{P.497} additional to /\texttt{tcb/after} \textsuperscript{P.86}.

510
Keyword used in `docEnvironment` \p.490, `docCommand` \p.488, etc. are printed boldface (or not). Since the typewriter font is used, the effect may be invisible with Computer Modern fonts or similar which do not have a bold variant. Note that references to keywords are not printed boldface at all.

```latex
\Large
\docAuxCommand{fooaux}, \refCom{tcbset}
\tcbset{keywords bold=false}
\docAuxCommand{fooaux}, \refCom{tcbset} \rightarrow \text{P.13}
```

```
\tcbset{index command=\myindexcommand}
```

```
\tcbset{index command name=mydoc}
```

```
\tcbset{index format=\pgf}
```

Sets the character for “actual” in automatic indexing.

```
\tcbset{index quote=\text{"}}
```

Sets the character for “quote” in automatic indexing.

```
\tcbset{index level=\text{!}}
```

Sets the character for “level” in automatic indexing.

```
\tcbset{index default settings}
```

Sets the `makeindex` default values for `/tcb/index actual`, `/tcb/index quote`, and `/tcb/index level`.

```
\tcbset{index german settings}
```

Sets the `makeindex` values recommended for German language texts. This is identical to setting the following:

```
\tcbset{index actual={=}, index quote={!}, index level={>}}
```
If set to `true`, the index entries are annotated with short descriptions given by `/tcb/doclang/environment` \(\rightarrow\) P.513, `/tcb/doclang/key` \(\rightarrow\) P.513, and others.

If set to `true`, the index entries colorized according to the color settings given by `/tcb/color environment`, `/tcb/color key`, and others.

If set to `true`, an additional index grouping is created where entries are gathered, e.g. `/tcb/index gather counters` creates an index entry ‘Colors’, see `/tcb/doclang/colors` \(\rightarrow\) P.513, which gets all colors as sub entries.

Switches all index gather options from above to `true` (all) or `false` (none).

Sets the highlight color used by macro definitions.

Sets the highlight color used by environment definitions.

Sets the highlight color used by key definitions.

Sets the highlight color used by Ti\'kZ path operation definitions.

Sets the highlight color used by value definitions.

Sets the highlight color used by counter definitions.

Sets the highlight color used by length definitions.

Sets the highlight color used by color definitions.

Sets the highlight color for `/tcb/color command`, `/tcb/color environment`, `/tcb/color key`, `/tcb/color path`, `/tcb/color value`, `/tcb/color counter`, `/tcb/color length`, and `/tcb/color color`.

Sets the color used for optional arguments.

Sets the color used for faded text like `\path` in `docPathOperation` \(\rightarrow\) P.493.

Sets the color for all hyper-links, i.e. all internal and external links.
26.5 Language Option Keys

The following keys are provided for language specific settings. The English language is predefined.

/tcb/english language (style, no value)
Sets all language specific settings to English.

/tcb/doclang/color=(text) (no default, initially color)
Text used in the index for colors.

/tcb/doclang/colors=(text) (no default, initially Colors)
Heading text in the index for colors.

/tcb/doclang/commands=(text) (no default, initially Commands)
Heading text in the index for commands.

/tcb/doclang/counter=(text) (no default, initially counter)
Text used in the index for counters.

/tcb/doclang/counters=(text) (no default, initially Counters)
Heading text in the index for counters.

/tcb/doclang/environment=(text) (no default, initially environment)
Text used in the index for environments.

/tcb/doclang/environments=(text) (no default, initially Environments)
Heading text in the index for environments.

/tcb/doclang/environment content=(text) (no default, initially environment content)
Text used in docEnvironment → P. 490.

/tcb/doclang/index=(text) (no default, initially Index)
Heading text for the index.

/tcb/doclang/key=(text) (no default, initially key)
Text used in the index for keys.

/tcb/doclang/keys=(text) (no default, initially Keys)
Heading text used in the index for keys.

/tcb/doclang/length=(text) (no default, initially length)
Text used in the index for lengths.

/tcb/doclang/lengths=(text) (no default, initially Lengths)
Heading text in the index for lengths.

/tcb/doclang/new=(text) (no default, initially New)
Announcement text for new content.

/tcb/doclang/path=(text) (no default, initially path operation)
Text used in the index for path operations.

/tcb/doclang/paths=(text) (no default, initially Path operations)
Heading text in the index for path operations.

/tcb/doclang/pageshort=(text) (no default, initially P.)
Short text for page references.

/tcb/doclang/updated=(text) (no default, initially Updated)
Announcement text for updated content.
26.6 Predefined Colors of the Library

The following colors are predefined. They are used as default colors in some library commands.

Option, Definition, ExampleFrame, ExampleBack, Hyperlink, Fade.
A Picture Credits

The following pictures were used inside this documentation.

- **Basilica_5.png**
  - http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Basilica_5.png
  - Photograph taken by Thomas F. Sturm.

- **lichtspiel.jpg**
  - Created with GIMP.
  - http://www.gimp.org

- **crinklepaper.png**
  - Created with GIMP.
  - http://www.gimp.org

- **pink_marble.png**
  - Created with GIMP.
  - http://www.gimp.org

- **blueshade.png**
  - Created with GIMP.
  - http://www.gimp.org

- **goldshade.png**
  - Created with GIMP.
  - http://www.gimp.org
References


[4] David Carlisle. *The file \texttt{ltxdoc.dtx} for use with \texttt{\textsc{b}e\textsc{t}e\textsc{x} 2\textepsilon}*. Sept. 16, 2019.


https://mirror.ctan.org/macros/latex/base/doc.dtx.


[15] The \texttt{\textsc{b}e\textsc{t}e\textsc{x}3} Project. *The xparse Package*. Feb. 2, 2023.

https://pygments.org/.

[17] Sebastian Rahtz and Heiko Oberdiek. *Hypertext marks in \texttt{\textsc{b}e\textsc{t}e\textsc{x}}: a manual for hyperref*. Feb. 7, 2023.


Index

- key, 477
foo path (horizontal then vertical) path
  operation, 503
/foo/myKey key, 507
! key, 477

0 value, 167
1 value, 167
2 value, 167

above key, 444
absquote environment, 497
add to height key, 60
add to list key, 133
add to natural height key, 60
add to width key, 39
adjust text key, 23
adjusted title key, 23
adjusted title after break key, 401
after key, 86
after app key, 466
after doc body key, 509
after doc body command key, 508
after doc body environment key, 508
after doc body key key, 508
after doc body path key, 509
after example key, 510
after float key, 85
after float app key, 466
after float pre key, 466
after lower key, 73
after lower app key, 465
after lower pre key, 465
after lower* key, 73
after pre key, 466
after skip key, 88
after skip balanced key, 87
after title key, 69
after title app key, 464
after title pre key, 464
after title* key, 69
after upper key, 71
after upper app key, 464
after upper pre key, 464
after upper* key, 71
alert key, 287
all key, 10
all value, 53, 54, 315, 403, 406
ams align key, 386
ams align lower key, 386
ams align upper key, 386
ams align* key, 386
ams align* lower key, 386
ams align* upper key, 386
ams equation key, 385
ams equation lower key, 385
ams equation upper key, 385
ams equation* key, 385
ams equation* lower key, 385
ams equation* upper key, 385
ams gather key, 387
ams gather lower key, 387
ams gather upper key, 387
ams gather* key, 387
ams gather* lower key, 387
ams gather* upper key, 387
ams nodisplayskip key, 388
ams nodisplayskip lower key, 388
ams nodisplayskip upper key, 388
arc key, 41
arc is angular key, 43
arc is curved key, 43
areasize value, 460
areasize* value, 460
as-is value, 282
at key, 445
at begin tikz key, 213
at begin tikz reset key, 213
at end tikz key, 213
at end tikz reset key, 213
attach boxed title to bottom key, 177
attach boxed title to bottom center key, 176
attach boxed title to bottom left key, 176
attach boxed title to bottom right key, 176
attach boxed title to bottom text left key, 176
attach boxed title to bottom text right key, 176
attach boxed title to bottom* key, 177
attach boxed title to top key, 177
attach boxed title to top center key, 175
attach boxed title to top left key, 175
attach boxed title to top right key, 175
attach boxed title to top text left key, 175
attach boxed title to top text right key, 175
attach boxed title to top* key, 177
attach title key, 25
attach title to upper key, 25
auto value, 109, 381
auto counter key, 124
auto limited value, 109
auto outer arc key, 43
autoparskip key, 90
base value, 91
base color key, 295
baseline key, 91
baselineskip value, 403

518
comment outside listing key, 348
comment side listing key, 347
comment style key, 345
compilable listing key, 354
compiler key, 483
compress page key, 403
\consumeboxarray, 429
\consumetcboxarray, 429
copy value, 179
counter key, 513
Counters
   \foocontador, 494
tcbrastercolumn, 306
tcbrasternum, 306
tcbrasterrow, 306
counters key, 513
coverage key, 439
creftname key, 127
creftename key, 127
\cs, 495
dash value, 129
dash hang value, 129
\DeclareTCBInputListing, 335
\DeclareTCBListing, 332
\DeclareTCBox, 20
\DeclareTCBoxFit, 452
\DeclareTcbTheorem, 373
\DeclareTCColorBox, 17
\DeclareTotalTCBox, 22
\DeclareTotalTCBoxFit, 453
\DeclareTotalTCColorBox, 18
default minted options key, 340
Definition color, 514
description color key, 377
description delimiters key, 377
description delimiters none key, 377
description delimiters parenthesis key, 377
description font key, 378
description formatter key, 378
detach title key, 25
direct value, 296
dispExample environment, 496
dispExample* environment, 496
dispListing environment, 497
dispListing* environment, 497
do not store to box array key, 428
doc value, 511
doc description key, 503
doc head key, 507
doc head command key, 506
doc head environment key, 507
doc head key key, 507
doc head path key, 507
doc index key, 503
doc into index key, 504
doc keypath key, 502
doc label key, 503
doc left key, 505
doc left indent key, 505
doc marginnote key, 504
doc name key, 502
doc new key, 504
doc new and updated key, 504
doc no index key, 504
doc parameter key, 502
doc raster key, 506
doc raster command key, 506
doc raster environment key, 506
doc raster key key, 506
doc raster path key, 506
doc right key, 505
doc right indent key, 505
doc sort index key, 503
doc updated key, 504
\docAuxCommand, 494
\docAuxCommand*, 494
\docAuxEnvironment, 494
\docAuxEnvironment*, 494
\docAuxKey, 494
\docAuxKey*, 494
\docColor, 495
\docColor*, 495
docCommand environment, 488
docCommand* environment, 489
docCommands environment, 489
docEnvironment environment, 490
docEnvironment* environment, 490
docEnvironments environment, 491
docexample key, 510
docKey environment, 492
docKey* environment, 492
docKeys environment, 492
\docLength, 495
\docLength*, 495
docPathOperation environment, 493
docPathOperation* environment, 493
docPathOperations environment, 493
documentation key, 10
documentation listing options key, 510
documentation listing style key, 510
documentation minted language key, 510
documentation minted options key, 510
documentation minted style key, 510
\docValue, 494
\docValue*, 494
downhill value, 53, 54
draft key, 275
draft Skin, 275
draftmode key, 225
draw method key, 296
drop fuzzy midday shadow key, 204
drop fuzzy shadow key, 203
drop fuzzy shadow east key, 207
drop fuzzy shadow north key, 207
drop fuzzy shadow northeast key, 207
foodummy 2 key, 498
\fooleng\length key, 495
\foomakedocSubKey key, 489
\foomakedocSubKey\* key, 489
fooop path operation, 493
\foosometh\ing key, 504
footitle key, 492
force no before after key, 86
force remake key, 477
forced value, 51, 97
forced center value, 109
forced left value, 109
forced right value, 109
frame code key, 157
frame code app key, 472
frame code pre key, 472
frame empty key, 157
frame engine key, 154
frame hidden key, 169
frame style key, 168
frame style image key, 168
frame style tile key, 169
freelance key, 277
freelance Skin, 277
freelance value, 154, 155
freelancelast Skin, 277
freelancemiddle Skin, 277
freeze extension key, 357
freeze file key, 357
freeze jpg key, 357
freeze none key, 357
freeze pdf key, 357
freeze png key, 357
fuzzy halo key, 204
fuzzy shadow key, 210
gometry nodes key, 156
graphical environment key, 154
graphics directory key, 281
graphics options key, 281
graphics orientation key, 282
graphics pages key, 281
grow sidewards by key, 96
grow to left by key, 95
grow to right by key, 95
halign key, 35
halign code key, 36
halign lower key, 36
halign lower code key, 36
halign title key, 37
halign title code key, 37
halign upper key, 35
halign upper code key, 36
halo key, 204
hbox key, 105
hbox value, 105
hbox boxed title key, 184
height fill key, 61
height fixed for key, 406
height from key, 59
height plus key, 58
hide key, 286
highlight math key, 384
highlight math style key, 384
hooks key, 9
horizontal size key, 294
hybrid value, 460
hybrid\* value, 460
Hyperlink color, 514
hyperlink key, 220
hyperlink interior key, 221
hyperlink node key, 221
hyperlink title key, 221
hyperref key, 220
hyperref interior key, 220
hyperref node key, 220
hyperref title key, 220
hypertarget key, 113
hyperurl key, 221
hyperurl interior key, 221
hyperurl node key, 221
hyperurl title key, 221
hyperurl\* key, 221
hyperurl\* interior key, 221
hyperurl\* node key, 221
hyperurl\* title key, 221
hyphenationfix key, 107
if odd page key, 114
if odd page or oneside key, 114
if odd page or oneside\* key, 115
if odd page\* key, 115
IfBlankF key, 120
IfBlankT key, 120
IfBlankTF key, 120
IfBooleanF key, 122
IfBooleanT key, 122
IfBooleanTF key, 122
\ifboxarrayempty key, 430
IfEmptyF key, 120
IfEmptyT key, 120
IfEmptyTF key, 120
IfNoValueF key, 121
IfNoValueT key, 121
IfNoValueTF key, 121
IfValueF key, 121
IfValueT key, 121
IfValueTF key, 121
ignore nobreak key, 92
ignored value, 29
image comment key, 342
\imagename key, 279
\imagepage key, 280
index key, 113, 513
index actual key, 511
index annotate key, 512
index colorize key, 512
index command key, 511
index command name key, 511
index default settings key, 511
index format key, 511
index gather all key, 512
index gather colors key, 512
index gather commands key, 512
index gather counters key, 512
index gather environments key, 512
index gather keys key, 512
index gather lengths key, 512
index gather none key, 512
index gather paths key, 512
index gather values key, 512
index german settings key, 511
index level key, 511
index quote key, 511
index* key, 113
inherit height key, 62
input source on error key, 483
inside node key, 292
interior code key, 158
interior code app key, 473
interior code pre key, 473
interior empty key, 158
interior engine key, 155
interior hidden key, 170
interior style key, 169
interior style image key, 170
interior style tile key, 170
interior titled code key, 157
interior titled code app key, 472
interior titled code pre key, 473
interior titled empty key, 157
interior titled engine key, 154
invisible key, 27
invisible value, 24, 27, 29

justify value, 35

key key, 513

Keys

/foo/myKey, 507
/foo/
    fooaux, 494
    foodummy, 498
    foodummy 2, 498
    footitle, 492
/tcb/
    add to height, 60
    add to list, 133
    add to natural height, 60
    add to width, 39
    adjust text, 23
    adjusted title, 23
    adjusted title after break, 401
    after, 86
    after app, 466
    after doc body, 509
    after doc body command, 508
    after doc body environment, 508
    after doc body key, 508
    after doc body path, 509
    after example, 510
    after float, 85
    after float app, 466
    after float pre, 466
    after lower, 73
    after lower app, 465
    after lower pre, 465
    after lower*, 73
    after pre, 466
    after skip, 88
    after skip balanced, 87
    after title, 69
    after title app, 464
    after title pre, 464
    after title*, 69
    after upper, 71
    after upper app, 464
    after upper pre, 464
    after upper*, 71
    alert, 287
    ams align, 386
    ams align lower, 386
    ams align upper, 386
    ams align*, 386
    ams align* lower, 386
    ams align* upper, 386
    ams equation, 385
    ams equation lower, 385
    ams equation upper, 385
    ams equation*, 385
    ams equation* lower, 385
    ams equation* upper, 385
    ams gather, 387
    ams gather lower, 387
    ams gather upper, 387
    ams gather*, 387
    ams gather* lower, 387
    ams gather* upper, 387
    ams nodisplayskip, 388
    ams nodisplayskip lower, 388
    ams nodisplayskip upper, 388
    arc, 41
    arc is angular, 43
    arc is curved, 43
    at begin tikz, 213
    at begin tikz reset, 213
    at end tikz, 213
    at end tikz reset, 213
    attach boxed title to bottom, 177
    attach boxed title to bottom center, 176
    attach boxed title to bottom left, 176
    attach boxed title to bottom right, 176
comment only, 342
column outside listing, 348
column side listing, 347
column style, 345
compilable listing, 354
compress page, 403
default minted options, 340
description color, 377
description delimiters, 377
description delimiters none, 377
description delimiters parenthesis, 377
description font, 378
description formatter, 378
detach title, 25
do not store to box array, 428
doc description, 503
doc head, 507
doc head command, 506
doc head environment, 507
doc head key, 507
doc head path, 507
doc index, 503
doc into index, 504
doc keypath, 502
doc label, 503
doc left, 505
doc left indent, 505
doc marginnote, 504
doc name, 502
doc new, 504
doc new and updated, 504
doc no index, 504
doc parameter, 502
doc raster, 506
doc raster command, 506
doc raster environment, 506
doc raster key, 506
doc raster path, 506
doc right, 505
doc right indent, 505
doc sort index, 503
doc updated, 504
docexample, 510
documentation listing options, 510
documentation listing style, 510
documentation minted language, 510
documentation minted options, 510
documentation minted style, 510
draft, 275
draftmode, 225
drop fuzzy midday shadow, 204
drop fuzzy shadow, 203
drop fuzzy shadow east, 207
drop fuzzy shadow north, 207
drop fuzzy shadow northeast, 207
drop fuzzy shadow northwest, 207
drop fuzzy shadow south, 206
drop fuzzy shadow southeast, 206
drop fuzzy shadow southwest, 206
drop fuzzy shadow west, 206
drop large lifted shadow, 208
drop lifted shadow, 208
drop midday shadow, 203
drop shadow, 203
drop shadow east, 206
drop shadow north, 205
drop shadow northeast, 206
drop shadow northwest, 205
drop shadow south, 205
drop shadow southeast, 205
drop shadow southwest, 205
drop shadow west, 205
drop small lifted shadow, 208
empty, 264
enforce breakable, 401
english language, 513
enhanced, 230
enhanced jigsaw, 236
enhanced standard, 232
enhanced standard jigsaw, 236
enlarge bottom at break by, 94
enlarge bottom by, 94
enlarge bottom finally by, 93
enlarge by, 95
enlarge left by, 94
enlarge right by, 94
enlarge top at break by, 94
enlarge top by, 94
enlarge top initially by, 93
enlargepage, 402
enlargepage flexible, 403
equal height flexible, 403
every box, 102
every box on higher layers, 103
every box on layer n, 103
every float, 85
every listing line, 337
every listing line*, 337
extend freelance, 277
extend freelancelast, 277
extend freelancemiddle, 277
external, 118
externalize example, 482
externalize example!, 482
externalize listing, 482
externalize listing!, 482
extras, 407
extras broken, 407
extras broken pre, 474
extras first, 407
extras first and middle, 408
extras first and middle pre, 474
extras first pre, 474
extras last, 407
extras last pre, 474
extras middle, 407
watermark overzoom, 190
watermark shrink, 190
watermark stretch, 191
watermark text, 186
watermark text app, 469
watermark text app on, 469
watermark text on, 186
watermark text pre, 469
watermark text pre on, 469
watermark tikz, 188
watermark tikz app, 470
watermark tikz app on, 470
watermark tikz on, 188
watermark tikz pre, 470
watermark tikz pre on, 470
watermark zoom, 189
widget, 261
width, 39
/tcb/boxtitle/
xshift, 178
yshift, 178
yshift*, 178
yshifttext, 178
/tcb/doclang/
color, 513
colors, 513
commands, 513
counter, 513
counters, 513
environment, 513
environment content, 513
environments, 513
index, 513
key, 513
keys, 513
length, 513
lengths, 513
new, 513
pageshort, 513
path, 513
paths, 513
updated, 513
value, 514
values, 514
/tcb/external/
-, 477
!, 477
clear preamble, 484
clear preclass, 484
compiler, 483
environment, 483
environment with percent, 483
externalize, 477
force remake, 477
input source on error, 483
minipage, 483
name, 479
PassOptionsToClass, 484
PassOptionsToPackage, 484
plain, 483
preamble, 484
preamble tcbset, 484
preclass, 484
prefix, 477
runner, 477
runs, 483
safety, 483
/tcb/library/
all, 10
breakable, 9
documentation, 10
external, 10
fitting, 9
hooks, 9
listings, 9
listingsutf8, 9
magazine, 9
many, 10
minted, 9
most, 10
poster, 9
raster, 9
skins, 9
theorems, 9
vignette, 9
xparse, 10
/tcb/new/
auto counter, 124
blend into, 128
Crefname, 127
crefname, 127
list inside, 131
list type, 131
no counter, 125
number format, 126
number freestyle, 126
number within, 126
reset counter on overlays, 125
use counter, 125
use counter from, 125
use counter*, 125
/tcb/poster/
colsspacing, 438
columns, 438
height, 438
prefix, 438
rows, 438
rowsspacing, 438
showframe, 438
spacing, 438
width, 438
/tcb/posterloc/
above, 444
at, 445
below, 444
between, 445
column, 442
column*, 442
fixed height, 443
name, 442
row, 443
rowspan, 443
sequence, 446
span, 443
xshift, 447
yshift, 448
\tcb/posterset/
boxes, 440
coverage, 439
fontsize, 440
no coverage, 439
poster, 438
\tcb/vig/
base color, 295
color from, 295
draw method, 296
east size, 293
east style, 294
fade in, 297
fade out, 297
horizontal size, 294
inside node, 292
lower left corner, 292
lowered color, 295
north size, 293
north style, 294
outside node, 293
over node, 293
over node offset, 293
raised color, 295
scope, 295
semi fade in, 297
semi fade out, 297
size, 294
south size, 293
south style, 294
upper right corner, 292
vertical size, 294
west size, 293
west style, 295
xmax, 292
xmin, 292
ymin, 292
\tikz/
tcb fill frame, 174
tcb fill interior, 174
tcb fill title, 174
keys key, 513
keywords bold key, 511

label key, 110
label is label key, 110
label is zlabel key, 110
label separator key, 379
label type key, 111
landscape value, 282
landscape* value, 282

last value, 186–188, 406
left key, 44
left value, 35, 141, 314
left skip key, 89
left* key, 44
lefthand ratio key, 138
lefthand width key, 137
leftlower key, 45
leftright skip key, 89
leftrule key, 40
lefttitle key, 45
leftupper key, 45
length key, 513
Lengths
\foolength, 495
lengths key, 513
lifted shadow key, 211
lines before break key, 401
list entry key, 133
list inside key, 131
list text key, 133
list type key, 131
listing above comment key, 349
listing above text key, 348
listing above* comment key, 349
listing above* text key, 348
listing and comment key, 345
listing and text key, 341
listing engine key, 341
listing file key, 341
listing inputencoding key, 337
listing only key, 341
listing options key, 336
listing options app key, 474
listing options pre key, 474
listing outside comment key, 348
listing outside text key, 346
listing remove caption key, 337
listing side comment key, 347
listing side text key, 346
listing style key, 336
listing utf8 key, 338
listings key, 9
listings value, 128, 341
listingsutf8 key, 9
lower left corner key, 292
lower separated key, 30
lowerbox key, 29
lowered color key, 295

magazine key, 9
many key, 10
\marg, 495
margin value, 391
margin apart value, 391
margin break value, 391
marker key, 238
math key, 385
math lower key, 385
math upper key, 385

535
maximum value, 61
\-meta, 495
middle key, 48
middle value, 186–188, 406
middle and last value, 186–188, 406
minimal value, 49
minimum center value, 109
minimum for current equal height group key, 67
minimum for equal height group key, 67
minimum left value, 109
minimum right value, 109
minipage key, 105, 483
minipage value, 105, 307
minipage boxed title key, 184
minipage boxed title* key, 184
minted key, 9
minted value, 341
minted language key, 339
minted options key, 339
minted options app key, 474
minted options pre key, 474
minted style key, 340
most key, 10
move upwards key, 98
move upwards* key, 98
name key, 442, 479
nameref key, 112
natural height key, 58
new key, 513
\newboxarray, 425
\newtcbexternalizeenvironment, 485
\newtcbexternalizetcolorbox, 485
\NewTCBInputListing, 335
\newtcbinputlisting, 334
\NewTcbListing, 332
\newtcblisting, 330
\NewTCBox, 20
\newtcbox, 19
\NewTCBoxFit, 452
\newtcboxfit, 451
\NewTcbTheorem, 371
\newtcbtheorem, 371
\NewTCBoxColor, 16
\newtcboxcolor, 15
\NewTotalTCBox, 21
\NewTotalTCBoxFit, 453
\NewTotalTColorBox, 18
nirvana key, 123
no borderline key, 200
no boxed title style key, 183
no counter key, 125
no coverage key, 439
no extras key, 407
no extras first key, 407
no extras last key, 407
no extras middle key, 407
no extras title after break key, 408
no extras unbroken key, 407
no finish key, 219
no finish first key, 219
no finish last key, 219
no finish middle key, 219
no finish unbroken key, 219
no label type key, 111
no listing options key, 336
no overlay key, 80
no process key, 354
no recording key, 147
no shadow key, 203
no underlay key, 216
no underlay boxed title key, 217
no underlay first key, 217
no underlay last key, 217
no underlay middle key, 217
no underlay unbroken key, 217
no watermark key, 188
nобeforeafter key, 86
nofloat key, 84
none value, 51, 97, 141, 315, 403, 406
noparskip key, 90
nophantom key, 110
normal value, 49, 179
north fading, 296
north value, 53, 54
north size key, 293
north style key, 294
northeast value, 53, 54
northwest value, 53, 54
notitle key, 23
notitle after break key, 401
number format key, 126
number freestyle key, 126
number within key, 126
\oarg, 495
octogon arc key, 42
off value, 462, 511
on value, 462
on line key, 108
only key, 285
opacityback key, 56
opacitybacklower key, 244
opacitybacktitle key, 56
opacityfill key, 56
opacityframe key, 56
opacitylower key, 56
opacitytext key, 57
opacitytitle key, 57
opacityupper key, 57
Option color, 514
outer arc key, 43
outside node key, 293
over node key, 293
over node offset key, 293
overlaplower key, 245
overlay key, 79
overlay app key, 467
overlay broken key, 80
overlay broken app key, 468
overlay broken pre key, 468
overlay first key, 80
overlay first and middle key, 80
overlay first and middle app key, 468
overlay first and middle pre key, 468
overlay first app key, 467
overlay first pre key, 467
overlay last key, 80
overlay last app key, 468
overlay last pre key, 468
overlay middle key, 80
overlay middle and last key, 80
overlay middle and last app key, 468
overlay middle and last pre key, 468
overlay middle app key, 468
overlay middle pre key, 468
overlay pre key, 467
overlay unbroken key, 80
overlay unbroken and first key, 80
overlay unbroken and first app key, 468
overlay unbroken and first pre key, 468
overlay unbroken and last key, 80
overlay unbroken and last app key, 468
overlay unbroken and last pre key, 468
overlay unbroken app key, 467
overlay unbroken pre key, 467
oversize key, 50

pad after break key, 405
pad at break key, 405
pad at break* key, 405
pad before break key, 405
pad before break* key, 405
pageshort key, 513
parbox key, 106
parfillskip restore key, 92
parskip key, 90
PassOptionsToClass key, 484
PassOptionsToPackage key, 484
path key, 513
path value, 154, 155
Path operations
  foo path (horizontal then vertical), 503
  fooop, 493
pathfirst value, 154, 155
pathfirstjigsaw value, 154
pathjigsaw value, 154
pathlast value, 154, 155
pathlastjigsaw value, 154
pathmiddle value, 154, 155
pathmiddlege value, 154
paths key, 513
pdf comment key, 344
pdf extension key, 345
\pdfpages, 281
pgf value, 511
pgfchapter value, 511
pgfsection value, 511
phantom key, 110
phantomlabel key, 110
placeholder key, 447
plain key, 483
plain value, 389
plain apart value, 390
portrait value, 282
portrait* value, 282
poster key, 9, 438
\posterbox, 441
posterboxenv environment, 441
preamble key, 484
preamble tcbset key, 484
preclass key, 484
prefix key, 438, 477
process code key, 354
\ProvideTCBInputListing, 335
\ProvideTCBListing, 332
\ProvideTCBox, 20
\ProvideTCBoxFit, 452
\ProvideTcbTheorem, 373
\ProvideTCColorBox, 17
\ProvideTotalTCBox, 22
\ProvideTotalTCBoxFit, 453
\ProvideTotalTCColorBox, 18
raised color key, 295
raster key, 9
raster after skip key, 312
raster before skip key, 312
raster column n key, 316
raster column skip key, 313
raster columns key, 310
raster equal height key, 315
raster equal height group key, 315
raster equal skip key, 312
raster even column key, 316
raster even number key, 317
raster even row key, 317
raster every box key, 316
raster force size key, 316
raster halign key, 314
raster height key, 312
raster left skip key, 313
raster multicolumn key, 318
raster multirow key, 319
raster number n key, 317
raster odd column key, 316
raster odd number key, 317
raster odd row key, 316
raster reset key, 316
raster right skip key, 313
raster row m key, 317
raster row m column n key, 317
raster row skip key, 313
raster rows key, 310
raster valign key, 314
raster width key, 310
raster width center key, 311
raster width flush left key, 311
beamer, 257
beamerfirst, 259
beamerlast, 260
beamermiddle, 259
biclor, 242
biclor jigsaw, 249
bicolorfirst, 256
bicolorfirst jigsaw, 250
bicolorlast, 248
bicolorlast jigsaw, 252
bicolormiddle, 247
bicolormiddle jigsaw, 251
draft, 275
empty, 264
emptyfirst, 267
emptylast, 269
emptymiddle, 268
enhanced, 230
enhanced jigsaw, 236
enhancedfirst, 234
enhancedfirst jigsaw, 237
enhancedlast, 235
enhancedlast jigsaw, 241
enhancedmiddle, 234
enhancedmiddle jigsaw, 238
freelance, 277
freelancefirst, 277
freelancelast, 277
freelancemiddle, 277
spartan, 274
standard, 228
standard jigsaw, 229
tile, 253
tilefirst, 254
tilelast, 256
tilemiddle, 255
widget, 261
widgetfirst, 262
widgetlast, 263
widgetmiddle, 262
skins key, 9
small value, 49
smart shadow arc key, 211
south fading, 296
south value, 53, 54
south size key, 293
south style key, 294
southeast value, 53, 54
southeast value, 53, 54
space key, 63
space to key, 64
space to both key, 64
space to lower key, 63
space to upper key, 63
spacing key, 438
span key, 443
spartan key, 274
spartan Skin, 274
spartan value, 154, 155
split key, 65
spread key, 99
spread downwards key, 99
spread inwards key, 98
spread outwards key, 98
spread sideways key, 99
spread upwards key, 99
spread upwards* key, 99
square key, 63
squeeze value, 460
squeezed title key, 24
squeezed title* key, 24
standard key, 228
standard Skin, 228
standard value, 154, 155, 179, 389
standard jigsaw key, 229
standard jigsaw Skin, 229
step key, 111
step and label key, 111
store to box array key, 426
subtle style key, 26
tables value, 128
tabulars key, 75
tabulars* key, 75	
tabularx key, 76	
tabularx* key, 76
tcb fill frame key, 174
tcb fill interior key, 174
tcb fill title key, 174
\tcbbreak, 413
tcbclipframe environment, 193
tcbclipinterior environment, 195
tcbcliptitle environment, 195
tcbclipinterior environment, 195
tcbbreak, 413
tcbclipframe environment, 193
tcbclipinterior environment, 195
tcbcliptitle environment, 195
\tcbcontinuedraftmode, 224
\tcbccounter, 124
\tcbdocmarginnote, 501
\tcbdocnew, 501
\tcbdocupdated, 501
tcbexternal environment, 478
\tcbeXTERNA LIZE, 477
\tcbbfitdim, 450
\tcbbfitsteps, 454
\tcbbfontsize, 450
\tcbbheightfromgroup, 68
\tcbbheightspace, 166
\tcbbhighmath, 374
\tcbhypernode, 284
\tcbifexternal, 484
\tcbiffileprocess, 486
\tcbifoddpage, 116
\tcbifoddpageononeside, 116
tcbimage comment key, 343
title after break key, 401
use counter key, 125
use counter from key, 125
use counter* key, 125
use height from group key, 68
\useboxarray, 428
\usetcboxarray, 429
valign key, 38
valign lower key, 38
valign scale limit key, 38
valign upper key, 38
value key, 514
Values
0, 167
1, 167
2, 167
all, 53, 54, 315, 403, 406
areasize, 460
areasize*, 460
as-is, 282
auto, 109, 381
auto limited, 109
base, 91
baselineskip, 403
both, 141
bottom, 38, 91, 135, 314
bottom seam, 403
break, 390
broken, 186–188
center, 35, 38, 91, 135, 314
center seam, 135
change, 390
change apart, 390
change break, 390
change standard, 389
clipped, 296
colon, 129
colon hang, 129
copy, 179
dash, 129
dash hang, 129
direct, 296
doc, 511
downhill, 53, 54
east, 53, 54
empty, 154, 155
evenpage, 51, 97
false, 86, 92, 316, 400
fbox, 49
figures, 128
final, 462
first, 186–188, 406
first and middle, 186, 406
fitbox, 105
flush center, 35, 37, 38
flush left, 35, 37, 38
flush right, 35, 37, 38
fontsize, 460
fontsize*, 460
forced, 51, 97
forced center, 109
forced left, 109
forced right, 109
freelance, 154, 155
hbox, 105
hybrid, 460
hybrid*, 460
ignored, 29
invisible, 24, 27, 29
justify, 35
landscape, 282
landscape*, 282
last, 186–188, 406
left, 35, 141, 314
listings, 128, 341
margin, 391
margin apart, 391
margin break, 391
maximum, 61
middle, 186–188, 406
middle and last, 186–188, 406
minimal, 49
minimum center, 109
minimum left, 109
minimum right, 109
minipage, 105, 307
minted, 341
none, 51, 97, 141, 315, 403, 406
normal, 49, 179
north, 53, 54
northeast, 53, 54
northwest, 53, 54
off, 462, 511
on, 462
path, 154, 155
pathfirst, 154, 155
pathfirstjigsaw, 154
pathjigsaw, 154
pathlast, 154, 155
pathlastjigsaw, 154
pathmiddle, 154, 155
pathmiddlegigsaw, 154
pgf, 511
pgfchapter, 511
pgfsection, 511
plain, 389
plain apart, 390
portrait, 282
portrait*, 282
right, 35, 141, 314
rows, 315
scale, 38
scale*, 38
small, 49
south, 53, 54
southeast, 53, 54
southwest, 53, 54
spartan, 154, 155
squeeze, 460
standard, 154, 155, 179, 389
tables, 128
tight, 49
title, 49, 179
top, 38, 91, 135, 314
top seam, 135
true, 92, 400
unbroken, 186–188
unbroken and first, 186–188
unlimited, 399, 400
uphill, 53, 54
visible, 24, 27, 29
west, 53, 54
values key, 514
varwidth boxed title key, 185
varwidth boxed title* key, 185
varwidth upper key, 78
verbatim key, 108
verbatim ignore indentation at end key, 146
verbatim ignore percent key, 145
vertical size key, 294
vfill before first key, 406
vignette key, 9
visible key, 27
visible value, 24, 27, 29
void key, 123
watermark color key, 191
watermark graphics key, 187
watermark graphics app key, 470
watermark graphics app on key, 470
watermark graphics on key, 187
watermark graphics pre key, 470
watermark graphics pre on key, 470
watermark text app on key, 469
watermark text app on key, 469
watermark text on key, 186
watermark text pre key, 469
watermark text pre on key, 469
watermark tikz key, 188
watermark tikz app key, 470
watermark tikz app on key, 470
watermark tikz on key, 188
watermark tikz pre key, 470
watermark tikz pre on key, 470
watermark zoom key, 189
west fading, 296
west value, 53, 54
west size key, 293
west style key, 295
widget key, 261
widget Skin, 261
widgetfirst Skin, 262
widgetlast Skin, 263
widgetmiddle Skin, 262